



Photo by M. S. G.

# INTERPRISE

3



Interprise Publishing

# ENTERPRISE 3

C O U R S E B O O K

## Pre-Intermediate

NOT FOR SALE  
FREE SAMPLE COPY

Virginia Evans - Jenny Dooley



Express Publishing

# Contents

|  | <b>TOPICS AND LANGUAGE FUNCTIONS</b>   | <b>GRAMMAR</b>  | <b>LISTENING &amp; SPEAKING</b>   | <b>WRITING</b>  |
|--|--|---|---|---|
| <b>MODULE 1</b>  |  |   |   |   |
| <b>UNIT 1</b><br>Read my lips<br>(pp. 6 - 9)                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>physical/character description</li> <li>clothes</li> <li>linking words</li> </ul>   | Present Simple - Present Continuous - stative verbs   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>describing people</li> <li>buying clothes</li> </ul> Pronunciation: /s/, /z/, /iz/   | friendly letter to a pen-friend                             |
| <b>UNIT 2</b><br>In the Public Eye<br>(pp. 10-13)            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>physical/character description</li> <li>interests/hobbies</li> </ul> <i>Phrasal verbs: look</i>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>relative pronouns (who-whose-which)</li> <li>adverbs of frequency</li> <li>forming adjectives</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>describing people</li> <li>people's habits and routines</li> </ul> Pronunciation: /n/, /h/, /ŋk/   | describing a famous person                                  |
| <b>UNIT 3</b><br>Around the world<br>(pp. 14 - 17)           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>accommodation</li> <li>weather description</li> <li>adjectives describing places</li> <li>use of the senses in describing places</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Past Simple - Past Cont. - Present Perfect - Present Perfect Continuous</li> <li>for-since-ago-already-yet-while-so far-ever-when-never</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>describing the weather</li> <li>asking for information</li> <li>catching up with news</li> </ul> Pronunciation: /t/, /d/, /d/                  | friendly letter<br>describing your stay at a holiday resort |
| <b>UNIT 4</b><br>Travellers' Tales<br>(pp. 18-21)            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>holidays</li> <li>adjectives describing places</li> <li>giving directions; making recommendations</li> </ul> <i>Phrasal verbs: run</i>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>prepositions of place</li> <li>"the"</li> <li>such/so ... that</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>describing places using the senses</li> <li>giving directions</li> <li>making recommendations about a place</li> </ul>                         | describing a visit to a place                               |
| <b>UNIT 5</b><br>Enjoy Reading<br>(pp. 22 - 25)              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>types of stories</li> <li>feelings</li> <li>use of the senses</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Past Simple - Past Continuous</li> <li>avoiding repetition</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>setting the scene</li> <li>describing people's feelings</li> </ul>   | setting the scene   |
| <b>UNIT 6</b><br>The Lost World<br>(pp. 26 - 29)             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>story: Episode 1</li> <li>expressing obligation/prohibition/absence of necessity</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Past Perfect - Past Perfect Continuous</li> <li>comparisons</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>expressing obligation/prohibition/absence of necessity</li> <li>describing animals</li> </ul>  | <b>project:</b><br>describing animals                       |
| <b>MODULE SELF-ASSESSMENT 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 (pp. 30 - 31)</b> |  |   |   |   |
| <b>MODULE 2</b>  |  |   |   |   |
| <b>UNIT 7</b><br>A Ghostly Welcome<br>(pp. 32 - 35)          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>stories</li> <li>feelings &amp; emotions</li> <li>use of the senses</li> <li>time words; sequence words</li> </ul> <i>Phrasal verbs: break</i>  | past tenses   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>putting events in the correct order</li> <li>narrating events</li> </ul>   | stories   |
| <b>UNIT 8</b><br>Hard Times<br>(pp. 36 - 39)                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>giving advice/making recommendations</li> <li>making suggestions/offers/invitations</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>will - be going to - Present Continuous</li> <li>1st type Conditionals</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>asking for/giving advice</li> <li>making plans/predictions</li> <li>making suggestions/offers/invitations</li> </ul> Pronunciation: /st/, /zd/ | friendly letter giving advice                               |
| <b>UNIT 9</b><br>In the Land of the Pyramids<br>(pp. 40-43)  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>story: Episode 2</li> <li>say - tell</li> </ul>   | reported speech (statements - questions)  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>describing ancient monuments</li> </ul>  | <b>project:</b><br>description of the Pyramids              |
| <b>UNIT 10</b><br>Citizens 2050<br>(pp. 44-47)               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>life in the future</li> <li>expressing opinions (<i>I think, I believe, etc.</i>)/giving reasons</li> <li>linking words (similar/contrasting ideas)</li> </ul> <i>Phrasal verbs: come</i> | Future Continuous - Future Perfect  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>making plans/predictions</li> <li>expressing opinions</li> <li>comparing past, present and future situations</li> </ul>                        | expressing opinions - how life will be in 2050              |

|  | <b>TOPICS AND LANGUAGE FUNCTIONS</b>   | <b>GRAMMAR</b>   | <b>LISTENING &amp; SPEAKING</b>   | <b>WRITING</b>                                      |
|--|--|--|---|---|
| <b>UNIT 11</b><br>Narrow Escapes<br>(pp. 48 - 51)                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>accidents; survivors</li> <li>giving advice; expressing criticism (should have done)</li> <li>car accident</li> <li>fire</li> </ul> | reported orders/commands/requests  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>giving advice/expressing criticism</li> <li>describing a car crash</li> </ul> Pronunciation: /tʃ/, /dʒ/  | narrating past events                               |
| <b>UNIT 12</b><br>The Vikings<br>(pp. 52-55)                               | story: Episode 3   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>passive voice</li> <li>as-like</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>describing explorers' lifestyles</li> </ul>  | <b>project:</b><br>biography                        |
| <b>MODULE SELF-ASSESSMENT 2 UNITS 7, 8, 9, 10, 11,12 (pp. 56 - 57)</b>     |  |  |   |   |
| <b>UNIT 13</b><br>Nature's Fury<br>(pp. 58-61)                             | natural disasters<br><i>Phrasal verbs: put</i>   | passive voice  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>commenting/describing natural disasters</li> </ul> Pronunciation: /ɒ/, /əʊ/                              | news reports  |
| <b>UNIT 14</b><br>Tricky Jobs<br>(pp. 62-65)                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>vocabulary related to jobs</li> <li>joining similar/contrasting ideas</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2nd and 3rd type Conditionals</li> <li>wishes</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>commenting on jobs</li> <li>making wishes</li> </ul> Pronunciation: /u/, /ju/                            | essay: advantages/disadvantages                     |
| <b>UNIT 15</b><br>Panic is Rare<br>(pp. 66 - 69)                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>types of sports/hobbies</li> <li>sports/hobbies equipment</li> <li>skills/qualities</li> </ul> <i>Phrasal verbs: turn</i>           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Infinitives</li> <li>the -ing form</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>describing sports</li> </ul> Pronunciation: /eɪ/, /aɪ/   | <b>project:</b><br>comparing and contrasting sports |
| <b>UNIT 16</b><br>London's Burning<br>(pp. 70-73)                          | story: Episode 4   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>question tags</li> <li>reflexive pronouns</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>asking for confirmation or agreement</li> <li>describing sights</li> </ul>                               | <b>project:</b><br>describing sights                |
| <b>UNIT 17</b><br>Scary but lovely to watch<br>(pp. 74 - 77)               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>endangered species</li> <li>wild animals</li> <li>voices of animals</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>plurals</li> <li>expressing reason</li> <li>clauses of result</li> <li>too-enough</li> </ul>              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>describing animals</li> </ul> Pronunciation: /əʊ/, /ao/  | <b>project:</b><br>describing animals               |
| <b>UNIT 18</b><br>Problems of the Planet<br>(pp.78-81)                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ecology</li> <li>expressing cause and effect</li> <li>making suggestions</li> </ul>   | clauses of purpose   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>expressing cause and effect</li> <li>providing solutions</li> </ul>                                      | essay: providing solutions to problems              |
| <b>MODULE SELF-ASSESSMENT 3 UNITS 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18 (pp. 82 - 83)</b> |  |  |   |   |
| <b>UNIT 19</b><br>Quality or Quantity?<br>(pp.84-87)                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>types of food</li> <li>making complaints</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>countable-uncountable nouns</li> <li>how much/how many</li> <li>comparative/superlative degree</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>comparing restaurants</li> <li>making complaints</li> </ul>  | letter of complaint                                 |
| <b>UNIT 20</b><br>Earth 3,000<br>(pp.88-91)                                | story: Episode 5   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>making deductions (must - can't - may/might/could)</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>life in the past</li> <li>making deductions</li> <li>describing future cars</li> </ul>                   | <b>project:</b><br>describing future cars           |
| <b>UNIT 21</b><br>A Modern Myth<br>(pp.92-95)                              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>types of films</li> <li>types of TV programmes</li> <li>making recommendations</li> </ul> <i>Phrasal verbs: take</i>                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>present &amp; past participles</li> <li>expressing preferences</li> <li>so/neither</li> </ul>             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>TV programmes</li> <li>recommending</li> <li>expressing preferences</li> <li>describing films</li> </ul> | film reviews  |
| <b>UNIT 22</b><br>The Return<br>(pp.96-99)                                 | story: Episode 6   | causative form   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>making preparations</li> <li>talking about inventions</li> </ul>   | <b>project:</b> describing inventions and inventors |
| <b>MODULE SELF-ASSESSMENT 4 UNITS 19, 20, 21, 22 (pp. 100-101)</b>         |  |  |   |   |
| <b>GRAMMAR REFERENCE SECTION (pp. 102-115)</b>                             |  |  |   |   |
| <b>IRREGULAR VERBS (pp. 116)</b>   |  |  |   |   |
| <b>WORD LIST (pp. 117-128)</b>   |  |  |   |   |
| <b>CULTURE CLIPS (pp. 129-139)</b>   |  |  |   |   |
| <b>AMERICAN ENGLISH – BRITISH ENGLISH (pp. 140-142)</b>                    |  |  |   |   |
| <b>PHOTOFILE</b>   |  |  |   |   |

Published by Express Publishing

Liberty House, New Greenham Park, Newbury, Berkshire RG19 6HW  
Tel.: (0044) 1635 817 363 Fax: (0044) 1635 817 463  
e-mail: [inquiries@expresspublishing.co.uk](mailto:inquiries@expresspublishing.co.uk)  
<http://www.expresspublishing.co.uk>

© Virginia Evans - Jenny Dooley, 1997

Design and Illustration © Express Publishing, 1997

*All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, photocopying or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the Publishers.*

Colour Illustrations Nathan,Terry Wilson

**First published 1997**

**New edition 2002**

ISBN 1-84216-811-8

## Acknowledgements

### Authors' Acknowledgements

We would like to thank all the staff at Express Publishing who have contributed their skills to producing this book. Thanks are due in particular to: Mary Palmer (Editor in Chief), Rania Dunn and Anna Miller (senior editors), Ann Doyle and Sheila Howard (editorial assistants), Philippa Porter (senior Production Controller), E. Mavragani (art director), Helen Mavrodemos (assistant designer) and our design team, Tony Boyle (recording producer) and Greg Manin, Julie Brown, Mary Lewis, Debbie Ellis and Steve Mason for their support and patience. We would also like to thank those institutions and teachers who piloted the manuscript, and whose comments and feedback influenced positively the production of the book.

### The authors and publishers wish to thank the following who have kindly given permission for the use of copyright material.

Mademoiselle Magazine for the article 'Read my lips' on p. 6; Susan Rozsnyai for the article 'Daryl Hannah' (published in HELLO!) on p. 10; Focus magazine for 'Tricky Jobs' on p. 62; Gill Williams for the article 'Panic is Rare' (published in Hilton Guest) on p. 67; Greenpeace for the article 'Quality or Quantity?' on p. 85.

### Photograph Acknowledgements

© 1990 TOUCHSTONE PICTURES. All rights reserved for picture of Richard Gere on p. 6; © 94 GEFFEN PICTURES. All rights reserved for picture of Brad Pitt on p. 13; CBS/FOX for picture of Harrison Ford on p. 13, p. 25 left, p. 34, p. 39, p. 45, p. 51 item 2 p. 64 item 2. p. 66 top; MGM/UA ENTERTAINMENT CO on p. 22 top/middle, p. 93 bottom left; WARNER HOME VIDEO on p. 22 bottom; copyright © 20th CENTURY FOX FILM COOPERATION. All rights reserved on p. 24 right, p. 25 top right, p. 35, p. 36, p. 51 item 6, p. 64 items 1, p. 93 top right; © 1993 WBF PROD. LTD REGENCY ENT. V.O.F. p. 48 top left, p. 95; WARNER BROS © 1988 BY WARNER BROS INC. p. 90 bottom, p. 91 picture B; WARNER BROS © 1995 BY WARNER BROS p. 25 bottom right; © 1995 by MGM/UA Entertainment Co. All rights reserved p. 66 bottom; © GREENPEACE/NORTHHOLT p. 84; © LUCAS FILM LTD All rights reserved p. 92; © 1981 METRO-GOLDWYN-MAYER FILM CO. All rights reserved p. 91 picture A; © 1987 METRO-GOLDWYN-MAYER PICTURES INC. All rights reserved p. 93 bottom right; © THE WALT DISNEY COMPANY All rights reserved. p. 94; Spiros Stefanidis for picture of vet p. 62; Emmanuel Kinnas for picture of skateboard (Photo File)

**Audio Visual for photographs on pages:** 11 (Daryl Hannah) 44, 48 (middle), 51 (items 4, 5), 85.

**Colour Illustrations:** Nathan, Terry Wilson

Every effort has been made to trace all the copyright holders but if any have been inadvertently overlooked, the publishers will be pleased to make the necessary arrangements at the first opportunity.

# Introduction

*Enterprise 3 Pre-Intermediate* is a complete course for students studying English at pre-intermediate level. It provides students with the necessary skills to successfully communicate in both the oral and written forms of the language.

The course consists of four modules of twenty-two units in total, six of which present a story in episodes. Each module ensures coverage of a range of useful language related to topics of general interest with which the students need to be familiar. The units follow the same basic structure, outlined below.

Each unit consists of:

- **Lead-in sections** which draw on the students' knowledge of the given topic. The lead-in section ends with a listening activity, requiring students to listen to the reading text and complete a task, such as filling in missing information, underlining the correct item, multiple matching, True/False statements, etc. This listening activity prepares students to deal with the reading text which follows. Having encountered the main idea of the text, students are better equipped to focus on the reading task.
- **Reading sections** which consist of cross-cultural texts. These texts allow students to develop skills such as reading for gist, reading for specific information, understanding vocabulary from context and summarising text in their own words.
- **Vocabulary Practice sections** which focus on exploiting the vocabulary introduced in the reading text through various types of exercises such as 'word attack' (in which students deduce the meaning of words from context), gap-filling, collocations which help students remember vocabulary items as parts of set expressions, and sets of commonly confused words. Text-related idioms, phrasal verbs and prepositions are also included.
- **Follow-up sections** which focus on encouraging students to extract and reproduce relevant information from the text through discussion as well as mastering the vocabulary covered in the Vocabulary Practice section.
- **Language Development sections** which present vocabulary linked to the topic and extend students' vocabulary at the appropriate level.
- **Listening and Speaking exercises** which focus on

communication. Students are given the opportunity to develop competence in their listening and speaking skills through various exercises and activities.

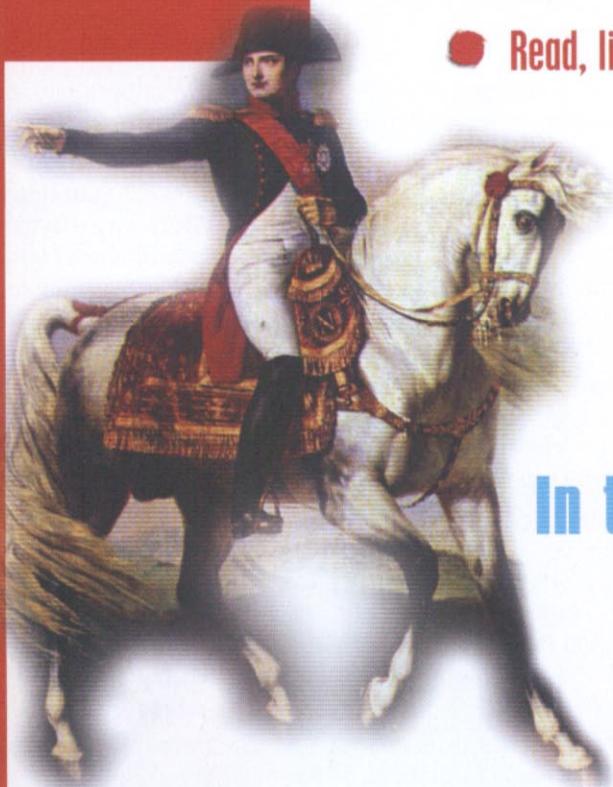
- **Grammar in Use sections** which present grammar structures in a clear, easily understood way. These sections are used with the Grammar Reference section (found at the back of the book), allowing students to reinforce and expand their knowledge of grammar through a variety of useful exercises.
- **Pronunciation sections** which help students gain confidence in recognising sounds and pronouncing them correctly. All pronunciation exercises are recorded on tapes which accompany the coursebook.
- **Writing sections** which introduce the most important aspects of composition writing in an easy-to-follow way. All writing exercises (either essays or projects) are guided so that students will not feel frustrated. Notes on successful writing, plans and model compositions help students understand each type of writing presented.
- **Words of Wisdom sections** which familiarise students with famous quotations and proverbs.
- **Module Self-Assessment sections** which reinforce students' knowledge of the topics, vocabulary and structures presented in the previous exercises and help prepare them for the tests. A marking scheme allows students to evaluate their progress and identify their weakness.
- **Culture Clips sections**  
The course is accompanied by:
  - a) an easy-to-use **Teacher's Book** containing all the answers to the exercises in the Student's Book along with useful suggestions for presenting the exercises and four tests (each in two different versions)
  - b) **cassettes/audio CDs** containing all the listening activities (teacher's set, student's set)
  - c) **Enterprise 3 Pre-Intermediate Workbook** in which students can revise vocabulary, and grammar structures presented in the coursebook,
  - d) **Enterprise 3 Test Booklet** containing seven write-in tests, a Mid-term and an Exit test, which aims to assess students' progress throughout the course.

# People & Places

Units 1-6

## Before you start

- What's your name? • Where do you live? • What is your favourite kind of music?



## Around the World

(Unit 3)

- accommodation
- describing the weather
- describing places

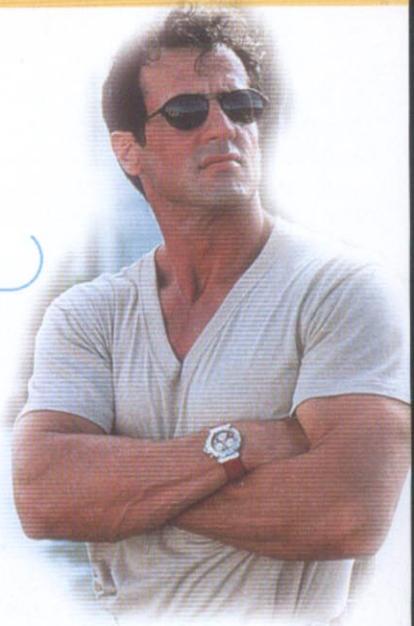


## Read, listen, talk and write about...

## Read my lips

(Unit 1)

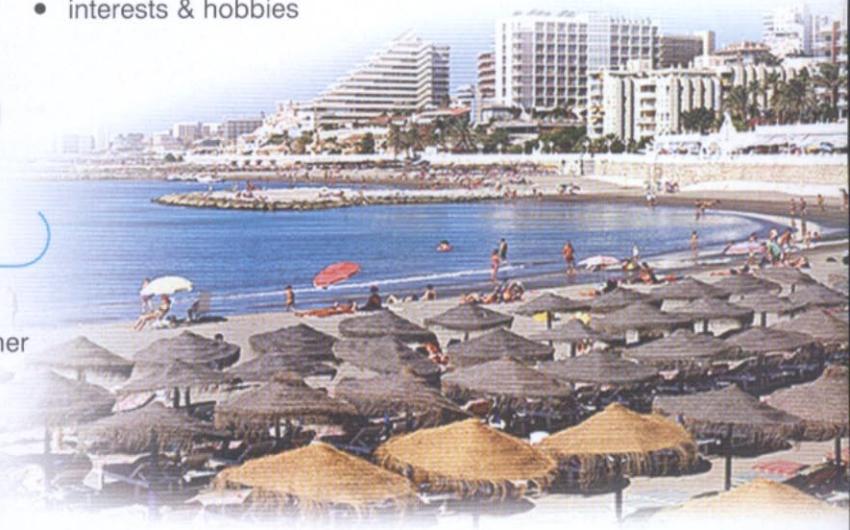
- physical & character descriptions
- clothes



## In the Public Eye

(Unit 2)

- physical & character descriptions
- interests & hobbies



## Travellers' Tales

(Unit 4)

- holidays
- describing places

**Enjoy Reading**

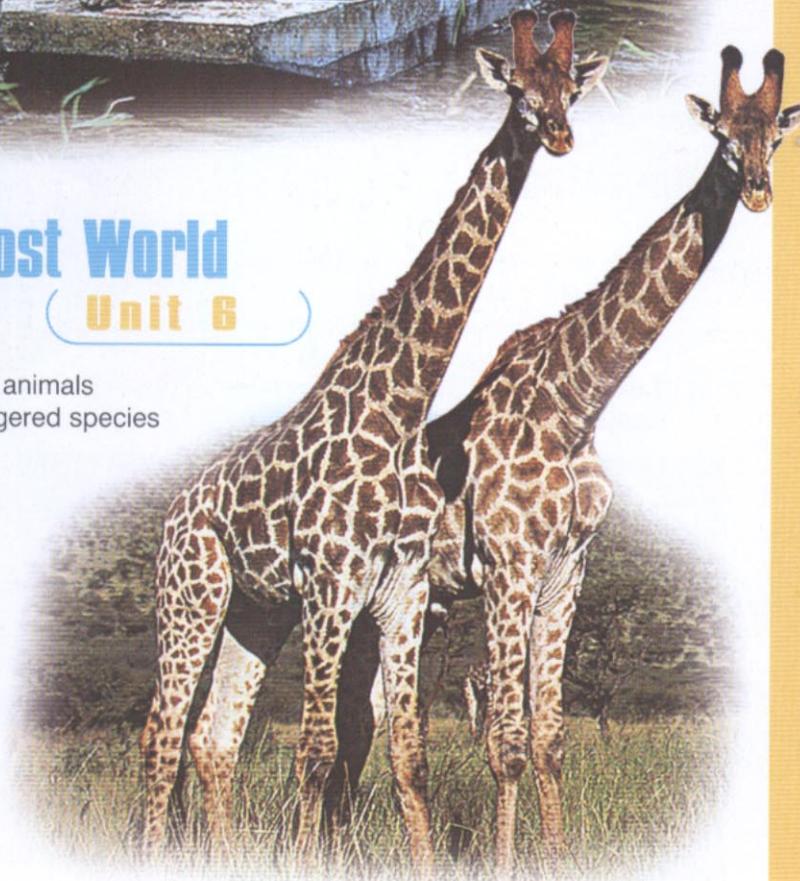
(Unit 5)

- types of stories
- feelings

**The Lost World**

(Unit 6)

- extinct animals
- endangered species
- rules



## ● Learn how to...

- describe people & places
- buy clothes
- describe people's habits/routines/feelings
- describe the weather
- ask for information
- give directions
- describe animals
- express obligation/prohibition/absence of necessity
- make recommendations

## ● Practise ...

- present simple/continuous
- relative pronouns
- adverbs of frequency
- prepositions of place
- the definite article
- such/so ... that
- past simple/past continuous
- present perfect/present perfect continuous
- past perfect/past perfect continuous
- comparisons

## ● Write ...

- a friendly letter to a pen-friend
- a description of a famous person
- a friendly letter describing your stay at a holiday resort
- a description of a visit to a place
- a story: setting the scene
- animal fact files

# UNIT 1

## Lead-in

- 1** **Responsible, quick-tempered and generous** are adjectives which describe people's character. Can you think of any more adjectives?
- 2** Read the adjectives under each picture, then listen to the tape and tick (✓) the adjectives you hear.



full lips

|             |                          |          |                          |
|-------------|--------------------------|----------|--------------------------|
| responsible | <input type="checkbox"/> | decisive | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| immature    | <input type="checkbox"/> | bossy    | <input type="checkbox"/> |



thin upper lip with a full lower lip

|           |                          |              |                          |
|-----------|--------------------------|--------------|--------------------------|
| energetic | <input type="checkbox"/> | ambitious    | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| careful   | <input type="checkbox"/> | self-centred | <input type="checkbox"/> |



thin lips

|            |                          |          |                          |
|------------|--------------------------|----------|--------------------------|
| determined | <input type="checkbox"/> | reserved | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| careful    | <input type="checkbox"/> | mean     | <input type="checkbox"/> |



lips with down-turning corners

|             |                          |           |                          |
|-------------|--------------------------|-----------|--------------------------|
| generous    | <input type="checkbox"/> | sensitive | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| intelligent | <input type="checkbox"/> | secretive | <input type="checkbox"/> |

# Read my lips

## Reading

- 3** Read the text and a) check your answers for the listening activity, b) explain the words in bold as in the example.

e.g. **Responsible** people are those who you can always trust to do what you ask them to do.

*Forget about fortune tellers and horoscopes. The shape of a person's lips can say a lot about them. The 5,000-year-old art of face reading is gaining popularity. So, take a look at the shape of someone's lips to find out about their personality ...*

People with full lips are usually **responsible**. You can always trust them to do what you ask them to do. They are also **decisive**; they make decisions quickly. On the other hand, they tend to be rather **bossy**. They like telling other people what to do!

People who have a thin upper lip and full lower lip are **energetic**. They work very hard and like participating in a lot of activities. They are **ambitious** as well; they want to be successful in life. However, these people tend to be **self-centred**. They seem to only care about themselves and they sometimes forget about other people's feelings.

People with thin lips are **determined**; they know what they want and they do all they can to get it. They are **careful** people who do their work with a lot of attention and thought. However, they tend to be **reserved**; they don't like showing their feelings or expressing their opinions. They can also be **mean**; they don't like sharing things or spending money.

People who have lips with down-turning corners are very **generous**. They love giving things to other people and helping them. They are also **intelligent** and understand difficult subjects quickly and easily. On the other hand, they can be **sensitive** at times; they get upset easily, so be careful of what you say to them.



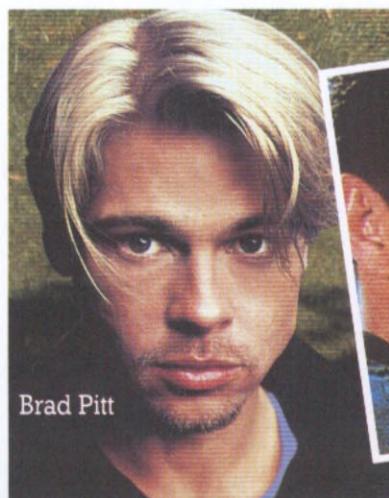
Sylvester  
Stallone

## Speaking

- a) Look at these famous people's lips and talk about their characters.

e.g. Sylvester Stallone has got lips with down-turning corners. It means he is generous.

- b) Talk about your partner's character by reading his/her lips.



Brad Pitt



Bruce Willis



Richard Gere

## Language Development

### 4 Which of the following adjectives are positive and which are negative?

funny, unreliable, self-confident, caring, imaginative, outgoing, helpful, rude, easy-going, stubborn, cooperative, selfish, shy, disorganised, forgetful, active, lazy, loyal, arrogant, polite

|          |                   |
|----------|-------------------|
| Positive | funny, .....      |
| Negative | unreliable, ..... |

### Linking Ideas

- When you describe people's character, you can include positive (e.g. *kind*) and negative (e.g. *lazy*) qualities.
- When you talk about negative qualities, you can use the expressions in bold. e.g. *He tends to/can be aggressive at times. He is often aggressive.* (NOT: *He is aggressive*). Look at the ways you can join the sentences.

#### Similar qualities

e.g. *She is friendly. She is polite.*  
*She is friendly and (also) polite.*  
*She is friendly and polite as well.*

#### Opposing qualities

e.g. *He is helpful. He can be arrogant at times.*  
*He is helpful but he can be arrogant at times.*  
*He is helpful. On the other hand/However, he tends to be arrogant at times.*

### 5 Join the ideas using: **and (also), but, however, on the other hand**.

- Roger is friendly. Roger is caring.
- John is intelligent. John is self-centred.
- Andrew is stubborn. Andrew is disorganised.
- Paul is cooperative. Paul is forgetful.
- Michael is energetic. Michael is bossy.

### 6 Look at the list of adjectives in Ex. 4 and make sentences about people you know using: **and, also, as well, but, however, on the other hand**.

e.g. Tom is friendly and caring as well.

### 7 Fill in the gaps with: **early, mid, late**.

- 13 - 14 = in his/her ..... teens
- 38 - 39 = in his/her ..... thirties
- 44 - 46 = in his/her ..... forties
- 21 - 23 = in his/her ..... twenties
- 67 - 69 = in his/her ..... sixties
- 57 - 59 = in his/her ..... fifties

### 8 A film director is trying to decide on two actors (one male, one female) for the leading roles in his new film. Look at the pictures then listen to the tape and find the two people.



### 9 Read the following descriptions and match them with the pictures above. Then fill in the table below with words from the paragraphs. Finally, cover the paragraphs and describe each person.

- Mary's short and in her early twenties. She's got an oval face, long black curly hair and a small nose. Her eyes are brown. ....
- Paul's tall and in his early thirties. He's got a long face and long black hair. His nose is quite large and he's got a small mouth. ....
- Sally's short and plump. She's in her late sixties. She's got a square face, shoulder-length wavy grey hair and a wide mouth. Her eyes are green. ....
- Mike's tall, well-built and middle-aged with a square face. His mouth is wide, and his nose is rather big. He has large dark brown eyes and short grey hair. ....

|         |  |
|---------|--|
| Height: |  |
| Build:  |  |
| Age:    |  |
| Face:   |  |
| Hair:   |  |
| Eyes:   |  |
| Mouth:  |  |
| Nose:   |  |

### 10 Write a short paragraph describing your best friend's physical appearance and character.

**11** Match the pictures with the words from the list:

mini skirt, waistcoat, jeans, shorts, leggings, high heeled shoes, tie, fur coat, evening dress, suit, bow tie, denim jacket, trainers, T-shirt, baseball cap, V-neck jumper, scarf, flat shoes, overalls, polo-neck, tracksuit, dungarees, shirt

Which of these items are casual and which are formal? What do you wear when you go: a) to the gym, b) on a trip, c) to work, d) to a party, e) to a reception?



e.g. When I go to the gym I wear a tracksuit, trainers ... etc.

**12** Read the dialogue and fill in: *match - go with - suit - fit*. Now, listen to the tape and check your answers. Then, act out a similar dialogue.

- A: Good morning madam. May I help you?  
 B: I hope so! I'm looking for something really special to wear to my cousin's wedding. Something in blue, I think.  
 A: What about this lovely dress? It has a jacket in the same colour to 1) ..... it.  
 B: Yes, it's beautiful, but it looks a bit small. Do you think it will 2) ..... me?  
 A: Why don't you try it on? ... (after some minutes)  
 B: There! How does it look?  
 A: It's perfect! The colour 3) ..... you.  
 B: Do you think so? Now all I need is a pair of shoes to 4) .....

**13** Match the adjectives and the adverbs with the words below.

casually, upturned, bright, formally, neatly, hooked, dark, golden, silky

- 1 ..... dressed      3 ..... eyes  
 2 ..... nose      4 ..... hair

**Grammar in Use****PRESENT SIMPLE - PRESENT CONTINUOUS****14** Match the tenses with their meaning. When do we use present simple? When do we use present continuous?

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 Paul <b>works</b> as a singer.              | a temporary situations           |
| 2 He <b>is singing</b> now.                   | b scheduled actions (timetables) |
| 3 He <b>is staying</b> at a hotel at present. | c future arrangements            |
| 4 He <b>is going to</b> Lyon on Sunday.       | d actions happening now          |
| 5 His flight <b>leaves</b> at 9.00 am.        | e likes and dislikes             |
| 6 He <b>likes</b> tennis.                     | f permanent states               |

**15** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

Steven 1) ..... (work) as a director. He's in the studio now. He 2) ..... (direct) a scene from his new film "Raiders of the Lost Treasure". He 3) ..... (stay) in London at present, but he 4) ..... (fly) to Egypt tomorrow to shoot some scenes. His flight 5) ..... (leave) at 6.00 am and, although he 6) ..... (like) travelling, he 7) ..... (hate) early mornings.

Verbs expressing likes/dislikes (*like, love, hate, dislike, can't stand, don't mind* etc.) are not used in continuous tenses and take a noun or -ing form after them.  
 e.g. I **love** rock music./I **don't mind** cleaning my room. (NOT: I'm loving rock music.)

**16** Read these sentences, then listen to the tape and mark each statement T (True) or F (False).

- |                                      |                                     |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 Paul likes playing computer games. | 4 He hates doing his homework.      |
| 2 He enjoys meeting new people.      | 5 He doesn't mind tidying his room. |
| 3 He loves science fiction stories.  | 6 He can't stand pop music.         |

**17** What do you like/don't like / love /don't mind/ hate enjoy/ can't stand/ dislike doing?

## Pronunciation

**18** First listen and tick. Then, listen and repeat.

|         | /s/ | /z/ | /ɪz/ |
|---------|-----|-----|------|
| watches |     |     |      |
| sits    |     |     |      |
| plays   |     |     |      |

|         | /s/ | /z/ | /ɪz/ |
|---------|-----|-----|------|
| catches |     |     |      |
| goes    |     |     |      |
| talks   |     |     |      |

**19** Work in teams. One person chooses a picture, the other asks three questions trying to find out who the person is. Finally, describe each person.



## Writing (a letter to a pen-friend)

**20** Fill in each sentence into the right place.

- I love sports.
- My name is Ben Smith and I'm from England.
- I'm twelve years old.

Dear Claude,

1) ..... I live in Sussex with my family. There are four of us; my parents, my sister Emily, aged 4, and me. My mum works in a bank. My dad's a dentist.

2) ..... I'm tall, about 1.50, and slim. As you can see from my photo, I've got green eyes and short fair hair. I usually wear jeans and trainers.

3) ..... My favourite is basketball. I usually play basketball with my friends at the weekend. I also enjoy riding my bicycle. I enjoy reading books but I don't like reading comics.

Write back to me soon and tell me about yourself.  
Send me a photograph of yourself.

Best wishes,  
Ben

**21** Look at the plan, then write a letter to your pen-friend. Use the letter from Ex. 20 as a model.

### Plan

Dear ..... (your pen-friend's first name),

#### INTRODUCTION

Para 1: name, where from, place you live in, family

#### MAIN BODY

Para 2: age, height, build, eyes, hair, clothes

Para 3: what you like/don't like/don't mind

#### CONCLUSION

Para 4: ask him/her to write back and send you his/her picture

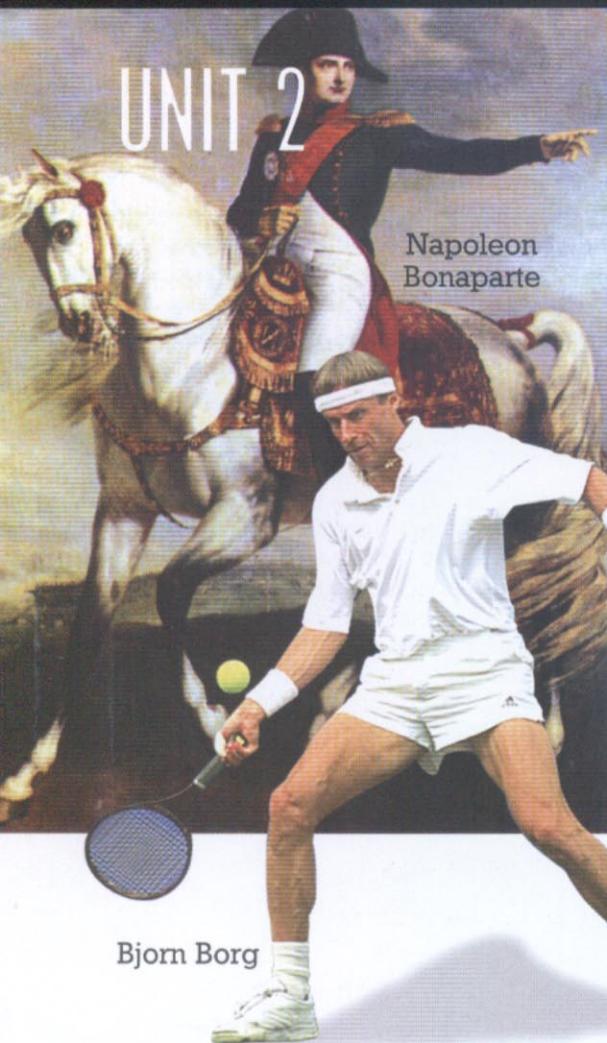
Best wishes,  
(your first name)

## Words of Wisdom

Read these sentences. What do they mean?

- Clothes make the man.
- The eyes are the window of the soul.
- One man's meat is another man's poison.
- Never trust appearances.
- First impressions are the most lasting.

# UNIT 2



Napoleon Bonaparte

Eddie Murphy

Niccolò Paganini

Paul Gauguin

## In the Public Eye

### Reading

- 4 You are going to read an article about the actress Daryl Hannah. For questions 1 - 5 choose the best answer, A, B, C or D.

## Daryl Hannah

The pretty **mermaid** looked up from the golden sand and the world fell in love with her. The film was *Splash*, and the mermaid was the famous actress, Daryl Hannah, who has also starred in such films as *Roxanne* and *Blade Runner*.

Daryl is tall and **slender**. She has got long blond hair, large blue eyes and **stunning features**. She looks fantastic in expensive clothes, but she prefers casual clothes which **show off** her natural beauty.

She is more than just another pretty face, however. She is a **complicated** person whose character has many sides. She is often in the public eye, but she is actually a very shy person who dislikes the **crowds** and noise of Hollywood parties. Her **shyness** is a problem which she is trying to overcome with her friends' help. She is not the sort of person who expects help without giving anything back, however. Daryl is an extremely **caring** person, and she says that she forgets her own problems when she is helping others. She is also a romantic who believes in true love, so she wants to

find someone very special before she starts a family.

Daryl's lifestyle is quite simple. When she is not working, her favourite activities are gardening, playing the piano and making **pottery**, all of which reveal the **creative** side of her character.

Daryl may prefer to sit in the shadows at parties, but when it comes to her beliefs she is not afraid to speak her mind. She has strong views on the **environment**. She believes that our modern lifestyle is destroying the environment. For this reason, she is currently **looking for** a place in the countryside where she can build an **environmentally-friendly** house. She says that she feels most relaxed when she is close to **nature**.

Underneath the success, shyness and simple lifestyle are Daryl's very strong views on life. As she says, "Find out what is important to you — and don't be afraid to live it!"

It is a pleasure to meet an actress who **remains** down-to-earth and **sincere** in a world where fame and success can often harm one's character.

### Lead-in

- 1 Look at the pictures above. Who is famous for:  
a) losing a battle?  
b) painting pictures?  
c) winning tennis matches?  
d) starring in films?  
e) playing the violin?

- 2 Can you think of any other famous people? What are they famous for?

- 3 Guess whether the following statements about Daryl Hannah are true or false. Then listen to the tape and find out if your answers were correct.

- 1 Daryl likes wearing expensive clothes.
- 2 She is shy.
- 3 She likes going to Hollywood parties.
- 4 She believes in true love.
- 5 She does not want to live in the city.
- 6 She cares about the environment.

1 In her everyday life, Daryl Hannah

- A is successful and selfish.
- B enjoys big parties.
- C never goes to parties.
- D feels uncomfortable in large groups of people.

2 One of Daryl's outstanding characteristics is that she

- A is always asking her friends for help.
- B is willing to help others.
- C doesn't pay attention to her friends.
- D gets others into trouble.

3 In her free time Daryl enjoys

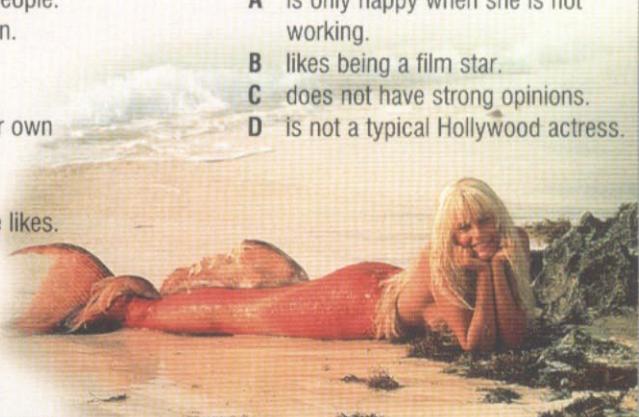
- A doing creative activities.
- B being with simple people.
- C resting in her garden.
- D writing music.

4 Daryl wants to build her own home because she

- A cannot find one she likes.
- B cares about the environment.
- C wants people to know her views.
- D dislikes old houses.

5 The whole article tells us that Daryl Hannah

- A is only happy when she is not working.
- B likes being a film star.
- C does not have strong opinions.
- D is not a typical Hollywood actress.



5 Read the article again and answer the questions.

- a) In which films has Daryl Hannah acted?
- b) What does she have strong feelings about?
- c) What sort of clothes does she prefer to wear?
- d) What are her views on life?

### Phrasal verbs

10 Fill in the correct particle(s).

- |                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| look after:      | to take care of sb/sth                                |
| look for:        | to try to find  |
| look forward to: | to expect sth with pleasure                           |
| look up:         | to try to find a word, name, etc. in a reference book |

## Vocabulary Practice

6 Look at the words in bold on p 10 and try to explain them, then choose any three and make sentences.

7 Match the numbers to the letters.

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 1 slender   | a get over |
| 2 overcome  | b now      |
| 3 reveal    | c discover |
| 4 beliefs   | d show     |
| 5 currently | e ideas    |
| 6 find out  | f slim     |

8 Fill in the correct word from the list below. Use the words only once.

true, strong, golden, shadows, natural, public, fall, speak

- |                            |                       |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 ..... sand               | 5 ..... beauty        |
| 2 to ..... in love with sb | 6 to sit in the ..... |
| 3 in the ..... eye         | 7 ..... views         |
| 4 ..... love               | 8 to ..... her mind   |

### Prepositions

9 Fill in the correct prepositions, then choose any three and make sentences.

1 to star ..... a film; 2 to look fantastic ..... expensive clothes; 3 to believe ..... sth; 4 ..... the countryside; 5 to be close ..... sth; 6 to have strong views ..... life

### Words often confused

11 Fill in the blanks with the correct word(s).

famous for - popular with

- |   |
|---|
| 1 Switzerland is ..... skiers.  |
| 2 Carl Lewis is ..... winning four gold medals in the 1988 Olympic Games. |
- wait for - expect
- |   |
|---|
| 3 I ..... to get a letter from John tomorrow. |
| 4 Please ..... me; I am almost ready.         |

- Read the article again and make notes under the following headings, then talk about Daryl Hannah.

**Appearance      Character      Hobbies      Beliefs**

### Follow-up

## Grammar in Use

### RELATIVE PRONOUNS

- 12** Look at the words in bold and say which a) are used for people, b) show possession, c) are used for things.

- 1 Daryl is not the sort of person **who/that** expects help without giving anything back.
- 2 She prefers casual clothes **which/that** show off her natural beauty.
- 3 She is a complicated person **whose** character has many sides.

- 13** Join the sentences using **who, which or whose**.

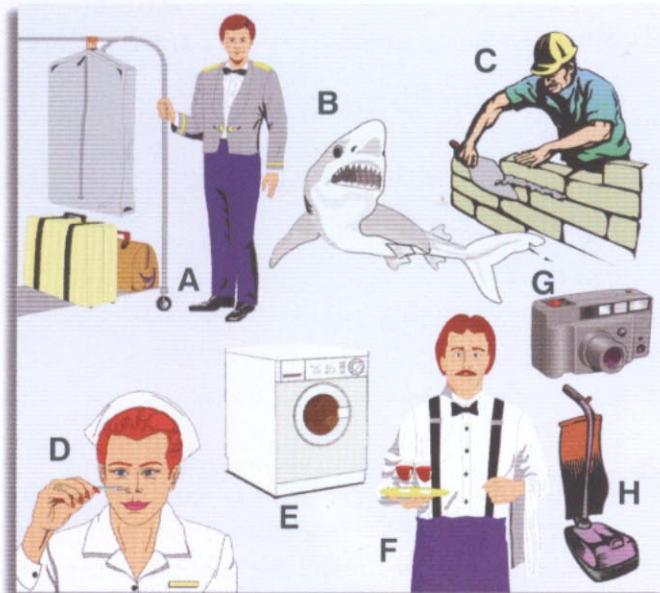
- 1 Ms Brown is a friendly person. She likes meeting new people. *e.g. Ms Brown is a friendly person who likes meeting new people.*
- 2 She lives in a big house. The house is near the park.
- 3 Steven is a lawyer. His office is in Baker Street.
- 4 Claire is a model. She has been in many fashion shows.
- 5 Sarah is wearing a nice dress. The dress fits her perfectly.

- 14** Underline the correct word.

**who's** = who is/who has      **whose** shows possession

- 1 That's the man **who's/whose** Sally's friend.
- 2 That's the man **who's/whose** son is my friend.
- 3 That's the man **who's/whose** got an Alsatian dog.
- 4 That's the man **who's/whose** dog keeps barking at night.

- 15** Write sentences as in the examples.



*e.g. A porter is someone who carries suitcases.*

*A vacuum cleaner is a machine which cleans carpets.*

### Adverbs of frequency

Adverbs of frequency (*sometimes, usually, never, etc.*) go **before** the main verb but **after** the verb "to be" and after auxiliary verbs. *e.g. He never gets up late. She is sometimes late for work.*

- 16** Read the table, then listen to the tape and tick (✓) the correct boxes. Finally, write sentences as in the example.

| How often does Daryl ...     | always | usually | sometimes/occasionally | rarely/hardly ever | never |
|------------------------------|--------|---------|------------------------|--------------------|-------|
| play the piano/make pottery? |        |         |                        | ✓                  |       |
| travel by plane?             |        |         |                        |                    |       |
| go to parties?               |        |         |                        |                    |       |
| get up early?                |        |         |                        |                    |       |
| eat fattening food?          |        |         |                        |                    |       |

*e.g. Daryl usually plays the piano or makes pottery in her free time.*

- 17** What do you **always/usually/sometimes/occasionally/rarely/hardly ever/ never** do in your daily routine?

- 18** Fill in each gap with only one word.

Naomi Campbell, the famous model, is very tall 1) ..... a perfect figure. She 2) ..... a dark complexion and beautiful brown eyes. 3) ..... straight black hair falls past her shoulders. When she 4) ..... not working, she usually wears casual clothes. Naomi 5) ..... reading and often goes to the theatre. Travelling is what she likes 6) ..... . She always travels abroad when she has free time. Naomi spends a lot of time 7) ..... the gym and she does not eat fattening food. She believes that working hard 8) ..... the only way to succeed in life.



## Pronunciation

### 19 First listen and tick. Then, listen and repeat.

|       | /n/ | /ŋ/ | /ŋk/ |
|-------|-----|-----|------|
| thing |     |     |      |
| thin  |     |     |      |
| think |     |     |      |

|      | /n/ | /ŋ/ | /ŋk/ |
|------|-----|-----|------|
| sin  |     |     |      |
| sink |     |     |      |
| sing |     |     |      |

### Forming adjectives

We can form adjectives from nouns or verbs by adding **-ful** (e.g. wonder → wonderful), **-ous** (e.g. danger → dangerous), **-ible** (e.g. terror → terrible), **-ing** (e.g. excite → exciting), **-ed** (e.g. bore → bored) and **-ive** (e.g. create → creative)

### 20 Fill in the correct derivatives of the words in bold.

What is each paragraph about?

Brad Pitt is one of Hollywood's brightest stars. He is a very 1) ..... (**success**) actor who has starred in many films, such as *Interview with the Vampire* and *Twelve Monkeys*.

He is tall and slim. His 2) ..... (**beauty**) blue eyes and good looks are difficult to forget.

Brad Pitt is a 3) ..... (**humour**) person; his friends enjoy his company. He is a sensible person who does not lead a 4) ..... (**glamour**) life.

When he has free time, he enjoys reading about architecture, a subject that he finds very 5) ..... (**interest**). He also enjoys listening to music and has a huge CD collection.

Brad Pitt is a 6) ..... (**talent**) as well as a handsome young actor. We are sure to see a lot more of him in the future!



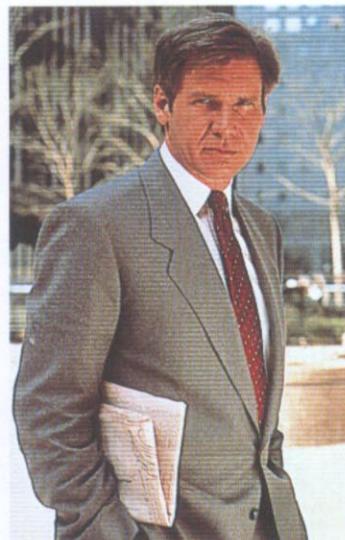
### 21 Read the table, then listen to the tape and fill in the missing words.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| job:        | a.....   |
| films:      | S..... W....., Raiders of the Lost Ark   |
| appearance: | t....., well-built, hardly any wrinkles, tanned s..... face, b..... eyes, brown hair starting to turn g..... |
| character:  | private, s....., caring  |
| interests:  | works with environmental g.....  |
| hobbies:    | likes w..... with his hands and b..... things  |

## Writing (describing a famous person)

When we describe a person, we talk about his/her appearance, character and hobbies/interests. We start a new paragraph for each topic.

- 22 Imagine you are a reporter. Look at the paragraph plan below, then write an article describing Harrison Ford. You may use the information given in Ex. 21.



### Plan

#### INTRODUCTION

Para 1: name - what he is famous for

#### MAIN BODY

Para 2: appearance (looks, e.g. tall, well-built, etc., clothes, e.g. casual clothes, etc.)

Para 3: character (what he is like e.g. kind, patient, etc. with justification)

Para 4: hobbies/interests (activities he enjoys doing/doesn't enjoy doing)

#### CONCLUSION

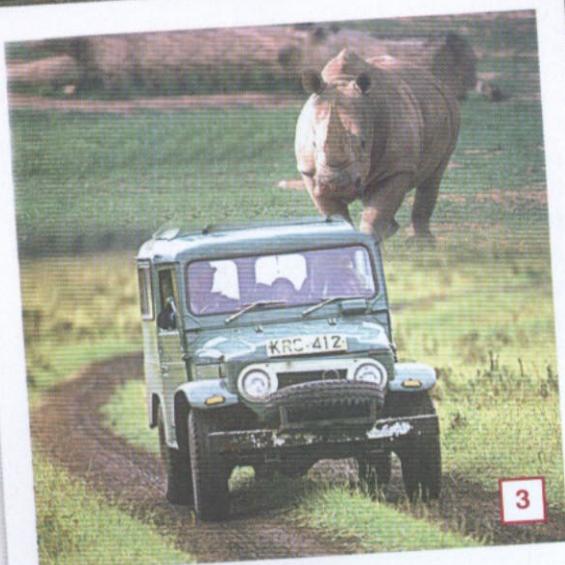
Para 5: final comments (say whether you like him or not and what you think of him)

## Words of Wisdom

Read these sentences. What do they mean?

- "A famous person is someone who works hard all his life to become known, then wears dark glasses so that nobody will recognise him." (Fred Allen)
- "Try not to become a man of success, but rather try to become a man of value." (Albert Einstein)
- "All that glitters is not gold." (William Shakespeare)

# UNIT 3



## Reading

- 4** Read these letters and find the sentence which best describes each picture. Now look at the words in bold and try to explain them, then choose any three and make sentences.

Dear Tim,

Greetings from Mombassa! It's such an exotic place! We're staying at a **fabulous** hotel. The weather is hot and **sticky** here.

Yesterday, we went on a safari through Tsavo East National Park. We saw many wild animals there. While we were driving through in our jeep a huge rhino **chased** us! We've been swimming at Nyali Beach almost every day and we've got great **tans**.

The food here is delicious. We've been eating mangoes and pineapples and we've even tried fish curry!

Love,  
Barbara and John

A

Dear Tim,

I'm spending a week in Vienna. I've never seen such a beautiful city. I'm staying at a lovely **guest-house** in the town centre. Unfortunately, the weather is a bit cold and rainy.

I've seen some **magnificent** palaces since I came here. Yesterday morning I went to St Stephen's Cathedral. While I was taking pictures someone stole my bag. Luckily, I didn't have much money in it! In the evening I went to a concert of Strauss's music – all waltzes, of course!

I've been eating a lot ever since I arrived. The food is excellent – especially the cakes. I think I've **put on weight**.

Bye for now,  
Janet

B

Dear Tim,

Hi! I'm on holiday in Crete. I'm staying at a **marvellous camp-site** by the sea. The weather is warm and sunny.

I've seen the **incredible** Minoan Palace at the **ancient** city of Knossos. Last week I visited the Archaeological Museum. I have been **exploring** all the **gorgeous** sandy beaches in the area. Yesterday while I was **scuba-diving**, I found an amazing underwater **cave**.

I have been eating a lot of **traditional** food. I've even tried **snails**. Crete is a wonderful island. I'm having so much fun!

Love,  
Bob

C

## Speaking

Read the letters again. In teams, ask and answer questions about where the people are staying, the weather, places they have visited, things they have been doing and their good or bad experiences.

## Language Development

- 5** Find the adjectives in the three letters on p. 14 which are used with the following nouns.

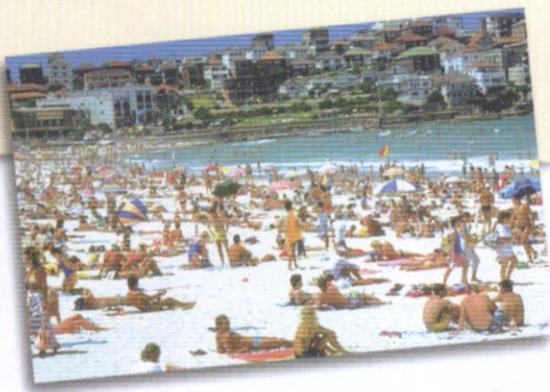
place, hotel, guest-house, camp-site, weather, palaces, beaches, food, city, cave, island

- 6** Read the paragraph below and replace the words in bold with their opposites from the list.

unfriendly, dirty, awful, lousy, horrible, crowded, disgusting, cloudy, filthy

Now write the new paragraph.

You won't believe what a 1) **fabulous** place this is! We are having a 2) **wonderful** time. The weather is 3) **sunny**, and the hotel we are staying in is really 4) **clean**. The beach is 5) **quiet** and the water is 6) **clear**. The local people are very 7) **friendly** and the food is 8) **delicious**. I've never had such an 9) **enjoyable** time in my life!

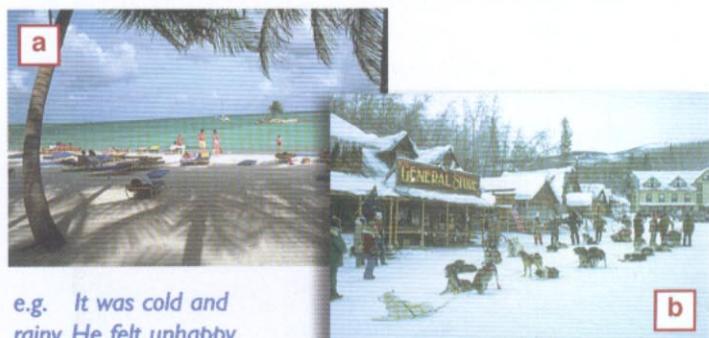


- 7** Listen to the dialogue and write down four questions asking for information. Now act out a similar dialogue trying to persuade your partner to go on holiday with you. You may use adjectives from Exs. 5 and 6 to help you.

e.g. A: What is Malta like?

B: It's really fabulous/gorgeous/fantastic. etc.

- 8** Look at the two pictures. What is the weather like in each picture? Read the extracts and underline the odd word out from the words in bold. In which extract is the weather a) hot and sunny? b) cold, rainy and cloudy? c) snowy and freezing? d) stormy, windy and rainy? How did the people feel in each situation?



e.g. It was cold and rainy. He felt unhappy, miserable and depressed.

1 It was cold and rainy. The sky was covered with dark grey clouds. I didn't go anywhere and spent most of the time in my hotel room watching TV. I felt so **calm**, **unhappy**, **miserable** and **depressed** that I took the first train back home.

2 Strong winds kept blowing the whole time we were there. On the third night, a terrible storm broke. It was pouring with rain and the lightning lit up the night sky. I was so **frightened**, **relaxed**, **scared** and **uneasy** that I left early the next morning.

3 It was hot and sunny. Every day we sat in the guest-house garden enjoying the sunshine. In the afternoons a light breeze blew in from the sea and cooled us. We felt so **happy**, **refreshed**, **sad** and **cheerful** that we stayed there a whole month.

4 The next day, we woke up to see that everything was white. Snow was falling lightly and it was freezing. We spent the day making snowmen and skiing on the slopes. We felt so **excited**, **joyful**, **moody** and **delighted** that we decided to go there again next year.

- 9** Fill in the correct verb from the list.

do - go - take - have

- |                              |                          |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 ..... on holiday/on a trip | 4 ..... for a walk       |
| 2 ..... some shopping        | 5 ..... some sightseeing |
| 3 ..... a holiday            | 6 ..... skiing           |

## Grammar in Use

### PAST SIMPLE - PAST CONT. - PRESENT PERFECT - PRESENT PERFECT CONT.

**10** Identify the tenses in bold, then match them with the correct tense description. How is each tense formed? When do we use each tense?

- 1 Yesterday morning I **went** to St Stephen's Cathedral.
  - 2 While I **was taking** pictures someone stole my bag.
  - 3 I **have been exploring** all the gorgeous sandy beaches in the area.
  - 4 We've **been swimming** at Nyali Beach almost every day and we've got great tans.
  - 5 I've **seen** the incredible Minoan Palace.
  - 6 I think I've **put on** weight.
- a longer past action interrupted by a shorter action
  - b action which happened in the past at a definite time
  - c past action having visible results in the present
  - d action which began in the past and is still going on
  - e statement of personal experiences or changes
  - f recent action when the time is not mentioned

#### Time words used with:

**Past Simple:** ago, yesterday, last month/week, etc.

**Past Continuous:** when, while, as

**Present Perfect:** never, ever, before, already, yet, for, since

**Present Perfect Continuous:** for, since

**11** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.



1 While she .... (**have**) lunch someone ..... (**steal**) her camera.



2 He is dirty. He ..... (**repair**) cars since morning.



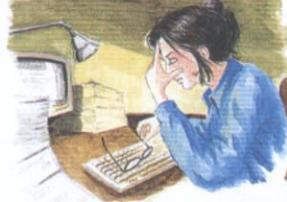
3 He is sunburnt. He ..... (**lie**) in the sun for hours.



4 While they ..... (**explore**) a cave a shark ..... (**appear**).



5 While she ..... (**ski**) she ..... (**break**) her leg..



6 She is tired. She ..... (**work**) since morning.

**12** Read the dialogue and fill in the correct tense, then listen to the tape and check your answers. Now act out the dialogue.

- A: Hi Sally! I didn't know you were here. When 1) ..... (**you/come**)?  
 B: Last Friday.  
 A: So you 2) ..... (**be**) here for a week, right?  
 B: Yes, we're staying at the Paradise Hotel. When 3) ..... (**you/arrive**)?  
 A: Late yesterday evening. I'm staying at a guest-house by the sea. So, what 4) ..... (**you/do**)?  
 B: Well, we 5) ..... (**swim**) every day. The beaches are so clean.  
 A: 6) ..... (**you/see**) the old temple yet?  
 B: Yes, we 7) ..... (**go**) there on Monday. It's really fascinating. Unfortunately, as we 8) ..... (**explore**) it Jane 9) ..... (**slip**) and 10) ..... (**twist**) her ankle.  
 A: Oh dear! Is she any better now?  
 B: Much better, thanks. Listen, have you got any plans for tonight?  
 A: Not really.  
 B: Why don't you come with us to the beach party? We 11) ..... (**go**) to one a few days ago and it 12) ..... (**be**) great fun. They 13) ..... (**serve**) delicious food and we 14) ..... (**dance**) till the early hours.  
 A: That sounds great! Where shall I meet you?

**13** Fill in the gaps with the correct adverb. Then say what tense they go with.

for, since, ago, already, yet, while, so far, ever, when, never

- 1 She **left** for her holiday in Spain a week .....
- 2 I **have been going** on holiday to Italy ..... four years.
- 3 Have you ..... travelled by ferry before?
- 4 I've ..... been to a foreign country before.
- 5 She **has been skiing** ..... she was a child.
- 6 I don't want to go to Hawaii again. I've ..... been there twice.

- 7 I haven't unpacked my suitcase ..... so I can't go out.  
 8 Dad was driving the car ..... Mum was reading the map and giving directions.  
 9 She was sunbathing ..... it started to rain.  
 10 I've been to four different beaches .....

**14** Study the pairs of sentences below, then complete the following sentences using the words in bold. Use two to five words.

- I have never travelled by plane before.  
It's the first time I have travelled by plane.
- It's a long time since we went on holiday.  
We haven't been on holiday for a long time.
- When/How long ago did he leave for Cyprus?  
How long is it since he left for Cyprus?
- The last time I went to Spain was last summer.  
I haven't been to Spain since last summer.
- James last went to Munich three years ago.  
James hasn't been to Munich for three years.

- 1 The last time we went fishing was last summer.  
**have** We ..... last summer.  
 2 She has never eaten Chinese food before.  
**time** It's the ..... Chinese food.  
 3 When did he go to Naples?  
**since** How long ..... to Naples?  
 4 It's a long time since we ate out.  
**eaten** We ..... a long time.  
 5 He last went to Delhi five years ago.  
**for** He has ..... five years.

## Pronunciation

**15** First listen and tick. Then, listen and repeat.

|        | /t/ | /d/ | /ɪd/ |
|--------|-----|-----|------|
| folded |     |     |      |
| lived  |     |     |      |
| cooked |     |     |      |

|         | /t/ | /d/ | /ɪd/ |
|---------|-----|-----|------|
| stayed  |     |     |      |
| looked  |     |     |      |
| painted |     |     |      |

## Writing

(a letter describing your stay at a holiday resort)

When writing a letter describing your stay at a holiday resort, you should talk about the place (where it is, what it is like, when you arrived there), accommodation (where you are staying), the weather, sights you have visited, activities you have been doing, the food, any good or bad experiences you have had and your impressions. Organise your thoughts in paragraphs and be careful to use the correct tenses.

- 16** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense. In which paragraph does Vicky talk about a) the weather? b) sights/activities? c) food/experiences?



Dear Angie,

I 1) ..... (write) to you from Madrid. My family and I 2) ..... (come) here on holiday ten days ago. We 3) ..... (stay) in a fabulous hotel in the city centre. So far the weather 4) ..... (be) fine. We 5) ..... (do) a lot of sightseeing. We 6) ..... (already/be) to the Plaza Monumental, a huge stadium where bullfights 7) ..... (take) place. However, we 8) ..... (not/be) to the Prado Museum yet. I 9) ..... (try) paella yesterday at an open-air restaurant. The food 10) ..... (be) delicious and the service 11) ..... (be) excellent. The only bad thing was that while we 12) ..... (enjoy) our dessert, it started raining. Fortunately it was just a shower! Well, I must go now - we're going to Toledo today.

Love,  
Vicky

- 17** Imagine you are on holiday. Use the paragraph plan below to write a letter to your friend.

### Plan

Dear ..... (your friend's first name)

### INTRODUCTION

Para 1: greetings, say where you are

### MAIN BODY

Para 2: say where you are staying and what the weather is like

Para 3: sights you have seen/activities

Para 4: food you have tasted/good and bad experiences

### CONCLUSION

Para 5: end the letter

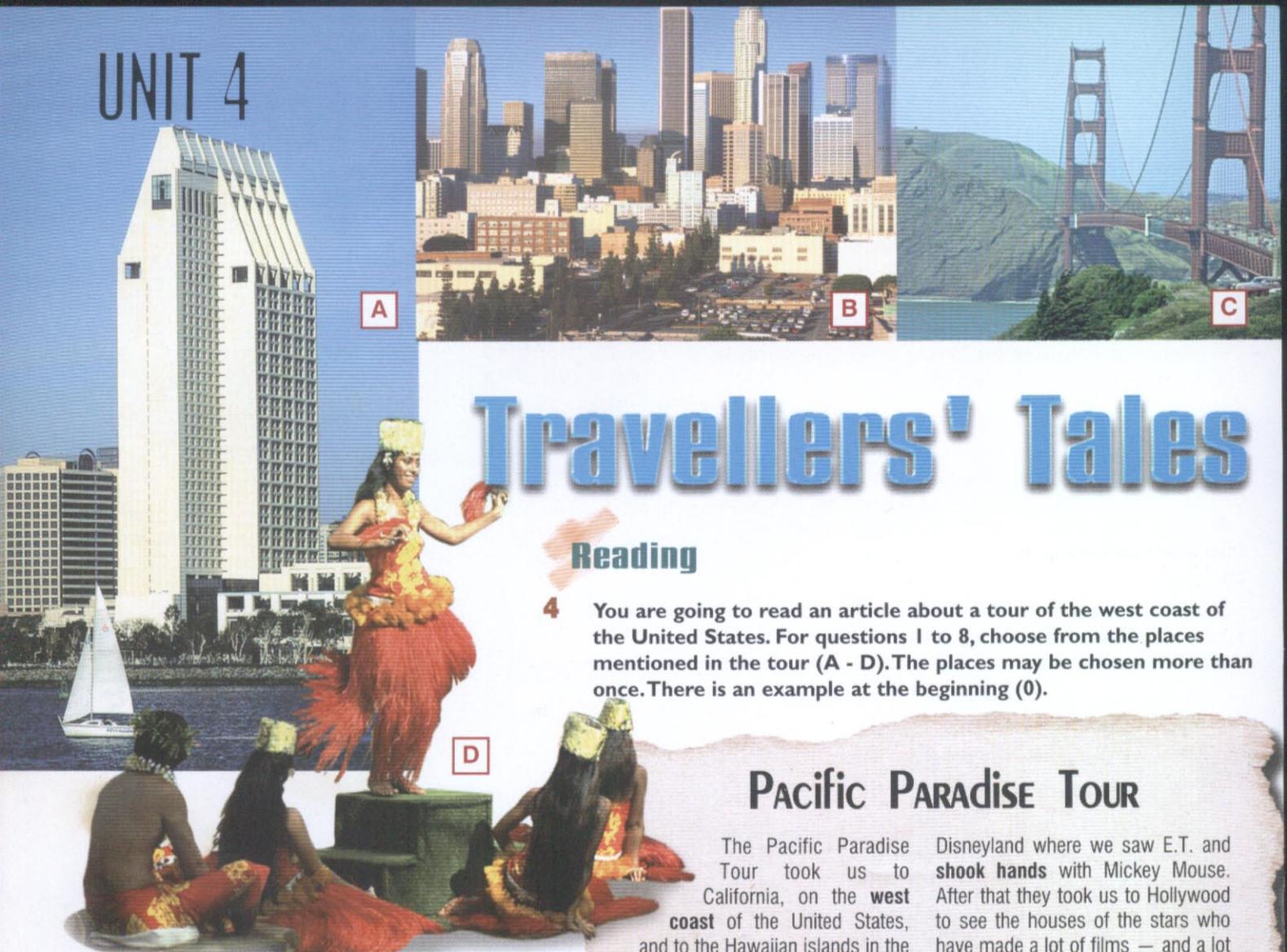
Love,  
(your first name)

## Words of Wisdom

Read these sentences. What do they mean?

- Travel broadens the mind.
- All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy.

# UNIT 4



## Travellers' Tales

### Reading

- 4** You are going to read an article about a tour of the west coast of the United States. For questions 1 to 8, choose from the places mentioned in the tour (A - D). The places may be chosen more than once. There is an example at the beginning (0).

### Pacific PARADISE TOUR

The Pacific Paradise Tour took us to California, on the **west coast** of the United States, and to the Hawaiian islands in the **Pacific Ocean**. With beautiful countryside, exciting cities and fantastic beaches, this holiday had everything.

The first place we stopped at was **San Francisco**, in **northern** California. This city is famous for its **cable cars** — and it certainly needs them because San Francisco is extremely **hilly** and has some very steep roads! By the sea, next to the fishing boats, there are the fish restaurants. Here we enjoyed watching the **street actors** and musicians as we ate delicious fresh fish. One thing we'll never forget is the Golden Gate Bridge, which is very big and beautiful.

The next city on the tour was **Los Angeles**. This city is very exciting and has some very famous attractions. The nearby beaches are long and sandy and the mountains outside the city are high and dry. We visited the beach where they were **filming** Baywatch. We also went to

Disneyland where we saw E.T. and **shook hands** with Mickey Mouse. After that they took us to Hollywood to see the houses of the stars who have made a lot of films — and a lot of money!

The last place we visited in California was **San Diego**, a city with sun, sand, sea and all kinds of watersports. We went to the San Diego Zoo which is one of the world's largest zoos. We also visited Mexico, which is only a **short drive** away from San Diego.

Finally, we went to **Hawaii**. It's paradise! We sat on golden beaches with green **palm trees** and watched **amazing** red sunsets. We also saw colourful fish at Sea Life Park and went **snorkelling** in Hanauma Bay. In the evenings we enjoyed the lively clubs, bars and **ice-cream parlours**. Best of all, we ate fantastic Hawaiian food while watching Hawaiian people performing **traditional** Polynesian dances.

This holiday was fantastic. So when you have time, get on the first plane to the west coast of The United States and have the time of your life!

### Lead-in

- 1 Have you ever travelled abroad? Where did you go? What did you see there?
- 2 Match the pictures with the places: **San Francisco**, **Los Angeles**, **San Diego**, **Hawaii**. What are these places famous for?
- 3 Match two things from the list to each place. Now listen to the tape and check your answers.

- |                 |                        |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| 1 San Francisco | a cable cars           |
| 2 Los Angeles   | b traditional dances   |
| 3 San Diego     | c a zoo                |
| 4 Hawaii        | d Disneyland           |
|                 | e golden beaches       |
|                 | f a famous bridge      |
|                 | g rich people's houses |
|                 | h watersports          |

**Which sentences refer to which place(s)?**

- |                 |             |
|-----------------|-------------|
| A San Francisco | C San Diego |
| B Los Angeles   | D Hawaii    |

The city is built on hills.

**0** **A**

There is a famous theme park.

**1**

It is very close to another country.

**2**

The local food is delicious.

**3**

Entertainers perform as you eat.

**4**

You can see the homes of famous people.

**5**

You can see interesting creatures under the sea.

**6**

**8 Replace the words in bold with others from the list.**

colourful, perfect, delicious, gorgeous, tiny, delightful, huge, fantastic



Last winter I went on a skiing holiday to the Alps. We stayed in a **1) small** chalet which had a **2) big** fireplace in every room. The weather was **3) good** so we were able to go skiing every day. In the evenings we had dinner at **4) nice** restaurants in the village. The food was really **5) good**. There were some **6) nice** shops so I bought a **7) nice** jumper. We stayed there for a week. We had a **8) good** time.

**Words often Confused****9 Fill in the gaps with one of these words.**

look - watch - see - take - bring

- 1 Can you ..... that girl? She's hiding behind the tree.
- 2 I always ..... my favourite TV programme on Saturday afternoons.

- 3 ..... at this statue! It's gorgeous.
- 4 Can you ..... me a glass of water, please?
- 5 ..... the books back to the library, please.

**10 Fill in the correct particle(s).****Phrasal Verbs**

- |              |                                |
|--------------|--------------------------------|
| run into sb: | to meet sb by chance           |
| run out of:  | to finish; have no more of     |
| run after:   | to chase                       |
| run over:    | to hit sb/sth with a car, etc. |

- 1 A car almost ran ..... my dog.
- 2 The ball rolled down the hill and the children ran ..... it.
- 3 While we were driving to Paris, the car ran ..... petrol.
- 4 Guess what! I ran ..... Bill Garring yesterday.

**Prepositions****11 Fill in the correct prepositions, then choose any three and make sentences.**

- 1 ..... the west coast ..... the United States; 2 ..... the Pacific Ocean; 3 famous ..... sth; 4 ..... a tour; 5 shake hands ..... sb; 6 sit ..... golden beaches; 7 get ..... a plane

**Follow-up**

- Read the article again and talk about San Francisco, Los Angeles, San Diego and Hawaii in terms of **sights / activities**.

**5 Look at the words in bold in Ex. 4 and try to explain them, then choose any three and make sentences.****6 Match each word from column A with its opposite from column B.**

| A           | B           |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1 beautiful | a dull      |
| 2 delicious | b ugly      |
| 3 fresh     | c southern  |
| 4 exciting  | d tasteless |
| 5 dry       | e wet       |
| 6 northern  | f stale     |

**7 Fill in the correct word from the list below. Use the words only once. cable, palm, steep, street, short, fishing, traditional, golden**

- 1 ..... boats
- 2 ..... trees
- 3 ..... dances
- 4 ..... cars
- 5 ..... beaches
- 6 a ..... drive
- 7 ..... roads
- 8 ..... actors

## Language Development

When you describe a place, you can give examples of what you can see, hear and smell. This makes the description more interesting.

- 12** Read the phrases and say which sense each one describes. Then, choose suitable phrases to fill in the descriptions below.

crashing waves, leaves rustling, blue sea, smell of wet soil, straw umbrellas, tall green trees, smell of suntan oil, birds chirping, bright sun

**A**

My holiday was perfect. From my balcony I saw  
1) ..... which lined the beach. I

spent my days under the 2) ..... , swimming in the 3) ..... and playing in the 4) ..... . The 5) ..... filled the air.

**B**

The forest was peaceful. There were  
1) ..... all around me. The only sounds I heard were the 2) ...  
..... on the trees and 3) ..... . The 4) ..... filled the air.

- 13** Listen to the tape and tick the phrases that you hear. What can the man hear/see/smell?

- |                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 honking horns         | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 loud music            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 car exhaust fumes     | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 a large car park      | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 tall skyscrapers      | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 salty air             | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7 the busy street below | <input type="checkbox"/> |

- 14** Look at the map and fill in the gaps with one of the prepositions from the list.

above, next to/beside, opposite, below, over, near/close to, by

- 1 The restaurant is ..... the square.
- 2 The car park is ..... the cinema.
- 3 The school is ..... the library.
- 4 The hairdresser's is ..... the chemist's.
- 5 The chemist's is ..... the hairdresser's.
- 6 The church is ..... the river.
- 7 There is a bridge crossing ..... the river.



### Giving Directions

turn left/right, go straight on, go past, take the first/second turning on the right/left, carry on/keep going until you get, turn into

- 15** Listen to the tape and fill in the gaps with the words you hear. Then, read the dialogue and mark the route on the map starting from the library. Finally, in pairs ask for and give directions a) from the hospital to the hotel and b) from the theatre to the library, using the expressions in the box above.

Tom: Excuse me, sir. Can you tell me the way to the post office, please?

Man: Yes. Well 1) ..... Loring Road until you get to Park Avenue.  
2) ..... and go straight on until you get to Cross Street.

Tom: Okay.

Man: Then 3) ..... into Cross Street and 4) ..... the supermarket which is on your left. Cross Mill Street and keep going. You'll see a hotel on one corner, and 5) ..... the hotel is a newsagent's. The post office is 6) ..... the newsagent's. You can't miss it.

Tom: Thanks very much.

## Grammar in Use

**16** Look at the Grammar Reference Section on pp. 103 - 104 (the definite article). Then, read the following text and put a tick (✓) for every correct use of **the** and a cross (✗) for every incorrect use of it.

- 1 Yesterday was a busy day. I took Jenny to the
- 2 school, and then I went to the station to pick up my
- 3 friend, Helen, who had just arrived from the Spain. We
- 4 visited Tower Bridge and the Buckingham Palace.
- 5 Helen hoped she could see the Queen. Then we
- 6 went to the Trafalgar Square and took lots of photos.
- 7 We also visited the British Museum and Soho.

**17** Match the numbers to the letters, then, join the sentences as in the example. How are **such/so** used?

e.g. *It was such a lively place that I went out every night.*  
*The place was so lively that I went out every night.*

**A**

- 1 It was a lively place.
- 2 The island was peaceful.
- 3 The museum was amazing.
- 4 It was a noisy hotel.
- 5 The streets were crowded.

**B**

- a I didn't sleep well.
- b We spent a whole day there.
- c We missed the appointment.
- d We felt completely relaxed.
- e I went out every night.

**18** Look at the different expressions you can use to recommend (or not recommend) a place.

You really ought to/should, I strongly advise you to (not to), The best thing you can do is to, It's worth going/visiting, etc.

Write complete sentences using the expressions above and the notes below as in the example.

e.g. You really ought to visit Disneyland as it's fun for the whole family.

- 1 visit/Disneyland/fun/whole family
- 2 go/Black Rock Beach/perfect for windsurfing
- 3 not/swim/Sunset Beach/water/deep
- 4 go to island/September/less crowded
- 5 go Cairo/many things/see

## Writing (a visit to a place)

When we write an article describing a visit to a place, we use past tenses to describe what we saw, what we did there, the weather and our impressions of the place. We use present tenses to say where the place is and what it is like. We can use our senses (sight, hearing, smell) to make the description more interesting.

**19** Read this article from a school magazine and fill in each gap with an adjective ending in **-ous, -ly, -ic, -y, -ful**. Then say what each paragraph is about.

The 1) **famous** (fame) Black Forest and the picturesque town of Baden Baden are in south-western Germany. I went there recently in search of a 2) ..... (peace), relaxing holiday and I certainly wasn't disappointed.



The town is surrounded by

3) ..... (marvel) scenery, clear lakes and tall mountains. The weather during my visit was so cool and 4) ..... (mist) that it created a wonderfully 5) ..... (mystery) atmosphere.

There are plenty of interesting places to visit including the town's 6) ..... (delight) 15th century palace and the Roman baths. I also explored the 7) ..... (shade) Black Forest where all I could hear was the gentle sound of flowing streams. The food was excellent. I tried several 8) ..... (taste) local dishes. I also bought some cuckoo clocks as souvenirs.

I had the holiday of a lifetime in Baden Baden. With its 9) ..... (friend) people, and 10) ..... (fantasy) natural surroundings, I would certainly recommend it to anyone who wants to go on holiday in the near future.

**20** Imagine you visited a place in your country which you really liked. Describe it using the paragraph plan below.

### Plan

#### INTRODUCTION

Para 1: where the place is and why you went there

#### MAIN BODY

Para 2: further details about the place/weather conditions

Para 3: what you saw and what you did there

#### CONCLUSION

Para 4: how you feel about the place and whether you recommend it or not

## Words of Wisdom

Read these sentences. What do they mean?

- "When a man is tired of London, he is tired of life." (Samuel Johnson)
- When in Rome, do as the Romans do.

# UNIT 5



▲ jungle floor, sticky, icy, hissing, python, thrilled, help, screamed



▲ branches, freezing, sea, pool, thunder, lightning, horror, cold



▲ moonless forest, snow, rain, midnight, tired, whispered, dark shape, fired

# Enjoy Reading

## Lead-in

- 1 What types of stories can you think of and which of them do you enjoy reading? Look at these three pictures. How do you think the people feel in each one? What do you think is happening? Can you guess what they are saying or thinking?
- 2 Listen Look at the words under each picture and guess which of them might appear in the story based on the picture you can see. Then listen and underline the words you hear.

## Reading

- 3 First read the following beginnings of stories and underline the sentences which best describe the pictures. Then try to explain the words in bold. Finally, answer the questions below.

A Frances Clark looked up from the flower she was studying on the soft **jungle floor**. She felt hot and sticky as it was the middle of the afternoon. Everything was **strangely** quiet. No animal sounds, no **rustling** of leaves. Suddenly she heard something **hissing** behind her head. Her eyes grew wide with **terror** as a huge python **wound** itself around her. "Help!" she **screamed**. "Someone help me!"

B "Oh no, I can't hold on," Sammy shouted. He **grabbed** desperately for the branches of a tree as the freezing water of the river carried him towards the sea. Cold rain was pouring down while the thunder boomed, covering his shouts for help. The bright lightning made the night seem like day. Sammy was **stiff** from the cold.

C Jake and Bill were walking through the **moonless** forest. The snow was falling silently around them. It was about midnight and they were feeling tired. Suddenly Jake stopped. "There it is," he whispered to Bill. Slowly he raised his gun, aimed at the dark shape, then **fired**.

- 1 Where and when did each story take place?
- 2 What was the weather like in each story?
- 3 Who was involved in each story? How did these people feel? Why did they feel this way? What happened?
- 4 Underline the use of the senses in the beginnings above.

## Speaking

Read the beginnings again and match them with the titles: a) **The Flood** b) **Horror in the Jungle**  
c) **The Monster**

Can you think of another title for each story?

## Language Development

- 4** The use of various adjectives makes stories more interesting. Read the list of adjectives and match them with the nouns as in the examples. You may use some adjectives more than once.

A. moonlit, rough, calm, moonless, stormy, dark, sunny, clear, cloudless

- |   |            |       |       |
|---|------------|-------|-------|
| 1 | cloudless, | ..... | sky   |
| 2 | moonlit,   | ..... | night |
| 3 | sunny,     | ..... | day   |
| 4 | rough,     | ..... | sea   |

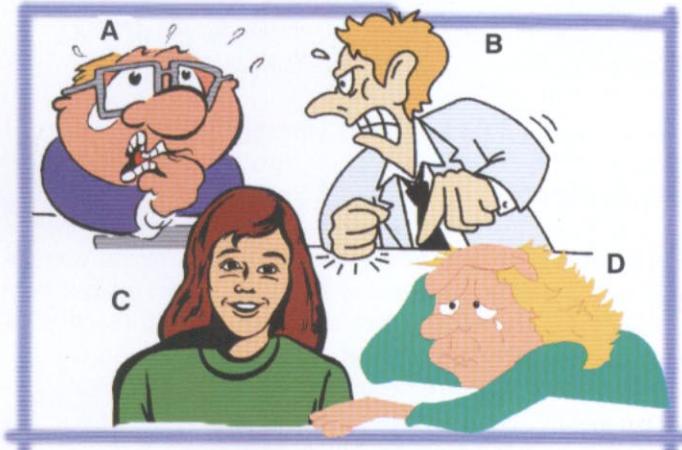
B. snowy, steep, pebbly, noisy, crowded, high, narrow, expensive, empty, sandy, tree-covered

- |   |          |       |            |
|---|----------|-------|------------|
| 1 | noisy,   | ..... | street     |
| 2 | crowded, | ..... | restaurant |
| 3 | pebbly,  | ..... | beach      |
| 4 | high,    | ..... | mountain   |

You can show a person's feelings by describing their behaviour. This makes a story more lively.

- 5** Look at the pictures and say how each person feels. Then match the adjectives in the list with the pictures. When do you feel like this?

scared, annoyed, sad, angry, miserable, terrified, glad, frightened, thrilled, pleased, depressed, furious, delighted



- 6** Read the sentences and match them with the adjectives below.

embarrassed, nervous, frightened, happy, angry, surprised, bored, miserable

- 1 His knees were trembling; he thought he was going to faint. e.g. *He was frightened.*
- 2 Ann sat at her desk staring out of the window.
- 3 Everybody laughed at him and his face went very red.
- 4 His eyes and mouth were wide open but he couldn't say anything.
- 5 Liz sat quietly in the corner with her head in her hands, sighing from time to time.
- 6 She started to shake as she went into the exam room.
- 7 The driver shook his fist and started shouting.
- 8 Tim's eyes were shining and he had a huge smile on his face.

## Grammar in Use

### PAST SIMPLE – PAST CONTINUOUS

- 7** Join the sentences below using **when**, **while**, **and**, **so**, or **as/because** as in the example.

e.g. *The sun was shining and the birds were singing.*

- |   |                                  |   |                               |
|---|----------------------------------|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 | The sun was shining.             | a | His wife was getting dressed. |
| 2 | Bill was watching TV.            | b | He was very tired.            |
| 3 | I was having a bath.             | c | The birds were singing.       |
| 4 | I heard a noise in the garden.   | d | I went to see what it was.    |
| 5 | He went to bed early last night. | e | My doorbell rang.             |

- 8** Look at the sentences in Ex. 7. Which tenses are used for: a) actions which happened one after the other? b) a past action in progress interrupted by another past action? c) past actions of a certain duration which happened at the same time? d) an action which happened at a definite past time? e) giving a background description to events in a story?

- 9** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense. Justify the use of the Past Continuous.

- A 1) ..... (look) out of the window. It 2) ..... (be) dark and wet outside. Big raindrops 3) ..... (run) down the glass. Then she 4) ..... (see) them and 5) ..... (gasp) in horror. Two thin, white creatures 6) ..... (walk) towards the window. Her hands 7) ..... (begin) to shake as she 8) ..... (realise) that their eyes 9) ..... (stare) right into hers.

- B It 1) ..... (rain) heavily and the wind 2) ..... (blow). Sam 3) ..... (walk) back home. It 4) ..... (be) very late and the streets 5) ..... (be) empty. Suddenly he 6) ..... (hear) footsteps behind him. They 7) ..... (get) closer and closer. Sam 8) ..... (turn) round and 9) ..... (see) a slim woman in a dirty raincoat walking towards him.
- C Peter 1) ..... (work) in the garden. He 2) ..... (dig) a deep hole when he 3) ..... (find) an old silver box. When he 4) ..... (open) it, he 5) ..... (be) surprised to see an old map.

### Avoiding Repetition

When there are two past continuous forms in the same sentence, you can avoid repetition by just using the -ing participle. e.g. *He was looking around and he was crying for his mother. He was looking around crying for his mother.*

### 10 Now do the same with these sentences.

- 1 He was running fast and he was carrying a big box.
- 2 They were standing at the edge of the cliff and they were admiring the view.
- 3 Tim was watching TV and he was eating his supper.

### 11 Fill in the gaps with words from the list. Then underline the direct speech in the paragraph. crashing, sailing, enjoying, trying, blowing, sitting, making, talking, helping



It was a sunny afternoon. David and his friends were 1) ..... along the coast, 2) ..... the warm weather. A light breeze was 3) ..... across the bay. They all felt relaxed. Rick and Tyler were 4) ..... .

David sail the boat as the others were 5) ..... .

6) ..... about their

plans for the summer holidays. Suddenly, the wind started blowing strongly and the sea became rough. Waves began 7) ..... against the boat, 8) ..... everyone lose their balance. Dark clouds covered the sky. David was 9) ..... to lower the sails when Rick cried "Where's Tyler?" ...

### 12 What is direct speech? Find examples of it in the beginnings on p. 22 and underline them.

### Writing (setting the scene)

When we write a story we begin by setting the scene. In order to do this, we imagine that we are looking at a picture and we try to describe the **place** (where), the **time** (when), the **weather**, the **people** involved and their **feelings**. We can use our **senses** to make the description more lively. That is, we can describe what we **see** (e.g. a *huge python*), **hear** (e.g. *hissing*), **feel** (e.g. *soft jungle floor*) or **smell** (e.g. *the scent of pine trees*).

We use **direct speech** (e.g. "Help!" she screamed), a **variety of adjectives** (e.g. *horrified, stormy*), **adverbs** (e.g. *silently, strangely*) and **verbs** (e.g. *whispered, screamed*) to make a story more interesting.

### 13 Put the verbs in brackets into Past Simple or Past Continuous, then answer the questions.

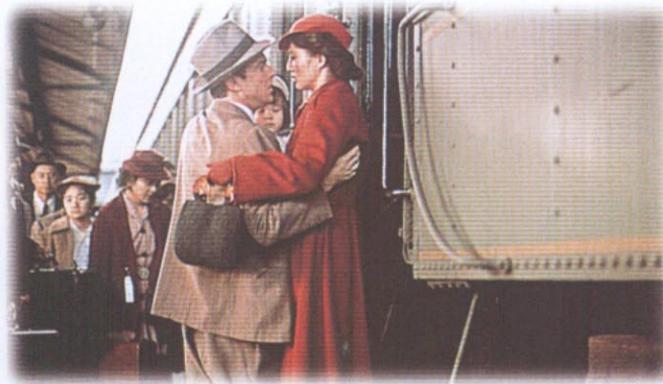


- a When and where did the story take place?
- b What was the weather like?
- c Who were the people involved and how did they feel?
- d Which sentences describe the senses?

- It 1) ..... (be) a bitterly cold night. It 2) ..... (rain) heavily. Sally 3) ..... (walk) along the empty road and tears 4) ..... (run) down her face. She 5) ..... (reach) a street lamp and stopped there. She 6) ..... (have) nowhere to go to, no one to stay with ... nothing! She was soaked to the skin but this 7) ..... (not/seem) to bother her. Suddenly she 8) ..... (feel) a gentle tap on her shoulder. Surprised, she 9) ..... (turn) around. In the pale yellow light she 10) ..... (see) a stranger. He 11) ..... (wear) clothes as black as night, but his face 12) ..... (be) kind and calm.

- 14** Look at the picture and think of as many words as you can that relate to the scene. Then listen to the tape and answer these questions.

- What was the weather like?
- Where and when did this happen?
- Who was involved? How did they feel? Why?



- 15** Read the beginnings and endings and match them. How does the writer set the scene? How does he finish each story? Underline the direct speech in them.

## Beginnings

1 Janet Black looked out of the window of the old building. It was dark and wet. Rain was coming down heavily. The streets were empty. No cars, no people ... nothing. Suddenly a flash of lightning tore across the sky. She shivered with fear. A huge spaceship was approaching the building. "They've found me," she gasped. "I can't get away now."

2 "I don't want to die!" David shouted. The wind was blowing against his sweaty face as he held onto the rocky cliff. He was tired. He didn't know how much longer he could keep himself from falling. He looked up at the clear morning sky. Suddenly he heard the sound of a helicopter approaching him.

## Endings

a David could hear the siren of an ambulance as the helicopter landed. People were waiting anxiously for them. A man opened the ambulance door. "Don't worry! Everything will be OK," the man told him. David looked up at his kind face and smiled weakly. He was exhausted but he was alive.

b Professor Miller put his arms gently around her shoulders. She was still shaking with fear but she felt safe. The flashing lights were gone, along with the strange faces, and the professor was holding her. She took his hand in hers. Then she noticed it: the same strange scar like the one the aliens had. "Oh no! This can't be true!", she cried.

- 16** The paragraph below sets the scene of a story. Read it and try to fill in the missing words. Now listen to the tape and check your answers. Can you think of any other beginnings for the story?

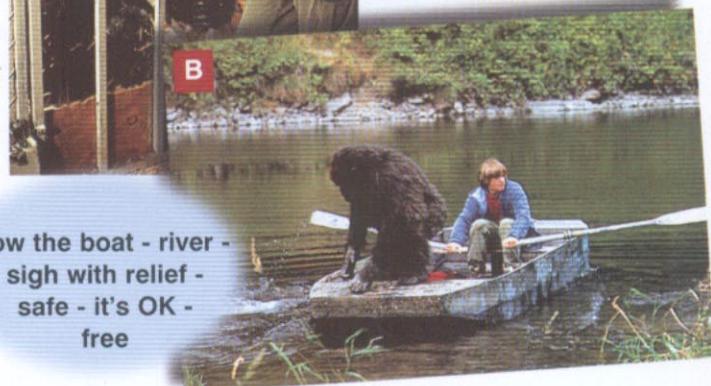
Diane Brookes 1) ..... at her wooden desk. It was about midnight and everything was 2) ..... . She felt 3) ..... after all this hard work, but now the computer disc was ready. Suddenly she heard a 4) ..... outside her office. Someone was trying to 5) ..... in. Diane wasn't surprised. She knew they were coming for her. She looked at the door, then calmly asked, 6) " ..... ..... you?"



- 17** Think of a sentence for each picture using direct speech, then write a beginning for picture A and an ending for picture B using the words in the bubbles. Finally, listen and find out how similar your version is to the one on the tape.



James - paths -  
animals - zoo - empty -  
2 o'clock - cold and wet -  
gorilla's cage - shocked -  
cuts - dirty fur - touch  
hand - help



row the boat - river -  
sigh with relief -  
safe - it's OK -  
free

## Words of Wisdom

Read these sentences. What do they mean?

- There are no dull subjects; there are only dull writers.
- The pen is mightier than the sword.

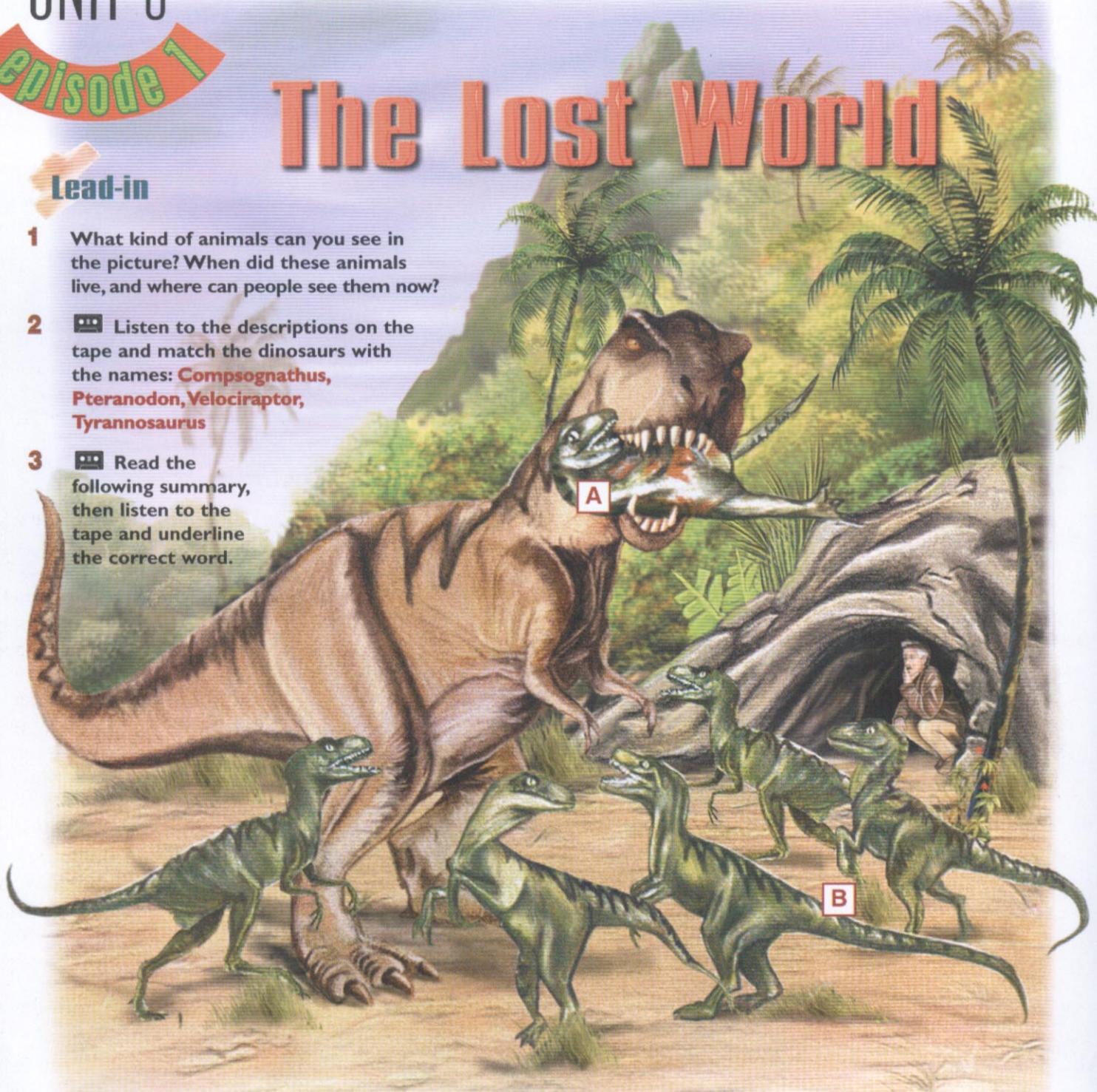
# UNIT 6

## episode 1

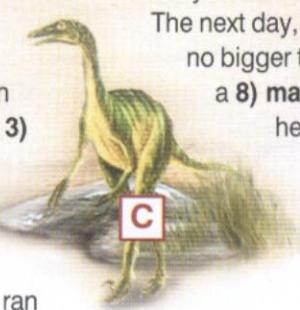
# The Lost World

### Lead-in

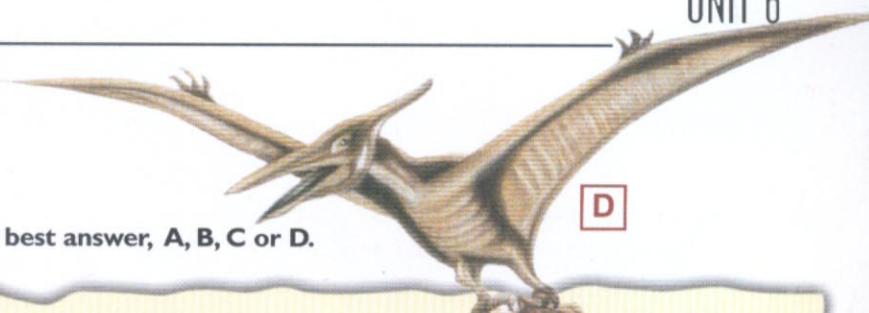
- 1 What kind of animals can you see in the picture? When did these animals live, and where can people see them now?
- 2 Listen to the descriptions on the tape and match the dinosaurs with the names: **Compsognathus, Pteranodon, Velociraptor, Tyrannosaurus**
- 3 Read the following summary, then listen to the tape and underline the correct word.



Professor James Kearns opened his eyes, and everything was different. Suddenly a giant 1) snake/lizard ran from the forest and tried to attack him. Then many of them appeared. They all walked on 2) two/four feet and had long tails. They were called 3) brontosauruses/velociraptors and they were dinosaurs which liked to kill in groups. They were about to attack him when a huge tyrannosaurus broke through the 4) mountains/ trees. It grabbed and killed 5) one/two of the creatures. The others ran



away in fear. The professor found a 6) house/cave to hide in. The next day, as he was picking fruit he saw a baby dinosaur, no bigger than a 7) chicken/rabbit. He tried to touch it but a 8) man/woman pushed him out of the way. She held her 9) spear/sword near the dinosaur's mouth. The baby dinosaur took a large bite out of it. James tried to speak to her but a flying 10) pterodactyl/pteranodon swooped down and picked James up with its sharp 11) claws/teeth.



## Reading

4 Read the text and for questions 1 - 4 choose the best answer, A, B, C or D.

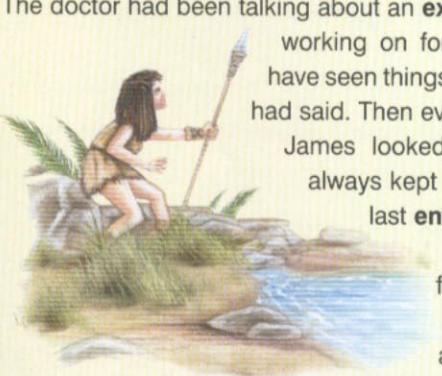
Professor James Kearns opened his eyes, and everything was different. The air felt heavy and wet. Thick green forests and huge **piles** of rocks surrounded him.

Suddenly a giant **lizard** ran from the forest and tried to attack James with its sharp **claws**, but he was able to dive out of the way. Then another appeared, and another. They all walked on two feet, had long tails, and their heads were like those of **alligators**. James had only seen these **creatures** in books before. They were called velociraptors, and they were dinosaurs which liked to kill in groups. Soon, six of these angry-looking creatures were circling him, making horrible **growling noises**.

He screamed for help, but he only heard his own voice **echo** through the air. The velociraptors were about to attack when a huge tyrannosaurus broke through the trees. It must have been fifteen feet in height. Two of the velociraptors tried to attack the tyrannosaurus, but the enormous creature grabbed one, killed it with his huge jaws and dropped it on the ground. The others ran away in fear.

Later, James found a cave to hide in. It was a deep, dark cave, but he stayed near the front where there was light coming in from outside.

All of his memories were unclear. He and Dr Applebaum had been walking home from the university where they both taught. The doctor had been talking about an **experiment** he had been

 working on for quite a long time. "I have seen things you can't imagine," he had said. Then everything went black.

James looked at the notebook he always kept in his coat pocket. The last **entry** said:

"It's as if you are falling. You feel nothing, then, boom, you're in another time period."

 Had the doctor said that? The professor's head hurt and he felt weak. He **lay** down for a few moments, and soon he was fast asleep.

The **roar** of a dinosaur woke him up. It was night-time, and nothing was **visible**. There was only the sound of something breaking through the trees, then **gradually** it **faded away**. He took a lighter from his pocket and used this to start a fire. Then he began writing in his notebook, keeping a record of all his thoughts and feelings.

The next day, James left the cave to pick fruit from the **nearby** trees. While he was out he saw a small baby dinosaur, no bigger than a chicken. It had yellow and green stripes on its back and white legs. It looked so small and **harmless** that he tried to touch it. Suddenly, something moved in the **bushes**. A woman, dressed in animal skins and carrying a **spear**, pushed him out of the way. She looked at him as if he had done something wrong, then, to show him what she meant, she held her spear near the dinosaur's mouth. The baby dinosaur took a large bite out of it, then ran away quickly. James was shocked at the dinosaur's **viciousness**.

"Can you speak?" he asked her.

The woman seemed **confused** by his voice. She made a **grunting** noise, then pushed him away from the fruit trees with her spear.

They were standing in an open area, when a huge shadow covered them both. The woman looked up, then jumped out of the way. A flying pteranodon **swooped** down, picked James up with its sharp claws and flew away.

James looked down and saw the woman staring up at him, but there was nothing she could do.

"Somebody help me!" he **yelled** horrified, but his voice just echoed over the hills and valleys of this prehistoric land.

- 1 James had an idea of what the velociraptors were because  
 A he had written a book about them.  
 B he had watched a film about them.  
 C they looked like alligators.  
 D he had seen pictures of them.

- 2 Dr Applebaum had told James about  
 A another time period.  
 B an experiment.  
 C the dinosaurs.  
 D the university.

- 3 Why did James wake up in the night?

- A He heard a noise.  
 B He wanted to write something in his notebook.  
 C He had a headache.  
 D He was too cold.

- 4 When the woman saw the shadow, she  
 A hid in the fruit trees.  
 B moved away quickly.  
 C bent down.  
 D lay on the ground.

## Vocabulary Practice

**5** Look at the words in bold on p. 27 and try to explain them, then choose any three and make sentences.

**6** Fill in the correct word(s) from the list below. Use the words only once.

fast, to make growling, to work on, thick, to pick, sharp, to scream, dark, to run, to start

- |                      |                        |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1 ..... forests      | 6 a ..... cave         |
| 2 ..... claws        | 7 to be ..... asleep   |
| 3 ..... noises       | 8 ..... a fire         |
| 4 ..... for help     | 9 ..... fruit          |
| 5 ..... away in fear | 10 ..... an experiment |

## Follow-up

- When did Professor Kearns feel a) horrified and b) shocked?
- Describe the baby dinosaur and the velociraptors.
- Read the summary in Ex. 3, then close your book and tell the story to your partner in your own words.

## Grammar in Use

### PAST PERFECT – PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

**7** Identify the tenses in bold then match them to the correct tense description. How is each tense formed? When do we use each tense?

- She **had finished** her homework by the time her mother got home.
  - He was tired because he **had been working** hard all day.
  - He **had been studying** for two years before he got his degree.
- a past action continuing over a period up to a certain time in the past  
 b past action which happened before another in the past  
 c past action of a certain duration with visible results in the past

### Time Words used with:

**Past Perfect Simple:** by the time, after, before, by six o'clock/midnight, etc.

**Past Perfect Continuous:** for, since

**8** Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Perfect Simple or Past Perfect Continuous.

- By the time we got to the cinema, the film ..... (already/start).
- She let me use her camera after she ..... (show) me how to use it.
- Henrietta ..... (travel) for three days before she reached her destination.
- Mark ..... (type) for so long that his fingers hurt.
- He ..... (save) up for months before he bought a car.
- The team ..... (practise) for the big match since January.
- She left the room only after she ..... (look) everywhere for her missing bracelet.
- She ..... (leave) before Paul arrived.

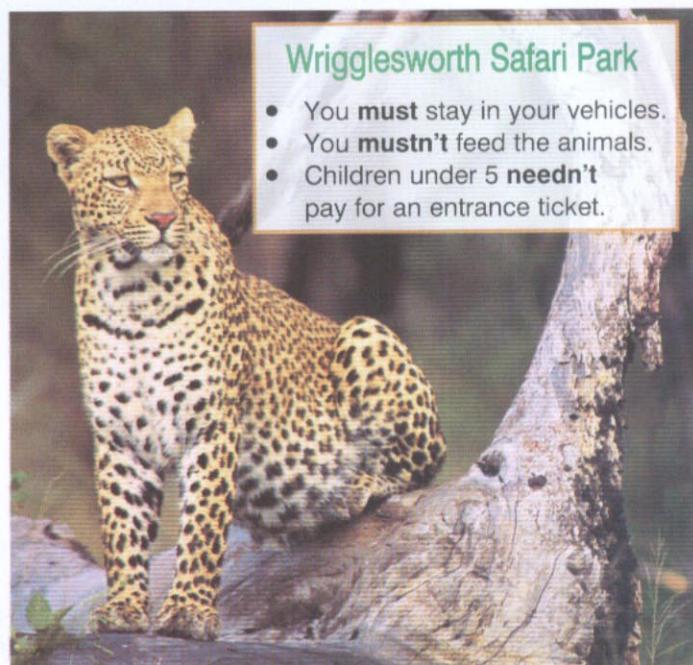
**9** Read the short dialogue, then working in pairs, act out similar dialogues using the notes below.

- |                                 |                                      |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| A: Have you ever been to a zoo? | 1 theatre/two weeks ago/entertaining |
| B: Yes, I have.                 | 2 funfair/yesterday/thrilling        |
| A: When was that?               | 3 opera/last winter/boring           |
| B: Last year.                   | 4 circus/three weeks ago/fascinating |
| A: What was it like?            | 5 fashion show/last Sunday/fun       |
| B: It was exciting.             |                                      |

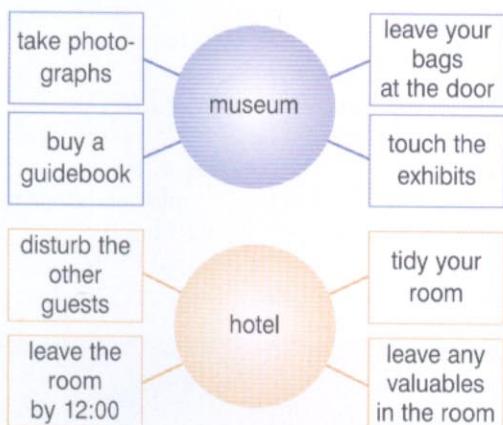
### Expressing Obligation/Prohibition/Absence of Necessity

**10** Look at the sign and match the words in bold with their synonyms, then say what each modal verb expresses.

- a. don't have to    b. have to    c. are not allowed to



- 11** Look at the notes and make sentences using **must, mustn't or needn't**.



- 12** Look at the sentences. How do we form comparisons? When do we use **as...as**? When do we use **than**? When do we use **more/less + adjective**?

Cows are **as big as** horses.

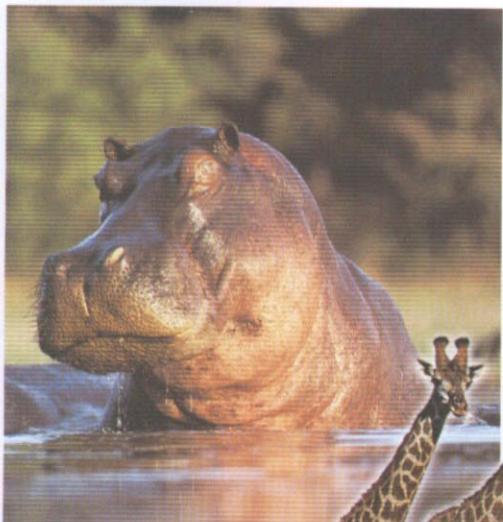
Seals aren't **as smart as** dolphins.

Alligators are **longer than** lizards.

Snakes are **more dangerous than** spiders.

Spiders are **less dangerous than** snakes.

- 13** Look at the pictures and the notes then compare hippos with giraffes using **as...as, less... than, more... than**.



*big teeth, big mouth,  
heavy, long neck,  
short legs, tall,  
fat, run fast,  
dangerous*

- 14** You will hear a museum guide talking to some children about the dinosaur exhibits in the museum. Read the table then listen to the tape and fill in the missing information.

|               | habitat  | food                      | size                    | weight         | special features                           |
|---------------|--|---------------------------|-------------------------|----------------|--|
| Compsognathus | all over the<br>.....<br>except in<br>Antarctica | meat                      | .....<br>cm tall        | .....<br>kilos | very fast<br>.....                         |
| Pteranodon    | ....., Asia<br>and North<br>America              | .....                     | .....<br>bodies         | very<br>light  | very long<br>beak                          |
| Velociraptor  | .....  | small<br>animals          | medium<br>size          | .....<br>kilos | strong, fast<br>runners,<br>.....<br>claws |
| Tyrannosaurus | .....<br>America<br>and<br>East Asia             | other<br>big<br>dinosaurs | .....<br>metres<br>tall | very<br>.....  | strong<br>legs,<br>long .....              |

- 15** First read the notes then listen to the second part of what the museum guide said to these children and underline the correct words.

dinosaurs disappeared **150/65** million years ago

#### Theories about why they disappeared:

- Theory A: • a giant meteorite from space **hit/broke** the earth  
• huge dust clouds rose up and blocked the **moon/sun-light**  
• all plants died and dinosaurs starved or **froze/ burned** to death

- Theory B: • climate changed **a lot/a little** because the continents were moving around  
• summers got **hotter/colder** and winters got **hotter/cold-er**  
• dinosaurs had such big problems with these changes that they died

- Theory C: • a poisonous **plant/animal** appeared which killed dinosaurs  
• as a result the meat-eating dinosaurs had no food, so they died

#### Writing (Project)

Using the information about dinosaurs in this unit write your project describing them. Say when and where they lived, what they ate and looked like and why they disappeared. Cut pictures from the Photo File Section at the back of the book to use with your project.

# Module Self-Assessment 1 (Units 1 - 6)

## 1 Choose the correct item.

- 1 Tina is a very ..... child who loves giving presents.  
A ambitious B generous C determined D sensitive
- 2 The child felt ..... when the lion roared at him.  
A frightened B depressed C furious D miserable
- 3 That dress really ..... you. You look terrific!  
A matches B goes with C suits D fits
- 4 Jane is a ..... person; she never lies.  
A sincere B caring C shy D creative
- 5 Please don't ..... my secret to anyone.  
A find out B reveal C overcome D remain
- 6 The explorer heard a snake ..... in the grass.  
A yelling B shouting C hissing D screaming
- 7 We visited a(n) ..... temple that was built thousands of years ago.  
A traditional B modern C ancient D new
- 8 ..... that strange man sitting over there?  
A Whose B Which C Who D Who's
- 9 My voice ..... in the empty house.  
A echoed B grunted C roared D rustled
- 10 You ..... buy a ticket ; I've got a spare one.  
A mustn't B needn't C must D need

## 2 Fill in the correct word.

(5 marks)

slender, overcome, stiff, fired, gradually, experiment, chased, harmless

- 1 We did an interesting ..... in science class today.
- 2 My dog is quite ..... ; he never bites.
- 3 She is tall and ..... . She's got a lovely figure.
- 4 The fox ..... the rabbit, but it got away.
- 5 Susan aimed at the target and ..... the gun.
- 6 After Mary fell into the river she was ..... from the cold.
- 7 Jill is trying to ..... her fear of flying.
- 8 They had problems in the beginning, but their relationship ..... improved.

## 3 Fill in the correct word.

(8 marks)

strong, true, pebbly, thick, public, asleep, pick, speaks, fishing, casually

- 1 It was such a .... beach that it wasn't comfortable to lie on.
- 2 In autumn, farmers ..... fruit from their trees.
- 3 She was ..... dressed in jeans and a T-shirt.
- 4 Famous people are always in the ..... eye.
- 5 She has ..... views on environmental problems.
- 6 Colourful ..... boats lined the small harbour.
- 7 The ski chalet was surrounded by ..... forests.
- 8 Ann always ..... her mind and doesn't care what others might think.
- 9 People always try to find ..... love in their life.
- 10 By the time I got home, Susan was fast .....

(10 marks)

## 4 Fill in the correct particle(s) from the list.

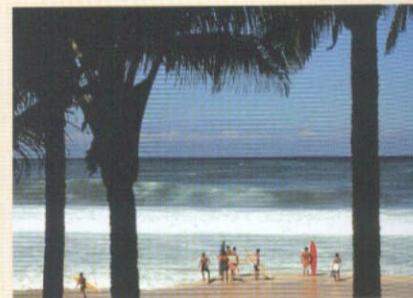
for, up, after, forward to, out of, into, after, over

- 1 I looked ..... his number in the telephone directory.
- 2 We've run ..... eggs. We need to buy some.
- 3 I am looking ..... a new flat.
- 4 The motorcycle almost ran ..... the cat.
- 5 She looks ..... her younger sister when Mum is at work.
- 6 Tom is looking ..... his first day at college.
- 7 On my way home from work, I ran ..... my friend Susan.
- 8 The policeman was running ..... the thief.

(4 marks)

## 5 Fill in the correct preposition.

- A Last May Joe and I visited Hawaii, 1) ..... the Pacific Ocean. Hawaii is famous 2) ..... its beautiful beaches and dark volcanoes. We went 3) ..... a tour of all the islands, which Joe really enjoyed. We also spent hours lying 4) ..... golden beaches. When it was time to get 5) ..... the plane and go back home, we both felt very sad!



- B I was quite impressed when I visited Hollywood, California last year. My favourite part of the trip was a visit to a studio where a film was being made. I saw the actor who was starring 1) ..... the film and I even got to shake hands 2) ..... him! I couldn't believe that I was so close 3) ..... such a big star. He was dressed 4) ..... expensive clothes and looked fabulous. It was an experience that I'll never forget.

(9 marks)

## 6 Underline the correct word.

- 1 We **looked/watched** the match on TV.
- 2 Can you **watch/see** that man over there?
- 3 Could you **take/bring** me a cup of tea, please?
- 4 Athens is **famous for/popular with** the Parthenon.
- 5 I **waited for/expected** Ann for ten minutes, then I left.

(5 marks)

## 7 Complete the sentences using the words in bold. Use two to five words.

- 1 It's the first time I have travelled by plane.  
**never** I ..... before.
- 2 When did you buy your new car?  
**since** How long ..... your new car?
- 3 The last time we went to the theatre was weeks ago.  
**have** We ..... the theatre for weeks.
- 4 He last saw Greg two weeks ago.  
**seen** He ..... two weeks.
- 5 It's a long time since we ate out.  
**eaten** We ..... a long time.

(5 marks)

**8** Fill in the correct tense.

- A** Last Wednesday afternoon, I left the office early and 1) ..... (go) home. I 2) ..... (invite) some friends to come over for dinner. I 3) ..... (set) the table when the phone 4) ..... (ring). It was my friend Mary. She 5) ..... (tell) me that she couldn't come to my house because she wasn't feeling well. I was disappointed. Luckily everyone else 6) ..... (turn) up and the dinner 7) ..... (go) well.
- B** Tom and Susan 1) ..... (go) camping last month. They 2) ..... (plan) the trip for weeks and were really excited about it. They 3) ..... (have) a good time when the weather suddenly 4) ..... (change). The wind 5) ..... (blow) down their tent so they 6) ..... (decide) to leave. As they 7) ..... (drive) back home, they realised they 8) ..... (leave) their camera behind, so they had to go all the way back to get it. Unfortunately, by the time they 9) ..... (reach) the camp-site, they found out that someone 10) ..... (take) it.

**9** Underline the correct word.

(17 marks)

- They have **already** / **still** finished their work.
- Tom is **always** / **now** late for appointments.
- Jane had prepared a meal **by the time** / **after** John arrived.
- Sally was crossing the street **when** / **since** the bus came.
- Have you **ever** / **never** been to Brazil?
- She has been talking on the phone **for** / **since** hours.
- How long **before** / **ago** did you graduate?
- They were soaked to the skin because they had been walking in the rain **for** / **since** early in the morning.

(4 marks)

**10**

## Fill in "the" where necessary.

- A** My sister recently won a trip to 1) ..... New York, where she visited 2) ..... Statue of Liberty and went on a carriage ride through 3) ..... Central Park. She had a meal at an expensive restaurant where she saw 4) ..... mayor of New York City himself.



- B** My cousin Simon works for 1) ..... "Knights", a large company in the centre of 2) ..... Liverpool. He often has to travel to 3) ..... Paris on business. He has promised to take me with him next time he goes, and show me all the sights, such as 4) ..... Eiffel Tower and 5) ..... Louvre.

(9 marks)

**11** Fill in the gaps with:*who, which, whose, who's*

- That is the man ..... bag was stolen on the train.
- The film ..... is on at the Odeon is a box office hit.
- Janet, ..... father is a doctor, is a friend of mine.
- That's Tom ..... got a Porsche.
- Steve is planning to visit his friend ..... lives in Africa.

(5 marks)

**12** Fill in the gaps with:*needn't, mustn't, must*

- You ..... tell Sarah what her birthday present is – it's a surprise.
- You ..... have a passport if you want to travel abroad.
- You ..... bring a raincoat – the weather forecast said it was going to be sunny.
- Students ..... hand in their exam papers at the end of the exam.
- You ..... collect me from work – I'll take the bus home.

(5 marks)

**13** Look at the pictures and the notes then compare the ostrich with the pelican using (not) as ... as or than. *big wings, long neck, short legs, small head, long beak, run fast*

(6 marks)


**Writing**
**14** Answer the questions.

- How do we start a letter to a pen-friend?
- What plan would you follow if you were asked to describe a person?
- How do we sign off an informal letter?
- What plan would you follow if you were asked to describe a place you have visited?

(8 marks)

TOTAL: 100 marks

# Changes in Life

Units 7-12

## Before you start

- What does your best friend look like? What is he/she like?
- Where do you spend your holidays?

## Read, listen, talk and write about...

### A Ghostly Welcome (Unit 7)

- stories/narrating events
- describing feelings & emotions
- people in dangerous situations



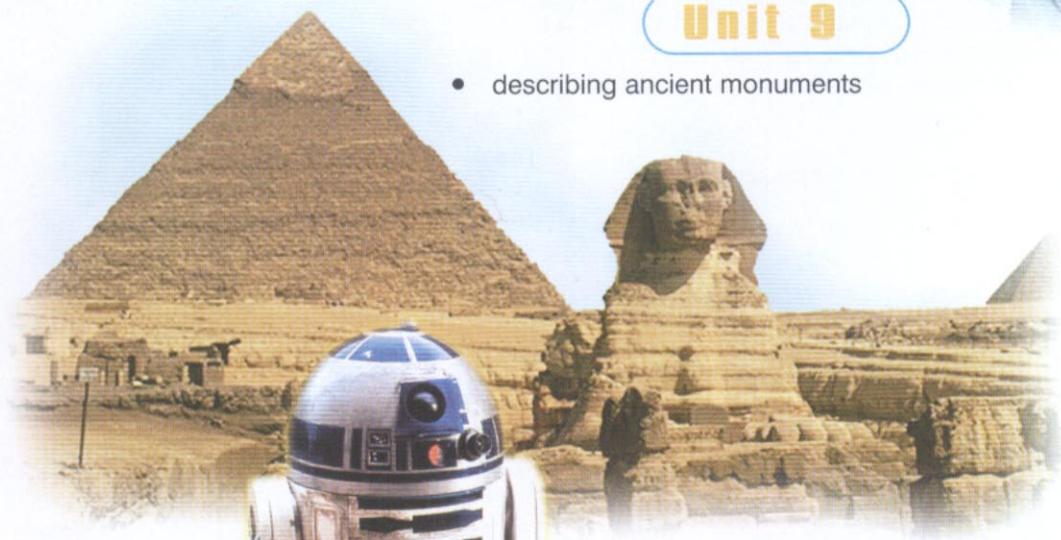
### Hard Times (Unit 8)

- asking for/giving advice
- making recommendations/predictions/offers/suggestions/invitations



### In the Land of the Pyramids (Unit 9)

- describing ancient monuments



### Citizens 2050

(Unit 10)

- life in the future
- making predictions
- expressing opinions

## Narrow Escapes

(Unit 11)

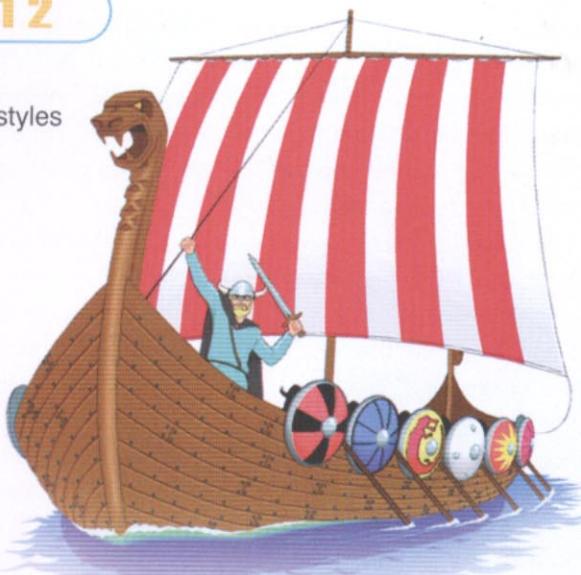
- giving advice
- expressing criticism
- describing accidents



## The Vikings

(Unit 12)

- the Vikings
- explorers' lifestyles



### Learn how to...

- narrate and put events in the right order
- ask for/give advice
- make plans/predictions/suggestions/offers/invitations
- express opinion/criticism
- describe monuments
- compare past, present and future situations
- describe accidents
- describe lifestyles

### Practise ...

- past tenses
- future tenses: will - be going to - present continuous
- Conditionals Type 1
- reported speech
- future continuous/future perfect
- reported orders/commands/requests
- passive voice
- as - like

### Write ...

- a story
- a friendly letter giving advice
- a fact file about the Pyramids
- an article expressing opinion
- a narrative
- a biography

# A Ghostly Welcome



## Reading 4

You are going to read a story. Six sentences have been removed from it. Choose from the sentences A – F, the one which fits each gap (1–5). There is an example at the beginning (0).

Lightning flashed across the sky, followed by the crash of thunder. George Philips was driving carefully along the narrow country lane. It was late at night and he was looking forward to reaching his hotel. Suddenly his **car engine died.** 0 **E** "Blast!" he said angrily. Up ahead in the distance he could see a light coming from a castle. He got out of the car and ran quickly through the pouring rain towards the huge building.

George reached the castle's big wooden door and rang the bell. The heavy door slowly **creaked open**. In front of him **stood** a young woman.

1 **E** "Oh, please come in out of the rain," she said. George thanked her and entered a big **hall**, then introduced himself and explained what had happened. She told him that he was **welcome** to spend the night in the castle and led him into the library. 2 **E** George went to warm himself in front of it. The young woman offered to make some tea and left the room.

George had been standing there for a few minutes when he heard a **voice** behind him. "Good evening. I'm Mrs McDougall. My daughter told me we had a guest. Please, have a seat."

Soon afterwards the daughter came in. 3 **E** After they had finished their tea, Mrs McDougall offered to show him to his room. George was following her up the huge **staircase** when he heard her weeping.

"Is something wrong?" he asked her.

"I'm so sorry," she **whispered** as tears ran down her wrinkled cheeks. "It's just that you remind me so much of my husband. I haven't seen him for ten years." The wind was **howling** outside and George felt a **chill run down his spine**.

When George woke up the next morning, the sun was shining and the birds were singing. 4 **E** He put on his clothes, and went downstairs to thank the two women. He had been **looking for** them for some time before he **realised** that he was alone in the castle. He wrote a note thanking them for their kindness and returned to his car. **To his relief**, when he turned the key, the car started with a roar.

Ten minutes later, George stopped at a café to have breakfast. As the waitress was filling his coffee cup she said, "That was a terrible storm we had last night, wasn't it?" George nodded and took a sip of hot coffee. He told her that, as his car had broken down, the McDougalls had put him up for the night in their castle. 5 **E** "But that's impossible!" she **exclaimed**. "Nobody has lived in that castle since Mrs McDougall and her daughter died in a car accident ten years ago!" George stared at her in disbelief and, trembling with shock, **dropped** his coffee cup onto the floor.

## Lead-in

- 1 Look at the pictures and the title of the story. What do you think the title means? What type of story does it suggest? How do you think the three people feel? Where does the story take place?

- 2 Listen to the sounds on the tape. Can you guess what happens in the story?

- 3 Listen to the tape and find out if your guesses in Ex. 2 were correct.

- A A big crackling fire was burning in the fireplace.
- B He had slept very well the night before and felt **refreshed**.
- C The waitress looked at him in **amazement**.
- D As she looked up at George her face **lit up**.
- E He tried to start the car again, but nothing happened.
- F She was carrying a silver tray with a large teapot and three china cups.



## Vocabulary Practice

- 5** Look at the words in **bold** in Ex. 4 and try to explain them, then choose any five and make sentences.
- 6** Match the letters to the numbers.

|         |                            |
|---------|----------------------------|
| 1 chill | a visitor                  |
| 2 lead  | b show the way             |
| 3 guest | c say "yes" with the head  |
| 4 weep  | d cry                      |
| 5 nod   | e frightening cold feeling |

- 7** Fill in the correct word from the list. Use the words only once.

lightning, country, china, pouring, to take, crash, wrinkled, introduced, to ring, to turn

- |                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 a(n) ..... lane       | 6 ..... cups           |
| 2 ..... rain            | 7 he ..... himself     |
| 3 ..... the key         | 8 a(n)..... of thunder |
| 4 ..... cheeks          | 9 ..... flashed        |
| 5 ..... a sip of coffee | 10 ..... the bell      |

## Phrasal verbs

- 8** Fill in the correct particle.

- break down:** to stop working (of cars, engines, etc.)  
**break into:** to enter a place by force  
**break out:** to begin suddenly (of wars, fires, storms, etc.)  
**break up:** to stop for holidays (of schools, etc.)

- 1 World War II **broke** ..... in 1939.  
 2 School is going to **break** ..... for Christmas on the 22nd of December.  
 3 My car **broke** ..... so I took it to the garage.  
 4 Burglars **broke** ..... my house last night and stole all my jewellery.

## Words often Confused

- 9** Underline the correct word.

- The wooden door **cracked/creaked** as Tim opened it slowly.
- Dry sticks were **creaking/crackling** in the fire.
- We **shouted/whispered** so that the burglar couldn't hear us.
- Sam **stared/glanced** over his shoulder and realised that the man was still following him.
- Everyone **watched/stared** at him when he entered the room wearing two different-coloured shoes.

## Prepositions

- 10** Fill in the correct prepositions, then choose any three and make sentences.

- 1 to get ..... the car; 2 to lead sb ..... a place; 3 ..... his relief; 4 to die ..... a car accident; 5 to stare ..... sb ..... disbelief; 6 to tremble ..... shock; 7 ..... the distance; 8 to remind sb ..... sb/sth

## Follow-up

- **Read the text again and say:**
  - where and when the story took place.
  - what the weather was like.
  - what George did when his car engine died.
  - who welcomed him into the castle.
  - what happened with Mrs McDougall.
  - what happened the next morning.
  - what happened at the end of the story.
- **Direct speech is the speaker's exact words. Read the story again and underline the examples of direct speech in it.**
- **Listen to the sound effects from Ex. 2 again and say what you hear.**  
e.g. *a crash of thunder*

## Grammar in Use

**11** Read the story again and underline the sentences which include *Past Continuous*, *Past Perfect* and *Past Perfect Continuous*. When do we use these tenses?

**12** Give reasons for each of the situations below using *Past Perfect Continuous* as in the example.

e.g. *Tina was wet. She had been walking in the rain without an umbrella.*

- |                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Fiona's eyes were red. | 4 Ann felt sleepy.        |
| 2 Tim felt exhausted.    | 5 Tom was hot and sticky. |
| 3 John was dirty.        | 6 Liz had a headache.     |

**13** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense, *Past Perfect Simple or Continuous* and *Past Simple*.

- 1 By the time we ..... (**get**) home, Sally ..... (**prepare**) a delicious meal.
- 2 The farmer ..... (**take**) a break because he ..... (**work**) in the fields for hours and he was exhausted.
- 3 It ..... (**be**) the most beautiful dress she ..... (**ever/see**).
- 4 When I ..... (**enter**) the room, I ..... (**notice**) that someone ..... (**draw**) the curtains.
- 5 After he ..... (**finish**) packing his suitcases, he ..... (**call**) a taxi.
- 6 By the time Susan ..... (**arrive**) at the station, the train ..... (**leave**).
- 7 She ..... (**travel**) through Europe for a year before she ..... (**decide**) to settle in Spain.
- 8 The room ..... (**be**) much cooler after she ..... (**turn on**) the air conditioning.

**14 GAME** Work in two teams. Continue the story that your teacher starts. If you fail to continue the story, your team loses.

Teacher: *It was midnight. Tim was walking along the street.*

Team A S1: *Suddenly he saw a beggar.*

Team B S1: *He was wearing an old dirty coat, etc.*

## Writing (a story)

Before you write a story:

- Decide on the plot (the events you will include in your story and the chronological order they will appear in).
- Decide on the characters who will be involved.

When you write a story:

- Begin by setting the scene, that is, **where** and **when** the story takes place, **who** is involved and **what** happens. You can use direct speech and a variety of adjectives, adverbs and verbs to make the story more interesting. You can also describe the weather and people's feelings.
- Develop your story by narrating the events which happen before the main (the most important) event, then describe the main event itself. The sequence of events is important. Use time words such as: *at first*, *then*, *while*, *when*, *after*, *before*, *finally*, etc.
- End your story by referring to people's feelings, comments and reactions or the consequences. You can use direct speech and a variety of words to make the ending more interesting.

**NOTE:** *Past Simple*, *Past Continuous* and *Past Perfect* are normally used in stories.

**15** Read the following story and underline the correct time words. Then underline the examples of direct speech. Finally, answer the questions:

- a Where and when did the story take place?
- b Who was involved?
- c What was the main event in the story?
- d What happened at the end of the story?
- e How did the writer begin and end the story?
- f Can you think of a different ending?

"Isn't this exciting?" whispered Janet Porter to the stranger in the next seat 1) **as/after** the plane flew through the dark sky. "Yes, I suppose it is," he replied, smiling politely 2) **as soon as/ before** continuing to read his newspaper. She glanced at her watch. It was half past eleven at night.

Janet was just about to start reading her book 3) **when/until** the man picked up his briefcase and started moving towards the front of the plane. Calmly and quietly, Janet stood up and started to follow him. He opened the cockpit door, walked inside, 4) **then/before** closed it behind him. Most of the passengers on the plane were asleep, but those who were awake were watching every move that Janet made. She squeezed into the tiny space behind the cockpit door and waited. 5) **At first/Seconds later** the

door flew open and the man came out holding a gun. "This is a hijack!" he shouted. "Oh no, it's not," Janet said calmly. She held her police gun to the back of his head and said, "Drop your weapon and lie down on the floor."



6) **A few hours later/As soon as** the plane had landed at the airport, Janet felt relieved and happy.

A police car was waiting for them. They put the man in the car. Janet smiled at her fellow officers and said, "It's over. Nobody was injured. What's next?"

- 16** Put the sentences in chronological order. Then listen to the tape and see if your guesses were correct.



- Two men came out of a building.
- Mark was driving through the streets.
- Mark followed them.
- Mark arrested the men.
- The men jumped into a car and sped away.
- Mark radioed for help.
- The police officers handcuffed the men.
- Police cars blocked the road.

- 17** Look at the pictures. Where and when did the story take place? Who was involved in the story? How did he feel? What happened? Work with your partner and think of a sentence for each picture to make a plot. Now, listen to the story and find out how different your version was. Finally, write the story in your own words.



- 18** Look at the pictures and decide on a plot. Then, using the plot, the words given and the plan, write a story entitled "Lucky to be alive".



Mark! Jump onto my board and push yours towards the shark.

Words to be used in the story: **sunny Sunday morning - beach - golden sand - sign - "No Swimming - Sharks" - ignore - start surfing - shark appear - yell - get onto his board - paddle towards the beach - other board in pieces - safe - lucky to be alive**

### Plan

#### INTRODUCTION

Para 1: set the scene (who, when, where, what)

#### MAIN BODY

Para 2: describe events leading up to the main event

Para 3: describe the main event

#### CONCLUSION

Para 4: end the story (feelings, reactions, comments, consequences)

## Words of Wisdom

Read these sentences. What do they mean?

- "Words are loaded pistols." (Jean-Paul Sartre - French philosopher)
- "Do not fear when your enemies criticise you. Beware when they applaud." (Vo Dong Giang)
- "What you really value is what you miss, not what you have." (Jorge Luis Borges - Argentinian writer)

# Hard Times



## Reading

- 3 Read these extracts, identify each person's problem, then read the advice Auntie Claire gives each one of them. Which piece of advice matches each problem?

**A** I moved to London with my family a month ago. I haven't made any new friends yet and I miss my old friends. I'm going to start at my new school next week but I don't want to. I'm afraid my new **schoolmates** will tease me because of my accent. I think I'll be **miserable** there. I want to go back to my village. What can I do?

**B** I'm a working mother with a two-month-old son. My house is **out on** the pleasure of spending time with my son. I'm thinking of applying for a **part-time job** in a place which is much nearer, **chance** of promotion. Could you please help me?

**C** I am 65 and I have always been kept busy with my shop, but I will be retiring in February, so I'm not going to have anything to do. I'm an **active** person and it will be impossible for me to sit around the house. If I spend my time just going on pensioners' trips or walks in the park, I'll feel **useless**. Any ideas?

## Lead-in

- 1 Look at the pictures. What do you think these people are worried about?

- 2 a. Listen to the three extracts (A, B, C) and match the speakers with the problems.

- "I don't know whether to keep my job."
- "I'm afraid I'll feel useless."
- "I miss my old friends."

- b. Now listen to Auntie Claire and write down one piece of advice she gives to each person.

### Auntie Claire writes:



1 The best thing you can do is to stop worrying. There are so many things you can do to feel useful. How about taking up a hobby which you never had time for before? You could also do some work for charities and help others with your experience and abilities.

2 You ought to think about what is best for your family. If you can afford to live on less money, then you should apply for a part-time job. This will be much better for you because you'll have more time for your son. Alternatively, if your present workplace has got a child-minding centre for its employees' children, I strongly advise you to stay. In this way you'll be close to your son

and you can also seek promotion. Hope this advice is of some help to you.

3 I don't think you should worry so much. Why don't you join a gym? You'll make lots of friends there. If I were you, I wouldn't be afraid of starting at the new school. If you go there with a positive attitude, I'm sure that everything will be OK.

## Vocabulary Practice

**4** Look at the words in bold on p. 36 and try to explain them, then choose any three and make sentences.

**5** Fill in the correct word from the list below.

teased, apply for, promotion, retire, pensioner, seeking, employees

- 1 I've decided to ..... a job at the post office. (**officially request**)
- 2 Most people ..... when they reach a certain age. (**stop working**)
- 3 My grandfather spends most of his time gardening now that he is a(n) ..... (**retired person**)
- 4 My friends laughed and ..... me when they saw my new haircut. (**made fun of**)
- 5 Phil got a(n) ..... last week; now he is the office manager. (**higher position at work**)
- 6 The factory ..... get three weeks' holiday every year. (**workers**)
- 7 If you're ..... solutions to your problems, you should talk to a friend. (**looking for**)

## Follow-up

Underline the expressions that Auntie Claire used to give advice. Then, using these expressions, think of further advice to give to the three people.

## Language Development

**6** Listen to Betty and Frank talking and tick what Frank suggests she should do. Then, using the expressions in the box below, give advice to Betty.



I've put on weight.

- |                   |                           |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 ride your bike  | 5 stop eating fatty foods |
| 2 go jogging      | 6 cut out milk and        |
| 3 take diet pills | bread                     |
| 4 join a gym      | 7 go on a diet            |

### GIVING ADVICE/MAKING RECOMMENDATIONS

Why don't you ...?; You (really) ought to/should ...; You could...; How about/What about + noun/-ing form?; If I were you, I'd ...; The best thing you can do is to ...; I strongly advise you to ...

## Grammar in Use

### WILL – BE GOING TO – PRESENT CONTINUOUS

**7** Identify the tenses in bold, then match them with the correct tense description.

- 1 It's cold. I'll **take** a coat with me.
- 2 I think it'll **rain** tomorrow.
- 3 I'm **going to start** at my new school next week.
- 4 I'm **playing** golf with Paul tomorrow.

- a plans/intentions
- b fixed future arrangements
- c on-the-spot decisions
- d predictions

**8** Jenny is moving from her village to a big city. Listen to the dialogue and take notes. Then say what she **thinks, hopes, expects, etc.** she **will/won't do**.

e.g. She **hopes** she'll find a flat to share ...

**9** Listen to the dialogue. First keep notes, then say what this man is **going to do** when he goes on holiday. Then make similar sentences for the second situation using **be going to**.



When I go on holiday, I'm going to lie on the beach all day long ...



When my children go to summer camp, I'm not going to ...

**10** Fill in "will" or "am going to".

- 1 A: Sheila is thirty minutes late.  
B: I think I ..... give her a call.
- 2 A: Your shirt is dirty.  
B: I know. I ..... wash it.
- 3 A: Would you like tea or coffee?  
B: Oh, I ..... have a cup of tea, please.
- 4 A: The grass needs cutting.  
B: I know. I ..... cut it tomorrow.
- 5 A: Have you decided which dress to buy?  
B: Yes, I ..... buy the red one.

# UNIT 8

We don't use future forms after: **when** (time conjunction), **while, before, until, after, as soon as, by the time, if (conditional), etc.**

**BUT: when** (as a question word) + **will** is correct.

e.g. **When I will reach Hawaii, I'll call you.** (**will** is wrong here)  
**When will he be back?** (**will** is correct here)

## 11 Cross out the unnecessary words where necessary.

- 1 After we ~~will~~ sit our exams, we'll go on holiday.
- 2 I will ring you when I get to the airport.
- 3 By the time I will retire, I'll be very rich.
- 4 If your parents will come, give them this letter, please.
- 5 When will you know your holiday dates?
- 6 Turn off the lights before you will go to bed.
- 7 Buy me a newspaper when you will go out, please.

## 12 Read the dialogue then listen to the tape and fill in the missing words. Now read the theory box and the diary. In pairs, act out similar dialogues using the expressions from the theory box and the notes from the diary.

- A: 1) ..... go out tonight?  
B: I'd love to, but I'm attending a meeting at work tonight.  
A: 2) ..... go out tomorrow night, then?  
B: I'm afraid 3) ..... . I'm babysitting for my sister.  
A: 4) ..... to meet on Friday, then?  
B: I'm sorry. I'm working late that day.  
A: 5) ..... Saturday? Do you have any free time?  
B: Yes, that sounds brilliant! Where shall we go?

### Making suggestions/offers/invitations:

Let's ..., Shall we...?, Why don't we ...?, How/What about ... + -ing?, Would you like to ...?

#### - Refusing:

I'd love to, but ..., I'm afraid I can't ..., I'm sorry I can't ...

#### - Accepting:

I'd love to!, That sounds brilliant!, What a great idea!

**Monday:** go to dentist

**Tuesday:** revise for maths test

**Wednesday:** play tennis with Phil

**Thursday:** go shopping

**Friday:** have dinner with parents

**Saturday:** go to Tom's party

**Sunday:** free

### 1st type Conditional

If + present simple → will/may/can + bare infinitive  
(used to talk about things that may happen in the future)  
e.g. **If it rains, we won't go to the beach.**

We **can go** to the beach **if the weather is fine.**

We can use **unless** (=if not) with this type of conditional. e.g. **Unless it rains, we will go** to the beach.  
(=if it doesn't rain, ...)

## 13 What is Lucy thinking? Make sentences using the notes.



If I get a promotion, ...

- buy a car
- go on a cruise
- move to a bigger house
- buy some new clothes
- have a party

## 14 Join the sentences using **if** or **unless**.

- 1 We may go on a picnic  
2 I'll build more schools  
3 The dog won't bite you  
4 I won't go shopping  
5 I'll buy a new jacket  
6 I won't get a promotion

if  
unless

- a I become president.  
b I work hard.  
c I have time.  
d you bother it.  
e it rains.  
f I can afford it.

## 15 Chain story: Look at the examples in bubbles, then continue these people's thoughts.

1 If I drive through the city, I'll run into traffic. If I run into traffic, I'll be late ...

2 If I don't study, I won't pass my exams. If I don't pass my exams, I ...



## 16 What will you do a) if the weather is fine tomorrow?, b) if you finish your homework early this evening?

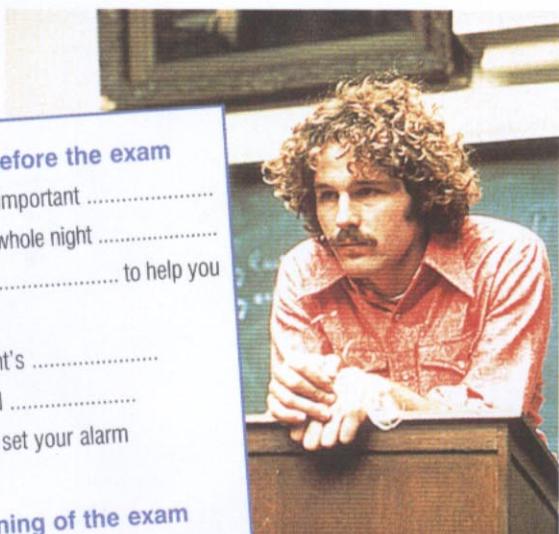
## Pronunciation

**17** First listen and tick. Then, listen and repeat.

|        | /st/ | /zd/ |
|--------|------|------|
| post   |      |      |
| posed  |      |      |
| prized |      |      |
| priced |      |      |

|        | /st/ | /zd/ |
|--------|------|------|
| ceased |      |      |
| seized |      |      |
| phased |      |      |
| based  |      |      |

**18** Read the table then listen to a teacher giving advice about the best way to prepare for an exam and fill in the missing words. Then, looking at the notes, say what you should or shouldn't do.



### The night before the exam

- revise the most important .....
- don't spend the whole night .....
- listen to some ..... to help you relax
- get a good night's .....
- don't go to bed .....
- don't forget to set your alarm .....

### The morning of the exam

- get up .....
- have a good .....
- don't ..... at all
- get to the exam centre at least ..... before the exam starts
- avoid talking to ..... people

e.g. You should  
revise the  
most important  
points.

## Writing (a letter giving advice)

When you write a letter giving advice, first you express your sympathy to the person who has got the problem, then you give him/her your advice. You finish your letter by wishing the person good luck.

**19** You are Auntie Claire. This is part of a letter that a 15-year-old student has sent you. Read it, then write him/ her a letter giving your advice. Use the following useful expressions and plan.

Dear Auntie Claire,

I've just found out that I've failed my summer exams at school. I haven't told my parents yet because I'm too scared. I'll have to retake the exams in September, but I know I'll fail again! What can I do? Please help me!

### Useful expressions:

**Start with:** I just got your letter and I think I can help you./ I was sorry to hear about your problem.

**Giving advice:** If I were you, I'd..., You should..., You ought to..., Why don't you..., It would be a good idea to..., The best thing you can do is..., I strongly advise you to ..., You shouldn't ...

**Finish with:** I hope this helps you. / Let me know what happens. / Hope this advice is of some help to you. / Things will get better soon.

## Plan

### INTRODUCTION

Dear (the person's first name),

**Para 1:** express sympathy

### MAIN BODY

**Para 2:** give your advice (tell parents/start revising/stop worrying/etc.)

### CONCLUSION

**Para 3:** end the letter, offering some encouragement

Good luck,  
Auntie Claire

## Words of Wisdom

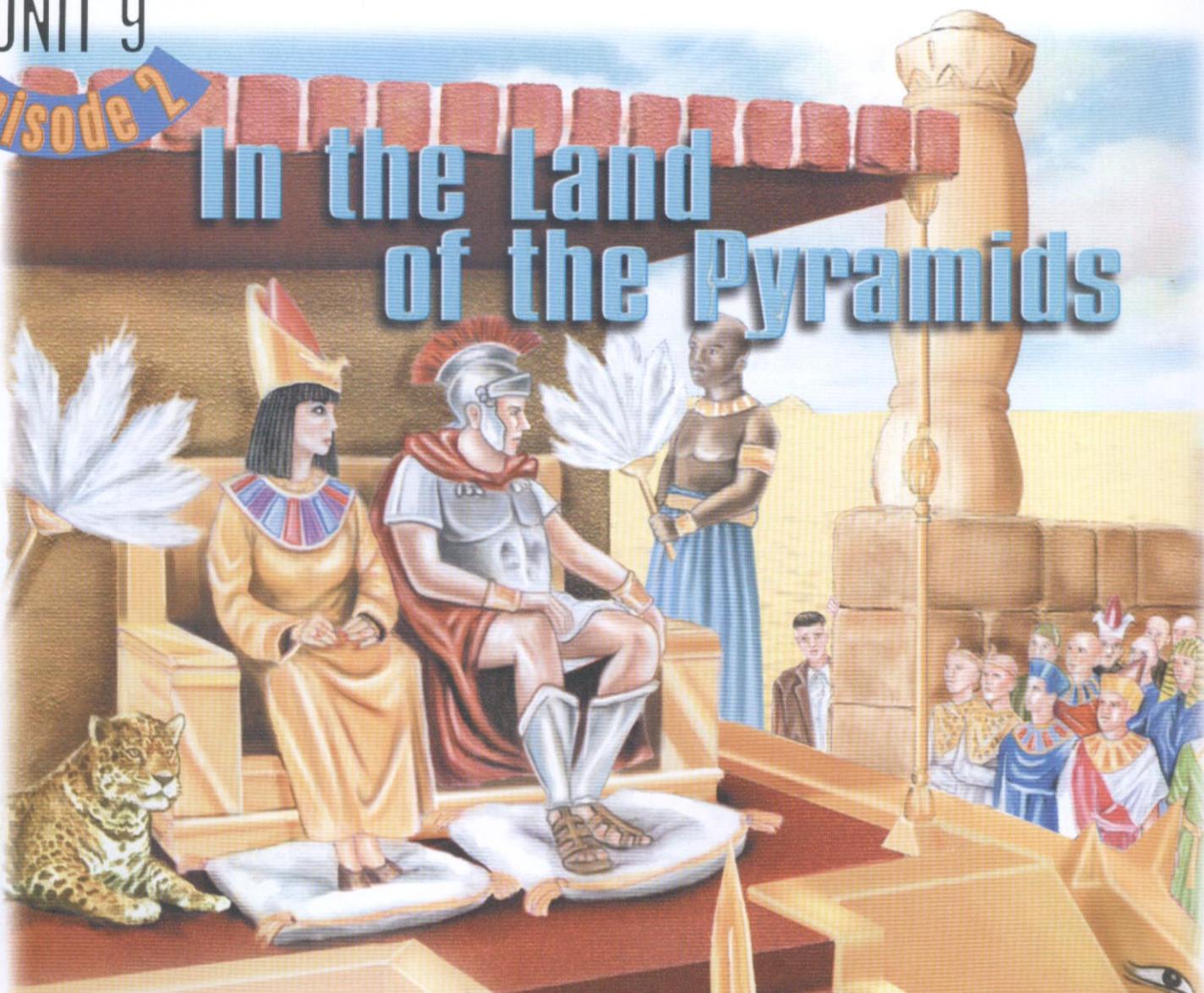
Read these sentences. What do they mean?

- A trouble shared is a trouble halved.
- It's no use crying over spilt milk.

# UNIT 9

## episode 2

# In the Land of the Pyramids



### Lead-in

- 1 Who are the people in the picture?  
Where are they? What is this place famous for?
- 2 Look at the sentences below and try to put them in the correct chronological order. Then listen to the tape and check your answers.

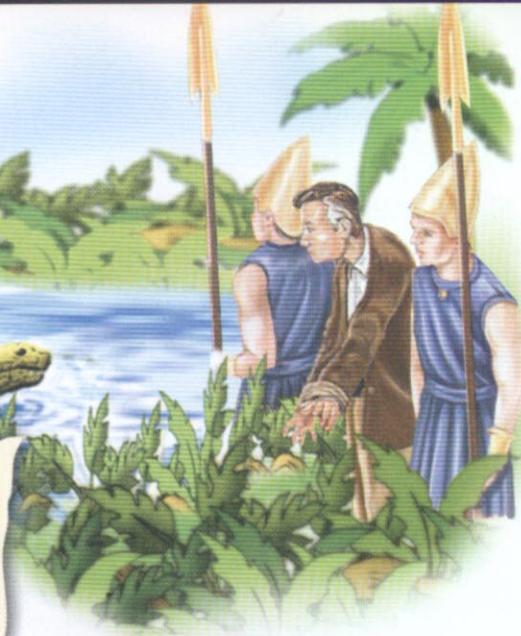
- a The professor told Antony about travelling through time.
- b The professor saw Antony and Cleopatra riding in chariots.
- c The guards took the professor to the royal palace.
- d The professor was thrown to the crocodiles.
- e A crowd of people gathered around the professor.
- f The pteranodon let the professor go.

|                      |
|----------------------|
| <input type="text"/> |

## Reading

3

Read the text and, for questions 1 - 5, choose the best answer, A, B, C or D.



The pteranodon let go of James, but instead of falling through the air, he began to spin slowly, then quickly, as if he were being controlled by some supernatural force. Everything was black, but he didn't remember closing his eyes. Suddenly, there were horns blowing and people cheering. He was sitting in the middle of a road, and an army of men riding horses were coming towards him, so he quickly got out of the way. As he was brushing the dust off his clothes, he saw that all the people around him were wearing strange robes, with sandals on their feet.

He looked around at the buildings and realised he was in Ancient Egypt. The army passed, and Antony and Cleopatra, riding in chariots, were led up to the steps of the palace. When the professor heard Antony call Cleopatra the "Queen of Kings", he knew that the year must be 34 BC.

A crowd of people had gathered around James. They started touching the brown suit he was wearing, pointing at his shoes and looking at him in wonder. One man, who was short and fat with dark curly hair, asked him if he was a Roman. When he said no, the man asked him what he thought of Antony and Cleopatra's friendship. "Well, I happen to know that their relationship will end in disaster. Octavian will attack, Egypt will be defeated, and Antony and Cleopatra will commit suicide."

"Traitor! Traitor!" the man shouted.

Guards who had been standing nearby came and grabbed him. He tried to explain that he was only telling them what he knew about history, but no one was listening. They rushed him off to the royal palace to explain before the Roman general and the queen why he had spoken out against them.

Cleopatra was sitting on her throne wearing a long golden dress, while Antony was sitting by her. He was wearing a silver and red Roman military uniform. James, who was being held by two guards, couldn't believe he was actually standing before Antony and Cleopatra. The fat, curly-haired man was there explaining what the professor had said, and Antony was listening patiently.

"And why do you think such a disaster will come to Egypt?" Antony asked.

He tried to explain that he had travelled back in time from the future so he knew what would happen, but that only worked against him. Antony was sure the professor had lost his mind, and he asked Cleopatra what they should do with him.

"Feed him to the crocodiles," she said casually.

And so it was done. The professor was marched out to a place by the River Nile where crocodiles waited for enemies of the throne to be thrown into the water. Hundreds of people were standing behind him screaming, "Traitor! Traitor! Traitor!" Antony and Cleopatra stood to the side of the crowd in a golden chariot. Two guards held the professor by his arms. He begged them to spare his life, but as soon as Antony gave the signal, James was thrown into the water.

- 1 What happened to James when the pteranodon let him go?  
**A** He travelled through time.  
**B** He fell through the air.  
**C** He started cheering.  
**D** He landed on a horse.
- 2 Why did the Egyptians look at James in wonder?  
**A** His clothes were old-fashioned.  
**B** He looked like a Roman.  
**C** He was sitting in the middle of the road.  
**D** He was wearing strange clothes.
- 3 Why did the guards take James to the royal palace?  
**A** He knew a lot about Egyptian history.  
**B** Antony and Cleopatra wanted to meet him.  
**C** He said bad things would happen to Antony and Cleopatra.  
**D** He had told lies about Cleopatra.
- 4 How did Antony react when the guards brought James in?  
**A** He was patient.  
**B** He was angry.  
**C** He was pleased.  
**D** He was anxious.
- 5 Why was the professor taken to the River Nile?  
**A** to see the crowd  
**B** to be sent away  
**C** to see the crocodiles  
**D** to be killed

## Vocabulary Practice

**4** Look at the words in bold in Ex. 3 and try to explain them, then, choose any three and make sentences.

**5** Fill in the correct word from the list below. Use the words only once.

supernatural, to ride, to end, to commit, to rush, military, royal, to give, lost, to spare

- |                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1 ..... the signal  | 6 he ..... his mind  |
| 2 ..... suicide     | 7 ..... in chariots  |
| 3 ..... in disaster | 8 ..... somebody off |
| 4 a ..... uniform   | 9 the ..... palace   |
| 5 a ..... force     | 10 ..... his life    |

### Words often confused

**6** Underline the correct word.

- She couldn't **realise/understand** why Jessie was angry with her.
- "Be careful not to **fall/drop** this vase!"
- "I can't **hear/listen** you. Speak up!" he said.
- He **dropped/fell** from the tree and broke his leg.
- "Stop talking and **listen/hear** to me," she said.
- I didn't **understand/realise** how late it was.

**7** Read the passage below and try to fill each gap with one word. Then listen to the tape and check your answers.

Although Cleopatra VII was 1) ..... Queen of Egypt, she was actually Macedonian. She became well 2) ..... for her charm, intelligence and incredible ambition. Cleopatra first became queen 3) ..... her father died in 51 BC, leaving her and her brother, Ptolemy, in charge of the kingdom. Soon after this, she was accused 4) ..... trying to kill her brother.

She then started a civil war. At the same time, Julius Caesar, the emperor of Rome, fell in love with her and helped her to take control of Egypt. Cleopatra stayed 5) ..... him in Rome until he 6) ..... murdered in 44 BC. Seven years 7) ..... the Roman general, Marcus Antonius, fell in love with her. Soon they married and had three sons. Together, they wanted to take over the

Roman Empire. 8) ..... a result, in 31 BC, there was a huge battle between their armies and those of Octavian, Caesar's son, at Actium. After losing the battle, they both returned to Alexandria, where they killed themselves.



## Follow-up

• Read the story again and answer the questions.

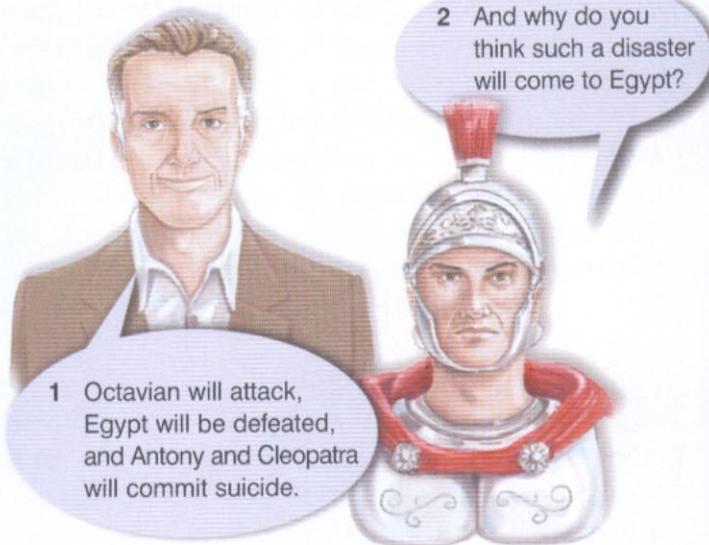
- What were the people in the story wearing?
- What did the short fat man ask the professor?
- What did the professor tell Antony and Cleopatra?
- Who decided to feed the professor to the crocodiles?
- When did the story take place?

• Use the list of events in Ex. 2 to retell the story.

## Grammar in Use

### REPORTED SPEECH

**8** Read the sentences in the speech bubbles. Which one is a statement and which a question?



Now read the following sentences. How are they different from the ones in the speech bubbles?

- Professor Kearns **said that** Octavian **would** attack, Egypt **would** be defeated and Antony and Cleopatra **would** commit suicide.
- Antony **asked the professor** why **he thought** such a disaster **would** come to Egypt.

- Direct speech** is the exact words someone said. These words are put into quotation marks.
- Reported speech** is the exact meaning of what someone said, but not the exact words.

Study the examples and explain when **say** and **tell** are used.

- Say:** "I like tea," **he said.** (direct speech)  
           "I like tea," **he said to me.** (direct speech)  
           **He said (that)** he liked tea. (reported speech)  
**Tell:**     **He told me (that)** he liked tea. (reported speech)

### 9 Fill in the gaps with *said* or *told*.

- 1 "Call me at 5 o'clock," he ..... to me.
- 2 Susan ..... the class about her trip to Kenya.
- 3 They ..... that the film was horrible.
- 4 "Don't take my glass!", she ..... angrily.

### TENSE CHANGES IN REPORTED SPEECH

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| play → played              | have been playing → had been playing       |
| is playing → was playing   |  |
| will play → would play     | was playing → had been playing/was playing |
| have played → had played   |  |
| played → had played/played |  |

Study these examples, then answer the questions.

- Direct speech:** "I'm leaving tomorrow," he said to me.  
**Reported speech:** He told me (that) he was leaving the next day.

- a How does the pronoun "I" change in reported speech?
- b What happens to the Present Continuous in reported speech?
- c What do you notice about the quotation marks?
- d How does the time word *tomorrow* change in reported speech?

### 10 Rewrite these sentences in reported speech.

- 1 "I've been seeing patients all morning," the doctor said.
- 2 "Mum, I forgot to walk the dog," the boy said to his mother.
- 3 "We won't go out tonight," Craig said to his wife.
- 4 "I'm looking for a new job," the man said.
- 5 "I've just finished my homework," he said to me.
- 6 "I need another secretary," the boss said.

### 11 Study these examples, then answer the questions.

- 1 "Are you a Roman?" the fat man asked the professor.  
*The fat man asked the professor if he was a Roman.*
- 2 "What do you think of Antony and Cleopatra's friendship?"  
*The fat man asked the professor what he thought of Antony and Cleopatra's friendship.*

- a What introductory verb is used in a reported question?
- b When do we use "if" in reported questions?
- c What other differences are there between *direct* and *reported questions*?

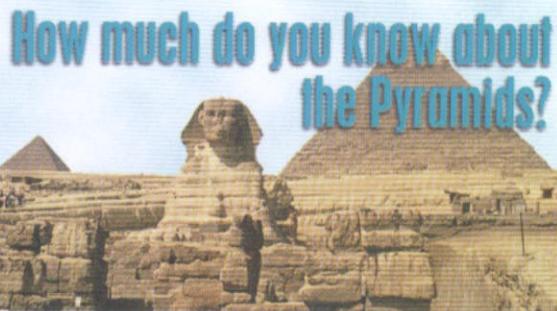
### 12 Rewrite these sentences in direct speech.

- 1 Fred asked me what I wanted to eat.
- 2 Ann told Frank that his friend was waiting for him.
- 3 Mr Jones said that he had paid the bill.
- 4 Helen told Janet that she hadn't bought a new dress yet.
- 5 Sue asked me if I would help her with her homework.

### 13 Imagine you met an Ancient Egyptian. Think of three questions you would ask him/her. Then tell your partner which questions you asked.

e.g. I asked him what his job was. I also wanted to know if he played any sports and if he could read hieroglyphics.

### Quiz



### How much do you know about the Pyramids?

- 1 The Pyramids were built  
 A in 34 BC      B between 2575 - 2465 BC      C in 34 AD
- 2 The largest pyramid is the Great Pyramid of  
 A Cleopatra      B King Khafre      C King Khufu
- 3 It took the Egyptians ..... years to build the Great Pyramid.  
 A 100      B 20      C 120
- 4 How many men worked to build the Great Pyramid?  
 A 100,000      B 1,000,000      C 1,000
- 5 How many blocks of stone were used to build the Great Pyramid?  
 A 2,300,000      B 300,000      C 23,000,000
- 6 Each block of stone weighed about  
 A 25 tons      B 10 tons      C 2.5 tons
- 7 The Pyramids were buildings where  
 A dead kings and queens were placed.  
 B kings and queens lived.  
 C kings and queens got married.
- 8 The Pyramids are among the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World because they are  
 A huge.  
 B geometrically perfect.  
 C made of stone.

### Writing (project)

- Use the information from the questionnaire, and any other information you can find, to write a project about the history of the Pyramids. Cut pictures from the Photo File Section at the back of the book to use with your project.

# UNIT 10

# Citizens 2050



## Lead-in

- 1 Look at the pictures and describe them. Which of the following do you think will happen in your lifetime?

- a We'll make contact with aliens.  
b Robots will be doing the housework.  
c We'll be travelling to other planets.  
d We'll be living in cities under the sea.

- 2 Read the sentences, listen to the tape and underline the correct word.

- 1 People will make friends through the TV/Internet.  
2 Children will be using computers/rulers in schools.  
3 Man will regularly visit Venus/Mars.  
4 There will be no buses/cars in the city centres.  
5 We will have a much healthier/unhealthier society.

Can you imagine what our lives will be like in the year 2050? Perhaps you will be flying off for a holiday on the moon, or maybe you will be taking your dog for a walk in virtual reality. We recently carried out a **survey** of 1,000 people from different countries to find out what they think life will be like in the future. The **results** clearly demonstrate both our hopes and fears.

The survey **suggests** that friendship — one of the most important human relationships — will have changed **dramatically**. People will make friends through the Internet. What is more, a large number of people will even come across their future husbands or wives in this way! Computers will have become absolutely essential by 2050. Even now, some people describe them as their best friend! Others, however, say that we will become much more **isolated** from each other because we will have little real **human contact**.

Education will have changed a lot too. As more and more children will be using computers in schools, certain **abilities**, such as mental arithmetic, won't be necessary since there will be computer programs for most **calculations**. Even writing by hand will have become a thing of the past.

According to the survey, home life will be better. Most people believe that

## Reading

- 3 You are going to read a newspaper article about the future. For questions 1-5, choose the best answer A, B, C or D.

by 2050 robots will be doing the housework and we will be eating ready-made food. A lot of people think that we might only cook for fun in the future.

**Space exploration** will become **increasingly** popular. Fifty per cent of the people we talked to believe that man will regularly visit Mars. They also believe that travel on our own planet will probably change. Almost everyone thinks that there will be no cars in the city centres. Some even think that **environmentally-friendly** electric or solar-powered cars will have **replaced** the cars we use **nowadays**.

Pollution is something that seems to worry many people. Some **fear** that it will continue to get worse, and that our planet will become impossible to live on. Others even foresee that one day we'll have to pay for clean air just like we do now for clean water.

On the other hand, people seem to be quite **optimistic** about the benefits of genetic engineering, as they think scientists will use it to cure diseases like cancer and AIDS. If scientists manage to find a cure for these, we'll have a much healthier **society**.

Some people worry about the future, while others are full of hope and enthusiasm. No matter how dark or bright it may seem, it is up to us to look after our planet and try to make it a better place to live.

- 1 Many people believe that in 2050

  - A we will not pay for computers.
  - B we will never leave our homes.
  - C we will not have any friends.
  - D we will find partners through computers.

2 The article suggests that in 2050

  - A students will write with typewriters.
  - B fifty per cent of people will have travelled to Mars.
  - C lessons will be very different.
  - D everyone will learn to cook.

3 As far as cars are concerned, some people believe that

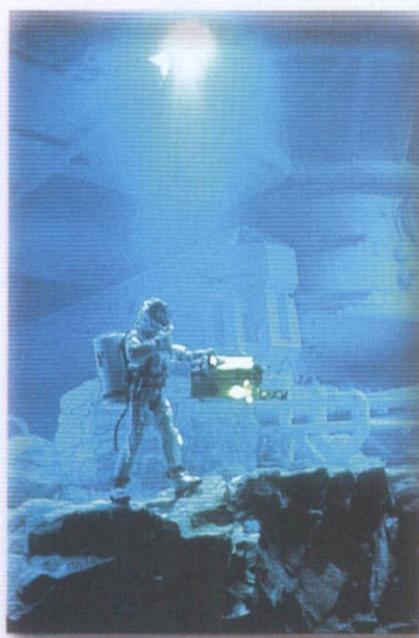
  - A we will not have any.
  - B they won't run on petrol.

4 Some people believe that pollution will have

  - A disappeared.
  - B killed everyone on the planet.
  - C become an even bigger problem.
  - D made our planet a better place to live.

5 Many people think that by 2050

  - A there will be a cure for cancer and AIDS.
  - B people will have stopped dying.
  - C scientists will have replaced doctors.
  - D people won't get diseases.



## Vocabulary Practice

- 4** Look at the words in bold in Ex. 3 and try to explain them, then choose any three and make sentences.

- ## 5 Match the numbers to the letters.

|               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1 foresee     | a advantages |
| 2 benefits    | b show       |
| 3 demonstrate | c predict    |
| 4 regularly   | d excitement |
| 5 diseases    | e often      |
| 6 enthusiasm  | f illnesses  |

- 6** Fill in the correct word(s) from the list below.  
Use the words only once.

*space, human, virtual, computer, clean, to carry out, ready-made, mental, genetic, solar-powered*

- |   |                      |    |                   |
|---|----------------------|----|-------------------|
| 1 | ..... reality        | 6  | ..... food        |
| 2 | ..... a survey       | 7  | ..... exploration |
| 3 | a ..... relationship | 8  | ..... cars        |
| 4 | ..... arithmetic     | 9  | ..... air         |
| 5 | ..... programs       | 10 | ..... engineering |

## **Words often Confused**

- ## **7** Fill in the blanks with the correct word.

cure – treat

isolated – lonely – alone

- 1 The doctors managed to ..... him of asthma.

- 2 The doctor asked the nurse to ..... the wound with some special cream.
  - 3 She feels very ..... in her new school as she doesn't know anyone.
  - 4 I like going on holiday ..... because I can do whatever I like.
  - 5 The people on the island remained ..... until the government built a bridge to the mainland.

- ## **8** Fill in the correct particle.

## Phrasal Verbs

|                     |                          |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>come across:</b> | to meet sb/sth by chance |
| <b>come back:</b>   | to return                |
| <b>come round:</b>  | to visit                 |
| <b>come into:</b>   | to inherit sth           |

- 1 My brother **came** ..... home from university last week.
  - 2 I **came** ..... an old school friend while I was doing my shopping today.
  - 3 Jenny **came** ..... a lot of money when her aunt died.
  - 4 You should **come** ..... for dinner one evening.

## Prepositions

- 9** Fill in the correct prepositions, then choose any three items and make sentences.

- 1 to take your dog ..... a walk; 2 to be full ..... hope; 3 to make friends ..... the Internet; 4 to become isolated ..... sb/sth; 5 to cook ..... fun; 6 ..... the city centres; 7 to pay ..... sth; 8 ..... the other hand; 9 to be optimistic ..... sth; 10 a cure ..... sth

## Follow-up

- Read the article again and decide which changes will be for the better and which for the worse.
- “We might only cook for fun in the future.” What other everyday activities might only be done for fun in the future?

## Grammar in Use

### FUTURE CONTINUOUS – FUTURE PERFECT

- 10** Identify the tenses in bold, then match them to the correct tense description.

- 1 Computers **will have become** absolutely essential by 2050.
  - 2 Thirty years from now I **will be flying** off for a holiday on the moon.
  - 3 More and more children **will be using** computers in schools in thirty years' time.
- a action which **will be** in progress at a certain time in the future  
 b action which **will be** routine in the future  
 c action which **will have finished** before a certain time in the future

- 11** Read the sentences, then listen to an author talking about how his life will be different in ten years' time and mark these statements as true (T) or false (F).

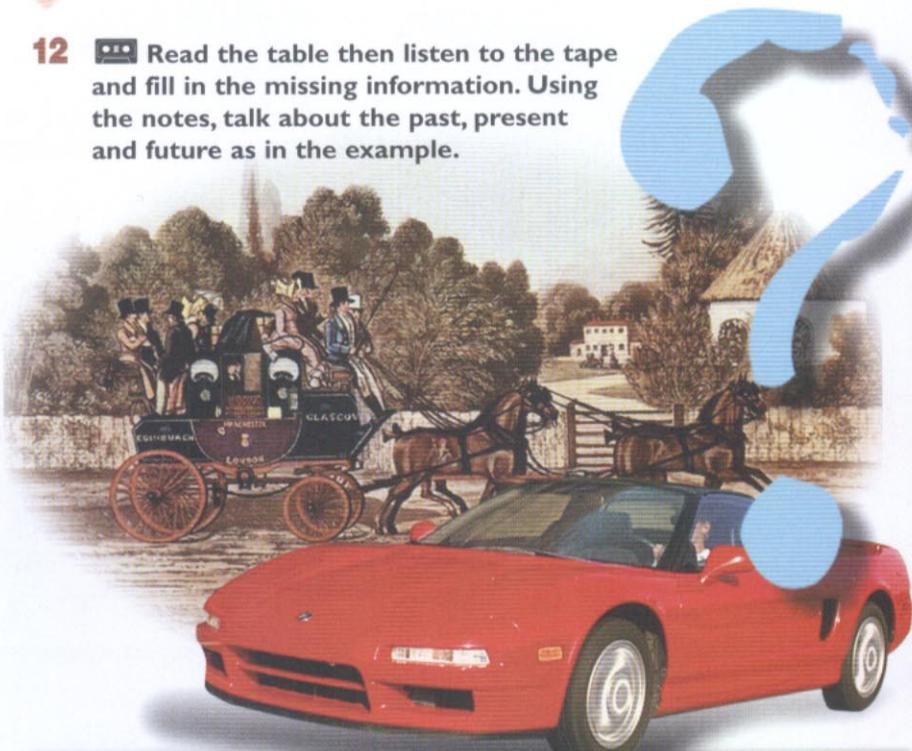
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 I'll still be writing novels.           |  |
| 2 I'll have written two books.            |  |
| 3 I'll be travelling all round the world. |  |
| 4 I won't have started a family.          |  |
| 5 I'll be living in the same house.       |  |
| 6 I'll have bought a yacht.               |  |

Now think of yourself in a) five years' time, b) ten years' time, c) twenty years' time. What **will you be doing/will you have done**? Think about **education, home, work, travel and family**.

e.g. I'll have finished university in five years' time. I'll be looking for a job in ...

## Language Development

- 12** Read the table then listen to the tape and fill in the missing information. Using the notes, talk about the past, present and future as in the example.



| 100 years ago  | now   | by/in<br>2100 |
|--|---|---------------|
| people travelled by ..... and carriage or by .....         | we use ..... and aeroplanes                           |               |
| most people died before they were ..... years old          | the average lifespan is about ..... years             |               |
| many children had to .....                                 | all children go to .....                              |               |
| cities were ..... and more people lived in the countryside | cities are much ..... and full of huge ..... of flats |               |
| people communicated by ..... to each other                 | we communicate by ..... and e-mail                    |               |

e.g. A hundred years ago people travelled by horse and carriage or by train. Now, we use cars and aeroplanes. In 2100, we will be using spaceships and electric cars.

### Linking Words (for similar or opposing ideas)

To link similar ideas, we can use: **also, furthermore, in addition, moreover, etc.** e.g. By the year 2050 we will have started using cleaner forms of energy. **In addition**, we will have discovered a way to get rid of rubbish without damaging the environment.

To link opposing ideas, we can use: **however, but, on the other hand, although, etc.** e.g. By the year 2050 we will have started using cleaner forms of energy. **On the other hand**, the rivers, lakes and seas will have become too dirty to swim in.

- 1 Many people believe that in 2050

  - A we will not pay for computers.
  - B we will never leave our homes.
  - C we will not have any friends.
  - D we will find partners through computers.

2 The article suggests that in 2050

  - A students will write with typewriters.
  - B fifty per cent of people will have travelled to Mars.
  - C lessons will be very different.
  - D everyone will learn to cook.

3 As far as cars are concerned, some people believe that

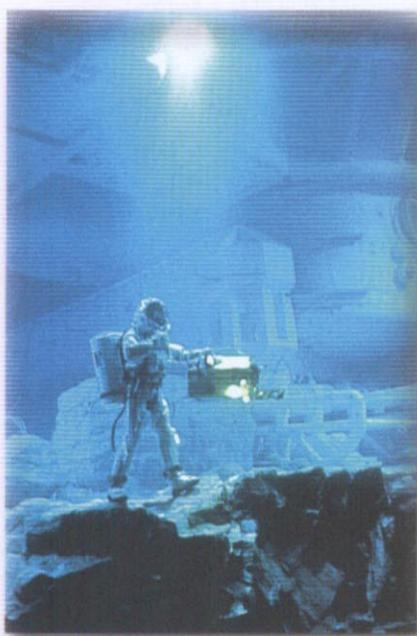
  - A we will not have any.
  - B they won't run on petrol.

4 Some people believe that pollution will have

  - A disappeared.
  - B killed everyone on the planet.
  - C become an even bigger problem.
  - D made our planet a better place to live.

5 Many people think that by 2050

  - A there will be a cure for cancer and AIDS.
  - B people will have stopped dying.
  - C scientists will have replaced doctors.
  - D people won't get diseases.



## Vocabulary Practice

- 4** Look at the words in bold in Ex. 3 and try to explain them, then choose any three and make sentences.

- ### **5** Match the numbers to the letters.

|   |             |   |            |
|---|-------------|---|------------|
| 1 | foresee     | a | advantages |
| 2 | benefits    | b | show       |
| 3 | demonstrate | c | predict    |
| 4 | regularly   | d | excitement |
| 5 | diseases    | e | often      |
| 6 | enthusiasm  | f | illnesses  |

- 6** Fill in the correct word(s) from the list below.  
Use the words only once.

*space, human, virtual, computer, clean, to carry out, ready-made, mental, genetic, solar-powered*

- |   |                      |    |                   |
|---|----------------------|----|-------------------|
| 1 | ..... reality        | 6  | ..... food        |
| 2 | ..... a survey       | 7  | ..... exploration |
| 3 | a ..... relationship | 8  | ..... cars        |
| 4 | ..... arithmetic     | 9  | ..... air         |
| 5 | ..... programs       | 10 | ..... engineering |

## **Words often Confused**

- ## **7** Fill in the blanks with the correct word.

cure – treat

isolated – lonely – alone

- 1 The doctors managed to ..... him of asthma.

- 2 The doctor asked the nurse to ..... the wound with some special cream.
  - 3 She feels very ..... in her new school as she doesn't know anyone.
  - 4 I like going on holiday ..... because I can do whatever I like.
  - 5 The people on the island remained ..... until the government built a bridge to the mainland.

- 8** Fill in the correct particle.

## Phrasal Verbs

|                     |                          |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>come across:</b> | to meet sb/sth by chance |
| <b>come back:</b>   | to return                |
| <b>come round:</b>  | to visit                 |
| <b>come into:</b>   | to inherit sth           |

- 1 My brother **came** ..... home from university last week.
  - 2 I **came** ..... an old school friend while I was doing my shopping today.
  - 3 Jenny **came** ..... a lot of money when her aunt died.
  - 4 You should **come** ..... for dinner one evening.

## Prepositions

- 9** Fill in the correct prepositions, then choose any three items and make sentences.

1 to take your dog ..... a walk; 2 to be full ..... hope; 3 to make friends ..... the Internet; 4 to become isolated ..... sb/sth; 5 to cook ..... fun; 6 ..... the city centres; 7 to pay ..... sth; 8 ..... the other hand; 9 to be optimistic ..... sth; 10 a cure ..... sth

## Follow-up

- Read the article again and decide which changes will be for the better and which for the worse.
- “We might only cook for fun in the future.” What other everyday activities might only be done for fun in the future?

## Grammar in Use

### FUTURE CONTINUOUS – FUTURE PERFECT

- 10** Identify the tenses in bold, then match them to the correct tense description.

- 1 Computers **will have become** absolutely essential by 2050.
  - 2 Thirty years from now I **will be flying** off for a holiday on the moon.
  - 3 More and more children **will be using** computers in schools in thirty years' time.
- a action which **will be** in progress at a certain time in the future  
 b action which **will be** routine in the future  
 c action which **will have finished** before a certain time in the future

- 11** Read the sentences, then listen to an author talking about how his life **will be different** in ten years' time and mark these statements as true (T) or false (F).

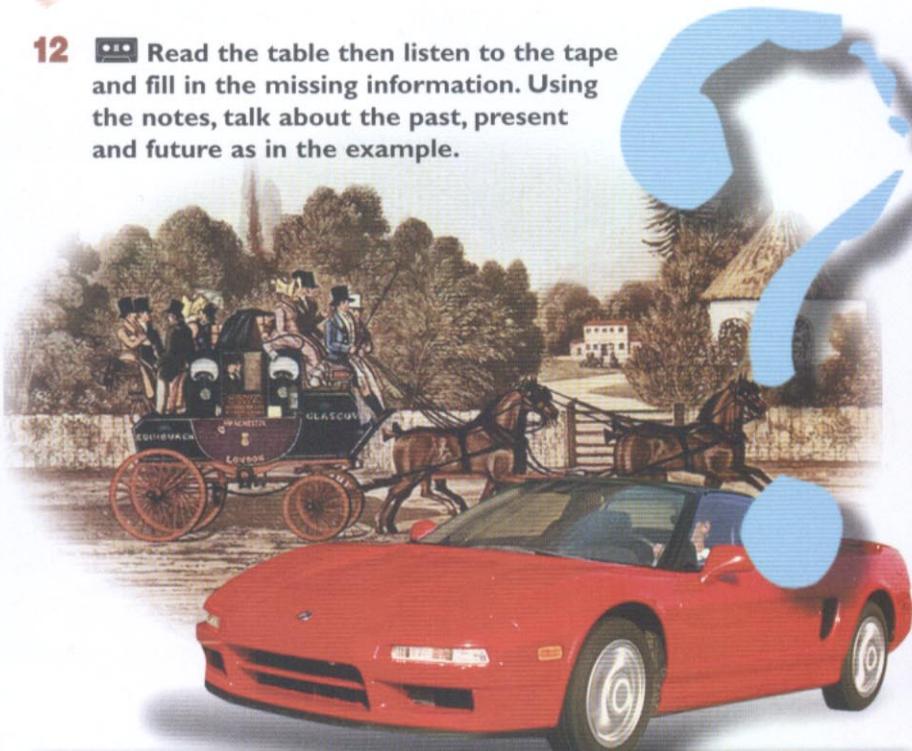
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 I'll still be writing novels.           |  |
| 2 I'll have written two books.            |  |
| 3 I'll be travelling all round the world. |  |
| 4 I won't have started a family.          |  |
| 5 I'll be living in the same house.       |  |
| 6 I'll have bought a yacht.               |  |

Now think of yourself in a) five years' time, b) ten years' time, c) twenty years' time. What **will you be doing/will you have done**? Think about **education, home, work, travel and family**.

e.g. I'll have finished university in five years' time. I'll be looking for a job in ...

## Language Development

- 12** Read the table then listen to the tape and fill in the missing information. Using the notes, talk about the past, present and future as in the example.



| 100 years ago  | now   | by/in<br>2100 |
|--|---|---------------|
| people travelled by ..... and carriage or by .....         | we use ..... and aeroplanes                           |               |
| most people died before they were ..... years old          | the average lifespan is about ..... years             |               |
| many children had to .....                                 | all children go to .....                              |               |
| cities were ..... and more people lived in the countryside | cities are much ..... and full of huge ..... of flats |               |
| people communicated by ..... to each other                 | we communicate by ..... and e-mail                    |               |

e.g. A hundred years ago people travelled by horse and carriage or by train. Now, we use cars and aeroplanes. In 2100, we will be using spaceships and electric cars.

### Linking Words (for similar or opposing ideas)

To link similar ideas, we can use: **also, furthermore, in addition, moreover, etc.** e.g. By the year 2050 we will have started using cleaner forms of energy. **In addition**, we will have discovered a way to get rid of rubbish without damaging the environment.

To link opposing ideas, we can use: **however, but, on the other hand, although, etc.** e.g. By the year 2050 we will have started using cleaner forms of energy. **On the other hand**, the rivers, lakes and seas will have become too dirty to swim in.

- 13** Read the following predictions and reasons for life in the future and decide which are optimistic and which pessimistic. Then, expand these ideas into complete sentences by joining them with **because, as or since**. Finally, using the ideas and appropriate linking words, give a short speech on how life will be different by the year 2050.



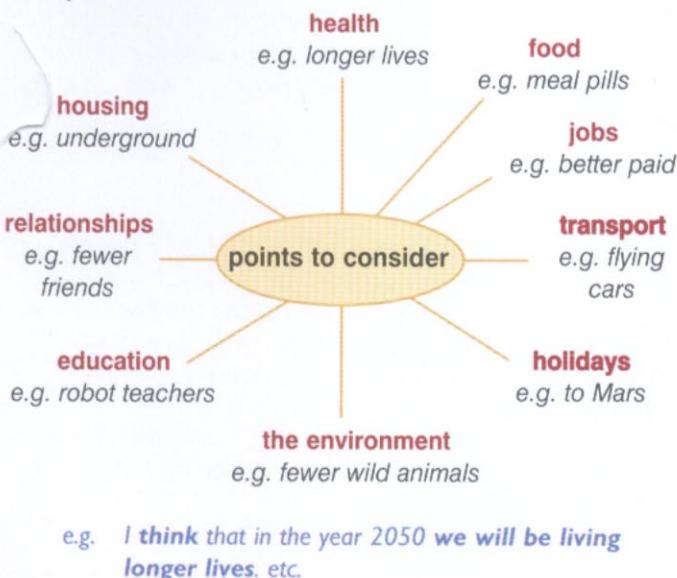
- pollution levels in cities decrease - scientists invent environmentally-friendly cars
- there be no more rainforests - we cut them all down
- people live in cities under the sea - normal cities become too crowded
- people live longer - scientists find cures for many diseases
- we go on holiday to other planets - space travel improve
- we do more creative jobs - computers do the most boring jobs
- more poor people - there be fewer jobs
- crime increase - more people without work



e.g. By the year 2050 pollution levels in cities will have decreased **because** scientists will have invented environmentally-friendly cars. **However**, there will be no more rainforests **as ... Furthermore**, people ...

## Writing

- 14** Look at the spidergram and the expressions in the box (top right). Then say how you think life will have changed by the year 2050. You can add your own ideas.

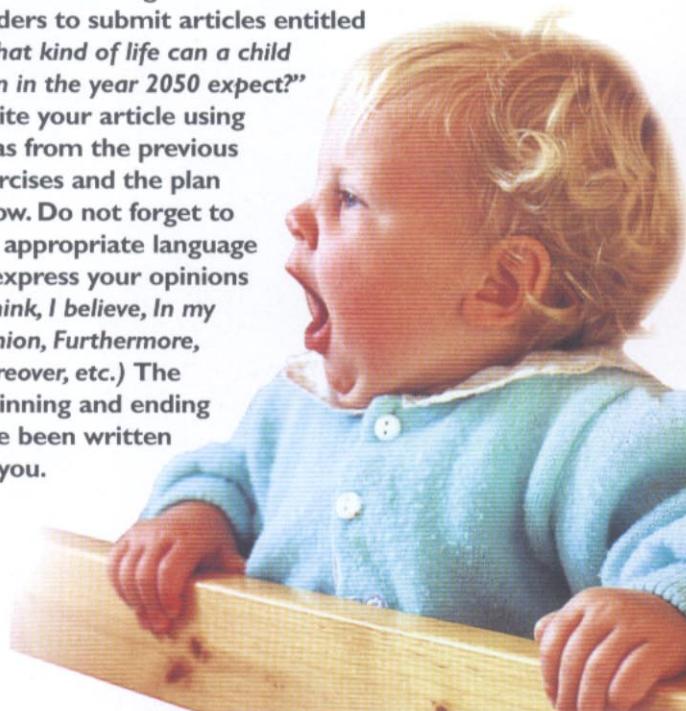


## Expressing Opinions

I think, I believe, In my opinion, In my view, It seems to me that ...

- 15** Your school magazine has asked its readers to submit articles entitled "*What kind of life can a child born in the year 2050 expect?*"

Write your article using ideas from the previous exercises and the plan below. Do not forget to use appropriate language to express your opinions (*I think, I believe, In my opinion, Furthermore, Moreover, etc.*) The beginning and ending have been written for you.



## Plan

### INTRODUCTION

**Para 1:** How will a child feel when he opens his eyes in the year 2050? I think life will be very different then.

### MAIN BODY

**Para 2:** state optimistic predictions and reasons

**Para 3:** state pessimistic predictions and reasons

### CONCLUSION

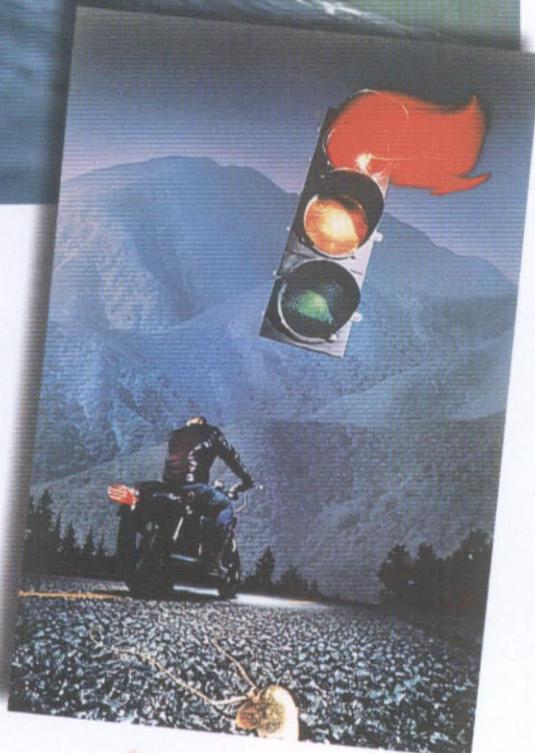
**Para 4:** In conclusion, whatever the future brings, I believe that children's lives will certainly be very different in the year 2050.

## Words of Wisdom

Read these sentences. What do they mean?

- "The real problem is not whether machines think, but whether men do." (B.F. Skinner)
- Necessity is the mother of invention.

# UNIT 11



## Lead-in

1 Look at the pictures. What accidents might happen? What other types of accidents can you think of? Look at the title. What does it mean?

2 Read the sentences, then listen to the tape and say who said what: David, Eva, Patrick, Patrick's mother or Eva's father.

- a "Hold your mother's hand and don't be afraid."
- b "Don't play on the rocks."
- c "He should have come with us."
- d "As I was turning a sharp corner, the back tyre skidded."
- e "I screamed for help."

# Narrow Escapes

## Reading

3 You are going to read about three people who survived accidents. For questions 1 to 8, choose from the survivors (A - C). The survivors may be chosen more than once. There is an example at the beginning (0).

### A David

David Franklin was riding his motorbike through the Canadian mountains. It was a cool evening. He loved the quiet, **lonely** road and really enjoyed the feeling of **speeding** along in the fresh air.

"As I was turning a **sharp** corner, the **back** **tyre** **skidded**. That's the last thing I remember," says David. David lost control of the bike and when he woke up, he was at the bottom of a hill. He was **bleeding** and his left leg was broken.

He knew he had to get back to the road for help. Slowly, he began the **painful** **crawl** up the hill. He was in agony, but kept going.

Eventually he reached the road. A passing car stopped to help him. David felt extremely relieved. He was exhausted, but he knew he was lucky to be alive.

### B Eva

Eva Hart felt excited when, in 1912, she and her family boarded the famous new ship, the *Titanic*. It was the first voyage of this amazing ship, and also the last, as the ship never reached its destination. On the fourth day of its voyage the *Titanic* crashed into a huge **iceberg**. The engines stopped and water started **rushing** into the ship.

"All around me, people were screaming and running to the **lifeboats**. My father **lifted** me into one of them. 'Hold your mother's hand and don't be afraid,' he said to me. I was shaking with fear." Eva's father stayed behind to help the other **passengers**. Tragically, there weren't enough lifeboats for everyone. Eva never saw her father again. "He should have come with us," she kept repeating as the ship **disappeared** into the sea.

### C Patrick

"Don't play on the **rocks**, Patrick!" my mother said as I left the house. It was a rather cloudy day, just a week before our holiday was over. The beach was lovely but the **tides** were dangerous; twice a day the sea came up and covered the rocks. I was playing on the rocks when suddenly, to my horror, I realised I was **surrounded** by water. I climbed up higher, but the water **was rising** fast. The rocks were wet and I kept slipping. I thought I was going to drown.

The water had reached my **waist** when I saw a fishing boat. I screamed for help. The boat came towards me and the fisherman was able to rescue me just in time. From that day on, I never played on the rocks again.

**Which survivor(s)**

- nearly died in a famous tragic accident? **0** **B**
- was warned about something dangerous? **1**
- suffered great physical pain? **2**
- lost a relative? **3**
- was involved in a road accident? **4**
- narrowly escaped by boat? **5**  **6**
- were helped by strangers? **7**  **8**

**Vocabulary Practice**

- 4** Look at the words in bold in Ex. 3 and try to explain them, then choose any three and make sentences.

- 5** Fill in the correct word from the list below:

relieved, destination, exhausted, agony, rescued, drowned

- The firemen ..... the man who was trapped in the burning building. (**saved**)
- He was in ..... when he was injured during the football match. (**great pain**)
- She felt ..... when she heard that her son had survived the crash. (**comforted**)
- Fortunately, the plane was able to reach its ..... on one engine. (**journey's end**)
- The sailor nearly ..... when his boat sank. (**died underwater**)
- He was ..... after working in the garden all day. (**very tired**)

- 6** Fill in the correct word from the list. Use the words only once.

to lose, to board, to ride, fishing, to feel, sharp, to keep, reached

- |                        |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 ..... a motorbike    | 5 ..... relieved           |
| 2 a ..... corner       | 6 ..... a ship             |
| 3 ..... control of sth | 7 he ..... his destination |
| 4 ..... going          | 8 a ..... boat             |

**Words often Confused**

- 7** Underline the correct word.

- The sun **rises/raises** in the east.
- If you know the answer, **rise/raise** your hand.
- He **skidded/slipped** on a banana skin and broke his arm.
- The car **skidded/slipped** across the road and hit a tree.

**Prepositions**

- 8** Fill in the correct preposition, then choose any three and make sentences.

1 ..... the fresh air; 2 to be ..... the bottom of a hill; 3 to be ..... agony; 4 to crash ..... sth; 5 to shake ..... fear; 6 to play ..... the rocks; 7 ..... my horror; 8 to be surrounded ..... sth; 9 to scream ..... help; 10 to do sth just ..... time; 11 ..... that day on

**Follow-up**

- Read the three stories again and find one sentence in each story which best describes how the main event happened. Then answer the questions below:
  - Who are the people involved in each accident?
  - Where and when did the events take place?
  - How did each person feel?
  - How did they survive?

**Language Development****Giving Advice/Expressing Criticism**

**should(n't) + bare Infinitive** is used to give advice  
e.g. You **should give up** smoking.

**should(n't) + perfect infinitive** is used to express criticism about a past event.

e.g. He **should have checked** the battery. (but he didn't)  
He **shouldn't have gone** alone. (but he did)

- 9** Read the following descriptions of events, then make sentences using **should(n't) + perfect infinitive** as in the example.



- Robert went skiing in the mountains last Monday, but his day ended in disaster as he got lost in a snowstorm. He didn't check the weather forecast. He didn't take a compass with him. He went alone.  
e.g. Robert **should have checked** the weather forecast.

# UNIT 11

- 2 Steve went for a drive in the desert but his jeep broke down and he nearly died. He went without telling anyone. He didn't take enough petrol with him. He didn't take a hat.
- 3 Gloria sunbathed in her garden last weekend and she got burnt. She didn't put any sun cream on. She didn't use a sun-shade. She fell asleep. She stayed in the sun for six hours.
- 4 Samantha nearly drowned yesterday. She went to an empty beach. She didn't tell her parents she was going swimming. She went swimming after lunch. She didn't stay near the beach.

## 10 Read the dialogue between a policeman and a witness of a car accident and fill in the words from the list. Then listen and check your answers.

brakes, traffic lights, collided, speeding, skidded, crashing

- Policeman: Now sir, I'd like to ask you a few questions. What is your name?
- Witness: My name is Brad Richards.
- Policeman: Where do you live, Mr Richards?
- Witness: I live just round the corner, on Maple Street.
- Policeman: What were you doing at the time of the crash, sir?
- Witness: I was on my way home from work.
- Policeman: What did you see, Mr Richards?
- Witness: Well, I saw a red car 1) ..... down the street just as a blue car was turning the corner. The blue car's driver put on the 2) ..... and then the car 3) ..... The two cars 4) ..... with a horrible 5) ..... noise.
- Policeman: Just one more question, sir. Were the 6) ..... on the corner red or green?
- Witness: Oh, I'm sorry. I can't remember.
- Policeman: Thank you, Mr Richards. You've been most helpful.

**Now, using the following words, write the dialogue in reported speech.**

- First of all ..., Then ..., After that ..., Finally ..., etc.
- asked, replied, told, said, added, etc.

## Grammar in Use

### REPORTED ORDERS/REQUESTS/COMMANDS

## 11 Look at the sentences and say how we report orders/requests/commands. Which introductory verbs are used?

- Direct speech:** "Hold your mother's hand," he said to me.
- Reported speech:** He **told** me **to hold** my mother's hand.
- Direct speech:** "Don't play on the rocks, Patrick!" his mother said.
- Reported speech:** Patrick's mother **warned** him **not to play** on the rocks.

## 12 What might/could happen to the children in the pictures? **set fire, get burnt, be poisoned, drown.** Match the pictures with the orders, then report them. Start with: *I told him/her*

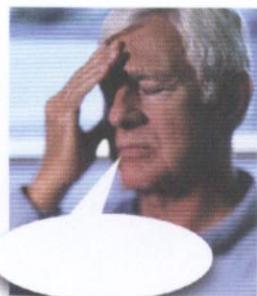
1. Don't play near the pool!
2. Don't touch the iron!
3. Keep away from chemicals!
4. Don't play with matches!



## 13 Complete the sentences using the words in bold. Use two to five words.

- 1 "Don't touch the switch with wet hands," she said to him.  
**to** She **told** ..... the switch with wet hands.
- 2 "What did you see in the distance?" she asked me.  
**seen** She **asked** ..... in the distance.
- 3 "Have you got a pen?" he asked her.  
**if** He ..... got a pen.
- 4 "Don't touch the exhibits," the museum guide said to us.  
**warned** The museum guide ..... the exhibits.
- 5 "Be quiet!" the teacher said to us.  
**told** The teacher ..... quiet.
- 6 "Have you spoken to Ann yet?" he asked me.  
**had** He **asked** me ..... to Ann yet.
- 7 "Why didn't you call the police?" he asked me.  
**called** He **asked** me ..... the police.
- 8 "I will need your help," he said to Jane.  
**would** He **told** Jane ..... help.

## 14 Look at the pictures and the reported sentences, then fill in the bubbles with the speakers' actual words.



1 He said he had a headache.



2 He asked her if she was going with him.

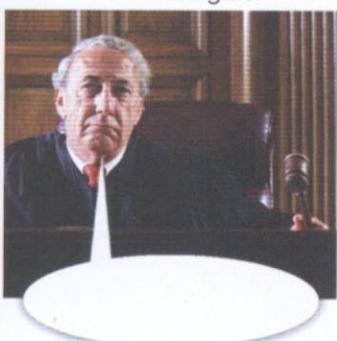


4 She said the prisoner was moving towards the front gate.

3 The doctor said it wouldn't hurt.



5 She asked who it was.



6 The judge said to take him to prison.

## Pronunciation

15 Listen and tick, then listen and repeat.

|       | /tʃ/ | /dʒ/ |
|-------|------|------|
| choke |      |      |
| joke  |      |      |
| chest |      |      |

|       | /tʃ/ | /dʒ/ |
|-------|------|------|
| jest  |      |      |
| chain |      |      |
| Jane  |      |      |

## Writing (narrating past events)

When we narrate a past event we say **when** and **where** it happened, **who** was involved in it, **what** exactly happened, what the **consequences** were, what the people **said** and how they **felt**.

16 Look at the picture and, with the help of the list of words, try to guess what has happened. Then listen to the tape and make notes to answer the questions.



burning, smoke, call fire brigade, kitchen in flames, lying unconscious, wrapped him in a blanket, firefighters, save, shaking with fear, put out the fire, mother couldn't keep back her tears, ambulance

- |                               |                                 |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 When did the event happen?  | 6 What did he do afterwards?    |
| 2 Where was the narrator?     | 7 Who saved Tommy/John?         |
| 3 What did he see?            | 8 Where were the boys taken?    |
| 4 Where did the event happen? | 9 What was Mrs Blake's comment? |
| 5 Who did he call?            |                                 |

17 Using the information from Ex. 16, as well as the plan below, write a composition narrating the event of the fire.

### PLAN

#### INTRODUCTION

Para 1: set the scene (who/where/when/what happened)

#### MAIN BODY

Para 2,3: describe the events which happened before the main event and the main event itself

#### CONCLUSION

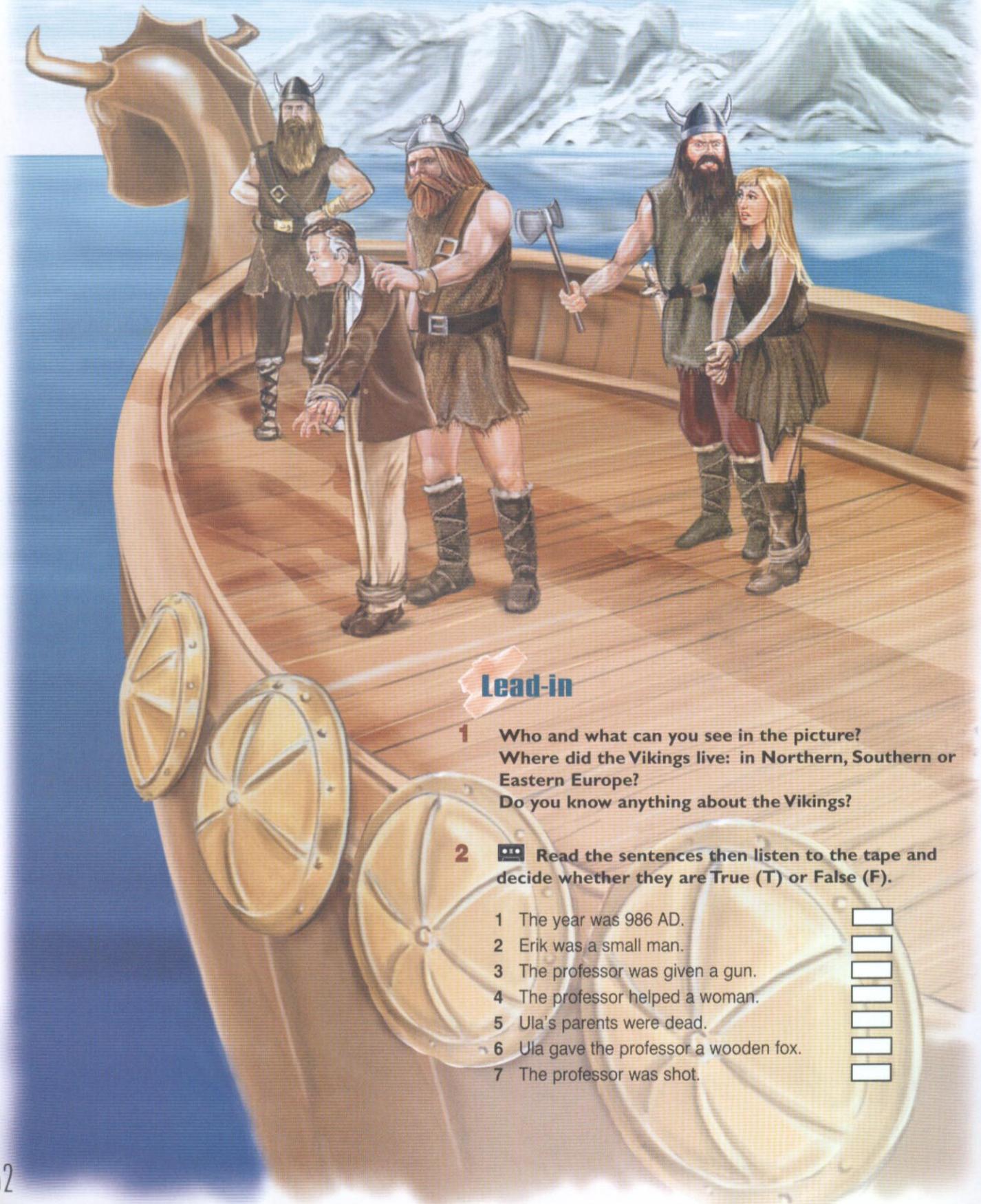
Para 4: consequences, people's feelings, comments

## Words of Wisdom

Read these sentences. What do they mean?

- Every cloud has a silver lining.
- It never rains but it pours.
- Look before you leap.

# The Vikings



## Lead-in

- 1 Who and what can you see in the picture?  
Where did the Vikings live: in Northern, Southern or Eastern Europe?  
Do you know anything about the Vikings?

- 2 Read the sentences then listen to the tape and decide whether they are True (T) or False (F).

- 1 The year was 986 AD.
- 2 Erik was a small man.
- 3 The professor was given a gun.
- 4 The professor helped a woman.
- 5 Ula's parents were dead.
- 6 Ula gave the professor a wooden fox.
- 7 The professor was shot.

## Reading

- 3** Read the text then, for questions 1-4, choose the best answer, A, B, C or D.

The professor never felt the crocodiles' teeth. The guards **let go of** him, and he was falling through the air, then everything went black. When he opened his eyes, he was on a Viking ship in the icy waters off the coast of Greenland.

He suddenly realised that he travelled through time only when he was close to death. But how had this time travelling started? Only his **colleague** knew the answer, and he was far away.

The year was 986 AD, and Erik the Red, the famous Viking explorer who discovered Greenland, was **leading** his men on another adventure. No one noticed James. He was at the back of the boat, in a corner. The other men were **rowing** and looking straight **ahead**.

Erik was a big man. He had red hair, a red beard and a red moustache. He wore a **helmet** on his head, like the others, with **horns** coming out of the sides. When he saw James sitting doing nothing, he **yelled** at him to take an **oar** and help out. Neither he nor the other Vikings **took any notice** of the fact that he looked completely different from them.

When they reached land, he too was given a sword and a **shield**. Someone even put a horned helmet on his head. They were going into **battle** against men who had **occupied** a castle near the coast. Professor Kearns tried to avoid the fighting, but he had no choice. One of the enemy warriors ran at him with a sword, but he blocked it with his shield then knocked the man to the ground. He stood over him with his sword **raised**, but he didn't want to kill the man. Suddenly, he heard a woman scream.

Near the castle wall, a Viking was **chasing** a woman with long blonde hair. The Viking grabbed her by the hair and threw her to the ground. James ran towards her, picked up a **club** and hit the Viking over the head. He helped the woman to her feet and looked into her bright green eyes.

"Don't worry," he said. "I'm not going to hurt you."

Erik had seen James knock the Viking down, and sent his men to grab him and the woman and take them back to the boat. He had their hands and legs **tied**, and he said he was going to throw them into the icy waters as soon as they set sail.

"You'll be dead before you even **realise** you're in the water."

The woman's name was Ula. Her people had been fighting the Vikings for years, and she had seen her brothers and her parents killed. She thought it was better to die than to live without them.

"Don't say that," the professor said. "You have to want to live. To give up hope is like saying life was never worth living, and that simply isn't true."

The **greeness** of Ula's eyes **fascinated** him. They looked sad, **innocent** and beautiful at the same time.

Ula was able to **free** one of her hands. She reached into the pocket of her dress and took out a small, round piece of wood. **Carved** in the centre was the face of an animal. Ula explained that it was the white fox, and her people gave it to travellers before they left on a journey to bring them good luck. "You're a kind man and I want you to have it," she said. She put it into the pocket of his jacket, and as she did so, Erik and some of the other Vikings came to take them to the boat's **edge**.

The water was so cold they would probably die not long after they were thrown into it. The professor looked once more at Ula, then he was thrown into the water.



- 1** The professor suddenly understood that he travelled through time only when
  - A he was dreaming.
  - B he wasn't feeling well.
  - C his life was in danger.
  - D his friend wasn't with him.
  
- 2** What was the Viking doing near the castle wall?
  - A He was running after a woman.
  - B He was helping a woman.
  - C He was fighting with Erik.
  - D He was shouting at Erik.
  
- 3** Why did Ula prefer to lose her life rather than to live?
  - A She was tired of fighting the Vikings.
  - B She didn't want to live without her family.
  - C She was very old.
  - D She didn't want to live without the professor.
  
- 4** What was so important about the piece of wood?
  - A Ula had made it.
  - B It could destroy the Vikings.
  - C It was lucky for travellers.
  - D It protected white foxes.

## Vocabulary Practice

**4** Look at the words in bold in Ex. 3 and try to explain them, then choose any three and make sentences.

**5** Fill in the correct word(s) from the list below. Use the words only once.

to have, icy, to reach, close to, to occupy, to bring, to set, to go into, to give up, to take

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1 .... no notice of | 6 ..... no choice  |
| 2 ..... waters      | 7 ..... sail       |
| 3 to be..... death  | 8 ..... hope       |
| 4 ..... land        | 9 ..... a castle   |
| 5 ..... battle      | 10 ..... good luck |

### Words often confused

**6** Underline the correct word.

- 1 My mother didn't **leave/let** me go to the party.
- 2 "**Leave/Let** me alone!" she shouted.
- 3 Darwin **invented/discovered** many strange animals during his travels.
- 4 Thomas Edison **invented/discovered** the light bulb.
- 5 Tom **avoided/prevented** the traffic in the city centre by going through the back streets.
- 6 Bad weather **avoided/prevented** the ship from leaving.
- 7 Is it **real/true** that you've met the Queen?
- 8 The diamonds in this necklace are not **real/true**.

## Follow-up

- Describe *Erik the Red* and *Ula*.
- Read the story again and answer the following questions. Then, using your answers, retell the story.

- 1 Where did James find himself at the beginning of the story?
- 2 What did he see?
- 3 What did Erik the Red tell James to do?
- 4 What was James given? Why?
- 5 What happened near the castle wall?
- 6 Who was Ula?
- 7 What happened at the end of the story?

**7** Read the text and choose the best answer for each gap.

The Vikings were Scandinavian (**0**) ...**B**... from Denmark, Norway and Sweden. These tall, fair-haired people colonised many **1** ..... of Europe between the 9th and 11th centuries. They were excellent sailors who **2** ..... in long wooden **3** ..... with many oars and large rectangular sails. Erik the Red was one of the **4** ..... famous Vikings. He **5** ..... Greenland and set up a colony there in 982 AD. Leif Erikson, his son, was the **6** ..... European to set foot on the North American **7** .....

|          |             |              |            |
|----------|-------------|--------------|------------|
| <b>0</b> | A soldiers  | B warriors   | C princes  |
| <b>1</b> | A parts     | B pieces     | C places   |
| <b>2</b> | A travelled | B toured     | C went     |
| <b>3</b> | A canoes    | B rafts      | C boats    |
| <b>4</b> | A most      | B much       | C many     |
| <b>5</b> | A left      | B discovered | C invented |
| <b>6</b> | A first     | B one        | C only     |
| <b>7</b> | A island    | B continent  | C ocean    |

## Grammar in Use

### PASSIVE VOICE

**8** Read the two sentences and identify the **subject (S)**, the **verb (V)** and the **object (O)** in sentence **A**. What changes do you notice in sentence **B**? How do we form the passive? In which sentence is the action more important than the person who does it? In which sentence is the person more important than the action itself?

**A Active Voice:** The Vikings threw James into the water.

**B Passive Voice:** James **was thrown** into the water by the Vikings.

We form the **passive** by using the appropriate tense of the verb **to be + past participle**. e.g. *The professor was given a sword*.

**9** Look at the table below. How do the verbs change in the passive?

| Active     | Passive          | Active    | Passive          |
|------------|------------------|-----------|------------------|
| make       | → is made        | have made | → have been made |
| is making  | → is being made  | had made  | → had been made  |
| was making | → was being made | will make | → will be made   |
| made       | → was made       | can make  | → can be made    |

- The agent (by ...) is omitted when it is not important or is easily understood. e.g. *The house was broken into (by thieves)*. - **agent easily understood** / *I was offered a cup of tea*. - **agent not important**

## Reading

- 3** Read the text then, for questions 1-4, choose the best answer, A, B, C or D.

The professor never felt the crocodiles' teeth. The guards **let go of** him, and he was falling through the air, then everything went black. When he opened his eyes, he was on a Viking ship in the icy waters off the coast of Greenland.

He suddenly realised that he travelled through time only when he was close to death. But how had this time travelling started? Only his **colleague** knew the answer, and he was far away.

The year was 986 AD, and Erik the Red, the famous Viking explorer who discovered Greenland, was **leading** his men on another adventure. No one noticed James. He was at the back of the boat, in a corner. The other men were **rowing** and looking straight ahead.

Erik was a big man. He had red hair, a red beard and a red moustache. He wore a **helmet** on his head, like the others, with **horns** coming out of the sides. When he saw James sitting doing nothing, he **yelled** at him to take an **oar** and help out. Neither he nor the other Vikings **took any notice** of the fact that he looked completely different from them.

When they reached land, he too was given a sword and a **shield**. Someone even put a horned helmet on his head. They were going into **battle** against men who had **occupied** a castle near the coast. Professor Kearns tried to avoid the fighting, but he had no choice. One of the enemy warriors ran at him with a sword, but he blocked it with his shield then knocked the man to the ground. He stood over him with his sword **raised**, but he didn't want to kill the man. Suddenly, he heard a woman scream.

Near the castle wall, a Viking was **chasing** a woman with long blonde hair. The Viking grabbed her by the hair and threw her to the ground. James ran towards her, picked up a **club** and hit the Viking over the head. He helped the woman to her feet and looked into her bright green eyes.

"Don't worry," he said. "I'm not going to hurt you."

Erik had seen James knock the Viking down, and sent his men to grab him and the woman and take them back to the boat. He had their hands and legs **tied**, and he said he was going to throw them into the icy waters as soon as they set sail.

"You'll be dead before you even **realise** you're in the water."

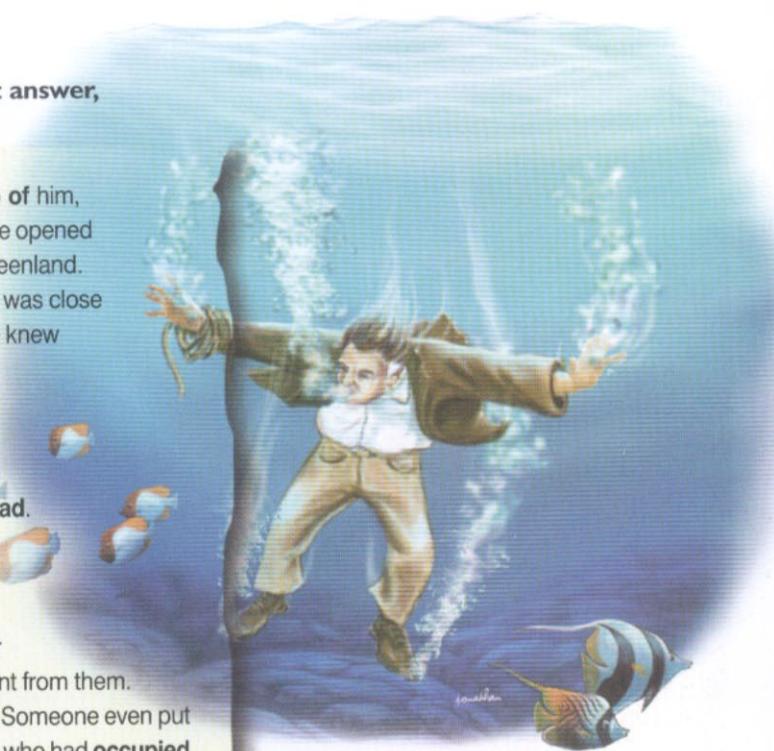
The woman's name was Ula. Her people had been fighting the Vikings for years, and she had seen her brothers and her parents killed. She thought it was better to die than to live without them.

"Don't say that," the professor said. "You have to want to live. To give up hope is like saying life was never worth living, and that simply isn't true."

The **greenness** of Ula's eyes **fascinated** him. They looked sad, **innocent** and beautiful at the same time.

Ula was able to **free** one of her hands. She reached into the pocket of her dress and took out a small, round piece of wood. **Carved** in the centre was the face of an animal. Ula explained that it was the white fox, and her people gave it to travellers before they left on a journey to bring them good luck. "You're a kind man and I want you to have it," she said. She put it into the pocket of his jacket, and as she did so, Erik and some of the other Vikings came to take them to the boat's **edge**.

The water was so cold they would probably die not long after they were thrown into it. The professor looked once more at Ula, then he was thrown into the water.



- 1** The professor suddenly understood that he travelled through time only when
  - A he was dreaming.
  - B he wasn't feeling well.
  - C his life was in danger.
  - D his friend wasn't with him.
  
- 2** What was the Viking doing near the castle wall?
  - A He was running after a woman.
  - B He was helping a woman.
  - C He was fighting with Erik.
  - D He was shouting at Erik.
  
- 3** Why did Ula prefer to lose her life rather than to live?
  - A She was tired of fighting the Vikings.
  - B She didn't want to live without her family.
  - C She was very old.
  - D She didn't want to live without the professor.
  
- 4** What was so important about the piece of wood?
  - A Ula had made it.
  - B It could destroy the Vikings.
  - C It was lucky for travellers.
  - D It protected white foxes.

## Vocabulary Practice

**4** Look at the words in bold in Ex. 3 and try to explain them, then choose any three and make sentences.

**5** Fill in the correct word(s) from the list below. Use the words only once.

to have, icy, to reach, close to, to occupy, to bring, to set, to go into, to give up, to take

- |                      |                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1 ..... no notice of | 6 ..... no choice  |
| 2 ..... waters       | 7 ..... sail       |
| 3 to be..... death   | 8 ..... hope       |
| 4 ..... land         | 9 ..... a castle   |
| 5 ..... battle       | 10 ..... good luck |

**7** Read the text and choose the best answer for each gap.

The Vikings were Scandinavian (0) ...B... from Denmark, Norway and Sweden. These tall, fair-haired people colonised many 1) ..... of Europe between the 9th and 11th centuries. They were excellent sailors who 2) ..... in long wooden 3) ..... with many oars and large rectangular sails. Erik the Red was one of the 4) ..... famous Vikings. He 5) ..... Greenland and set up a colony there in 982 AD. Leif Erikson, his son, was the 6) ..... European to set foot on the North American 7) .....

|   |             |              |            |
|---|-------------|--------------|------------|
| 0 | A soldiers  | B warriors   | C princes  |
| 1 | A parts     | B pieces     | C places   |
| 2 | A travelled | B toured     | C went     |
| 3 | A canoes    | B rafts      | C boats    |
| 4 | A most      | B much       | C many     |
| 5 | A left      | B discovered | C invented |
| 6 | A first     | B one        | C only     |
| 7 | A island    | B continent  | C ocean    |

### Words often confused

**6** Underline the correct word.

- 1 My mother didn't leave/let me go to the party.
- 2 "Leave/Let me alone!" she shouted.
- 3 Darwin invented/discovered many strange animals during his travels.
- 4 Thomas Edison invented/discovered the light bulb.
- 5 Tom avoided/prevented the traffic in the city centre by going through the back streets.
- 6 Bad weather avoided/prevented the ship from leaving.
- 7 Is it real/true that you've met the Queen?
- 8 The diamonds in this necklace are not real/true.

### Follow-up

- Describe Erik the Red and Ula.
- Read the story again and answer the following questions. Then, using your answers, retell the story.

- 1 Where did James find himself at the beginning of the story?
- 2 What did he see?
- 3 What did Erik the Red tell James to do?
- 4 What was James given? Why?
- 5 What happened near the castle wall?
- 6 Who was Ula?
- 7 What happened at the end of the story?

## Grammar in Use

### PASSIVE VOICE

**8** Read the two sentences and identify the **subject (S)**, the **verb (V)** and the **object (O)** in sentence A. What changes do you notice in sentence B? How do we form the passive? In which sentence is the action more important than the person who does it? In which sentence is the person more important than the action itself?

**A Active Voice:** The Vikings threw James into the water.

**B Passive Voice:** James was thrown into the water by the Vikings.

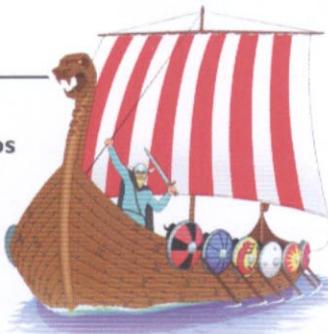
We form the **passive** by using the appropriate tense of the verb **to be + past participle**. e.g. *The professor was given a sword*.

**9** Look at the table below. How do the verbs change in the passive?

| Active     | Passive          | Active    | Passive          |
|------------|------------------|-----------|------------------|
| make       | → is made        | have made | → have been made |
| is making  | → is being made  | had made  | → had been made  |
| was making | → was being made | will make | → will be made   |
| made       | → was made       | can make  | → can be made    |

- The agent (by ...) is omitted when it is not important or is easily understood. e.g. *The house was broken into (by thieves). - agent easily understood* / *I was offered a cup of tea. - agent not important*

- 10** Put the verbs in brackets into the passive.



The remains of a Viking ship 1) ..... (find) by divers last week. The wreck 2) ..... (now/examine) by experts to see if it can 3) ..... (lift) to the surface. If it 4) ..... (find) to be in good condition, attempts to raise it 5) ..... (make) next week. Afterwards, it 6) ..... (clean) so that it can 7) ..... (put) in the local Viking Museum. Other Viking remains 8) ..... (discover) in this area recently.

#### Changing from active into passive

The **object** of the active verb **becomes** the **subject** in the passive sentence. The **active verb** changes into a **passive form** and the **subject** of the active verb becomes the **agent**, which is either introduced with "by" or is omitted.

- 11** Identify the subject and the object in these sentences. Then rewrite them in the **passive**.

- John Mills is preparing an expedition to the North Pole.
- Many TV networks will film the expedition.
- They are going to show the expedition on national television.
- John Mills has already bought all the necessary equipment.
- He is going to set up an observation camp there.
- Many people have raised objections to this expedition.

#### QUESTIONS IN THE PASSIVE

- 12** Read the sentences and say how we form passive questions with **who**. Can we omit "by" in this type of passive question?

- A **Active Voice:** Who gave you this helmet?  
B **Passive Voice:** Who were you given this helmet by?

- 13** Rewrite the following questions into the **passive**. Then, choosing names from the list below, answer them.

Shakespeare, Bell, Edison, Columbus, da Vinci, Curie

- Who discovered America?
- Who invented the light bulb?
- Who wrote *Romeo and Juliet*?
- Who discovered radium?
- Who painted the *Mona Lisa*?
- Who invented the telephone?

#### AS - LIKE

**Like** is used for similarities. e.g. *He works like a slave.* (*He isn't a slave.*)  
**As** is used to say what sb or sth really is. e.g. *He works as a teacher.* (*He is a teacher.*)

- 14** Fill in the gaps with **as** or **like**.

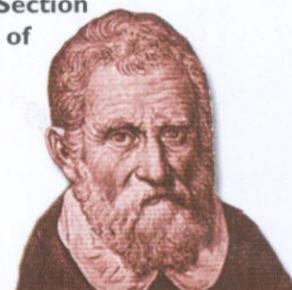
- He works ..... a waiter at a restaurant.
- Joan bought a dress ..... mine.
- Sometimes Mike behaves ..... a child.
- Helen wants to find a job ..... a secretary.
- He swims ..... a fish.
- Craig was offered a job ..... a chef.

#### Writing (project)

- 15** Look at the table, then listen to the tape and fill in the missing words. Finally, use the information in the table to write a project about one of the explorers. Cut pictures from the

##### Photo File Section

at the back of  
the book  
to use  
with your  
project.



Marco Polo

Christopher Columbus

|                           |  |   |
|---------------------------|--|---|
| Place of birth:           | .....  | Genoa   |
| Date of birth:            | 1254   | .....   |
| Family:                   | son of a ..... merchant  | son of a weaver   |
| Travels/<br>Achievements: | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1271 started a ..... - year journey to Asia</li> <li>• spent seventeen years in .....</li> <li>• arrived in Venice in .....</li> <li>• wrote a ..... called <i>The Travels of Marco Polo</i></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• made ..... voyages</li> <li>• sailed ..... hoping to reach .....</li> <li>• reached the Bahamas</li> <li>• landed on Cuba and Haiti</li> <li>• ..... islands in the Caribbean Sea and ..... America</li> </ul> |
| Died in:                  | 1324   | 1506  |

# Module Self-Assessment 2 (Units 7 - 12)

## 1 Choose the correct item.

- 1 The door ..... open and I saw a man standing in the doorway.  
A creaked    B howled    C cracked    D whispered
- 2 They managed to ..... the lost climbers.  
A rescue    B drown    C occupy    D gather
- 3 Henry found it ..... to solve the physics problem.  
A active    B miserable    C useless    D impossible
- 4 In the old days, people punished ..... by killing them.  
A traitors    B guards    C generals    D employees
- 5 The soldiers ..... down the street during the parade.  
A led    B marched    C entered    D attacked
- 6 ..... people believe that life in the future will be better.  
A Isolated    B Pessimistic    C Optimistic    D Friendly
- 7 He was filled with ..... when he saw the terrible monster.  
A hope    B wonder    C relief    D fear
- 8 After the long walk, they were ..... to see the cabin.  
A painful    B exhausted    C sharp    D relieved
- 9 They ..... their boat up the river.  
A rose    B chased    C led    D rowed
- 10 The Vikings wore ..... on their heads for protection.  
A clubs    B shields    C helmets    D oars
- 11 He ..... us that he was leaving at 8 o'clock.  
A said    B told    C spoke    D expressed
- 12 She looks ..... a model but she is actually an architect.  
A such    B as    C as if    D like

(12 marks)

## 2 Fill in the gaps with words from the list.

benefits, defeat, dropped, feed, bleeding, released, disease, weep

- 1 He ..... the vase and it broke.
- 2 The woman began to ..... when she heard the bad news.
- 3 One of the many ..... of travel is that one learns about other cultures.
- 4 You mustn't ..... the animals at the zoo.
- 5 A mysterious ..... killed hundreds of villagers.
- 6 Tina cut her finger and it was .....
- 7 If we can ..... the French team, we will win the cup.
- 8 John ..... the bird from its cage.

(8 marks)

## 3 Fill in the correct word.

space, boarded, bring, supernatural, pouring, lost, went into, occupied, military, genetic

- 1 The ..... rain made driving difficult.
- 2 The officers looked very handsome in their ..... uniforms.
- 3 A ..... force lifted the boy off the ground.
- 4 Our government spends a lot of money on ..... exploration.

- 5 Many people believe that ..... engineering should be banned.
- 6 The driver ..... control of the car and hit a tree.
- 7 The passengers ..... the ship and it left the harbour.
- 8 The soldiers ..... battle against their enemies and won.
- 9 The army ..... the whole city.
- 10 When I took the exam, I had a rabbit's foot with me to ..... me good luck.

(10 marks)

## 4 Fill in the correct particle from the list.

into, back, down, across, out, up, round

- 1 Last night a couple of friends **came** ..... for a cup of tea.
- 2 When do schools **break** ..... for the summer holidays?
- 3 The burglar **broke** ..... our neighbours' house.
- 4 When you **come** ..... from work, I'll tell you about our new neighbours.
- 5 His motorcycle **broke** ..... in the middle of the motorway.
- 6 He **came** ..... a fortune when his uncle died.
- 7 My sister **came** ..... a valuable old book while she was cleaning the attic.
- 8 A fire **broke** ..... and destroyed the entire building.

(4 marks)

## 5 Fill in the gaps with the correct preposition.



- A Yesterday, I went to the Westminster Bank which is 1) ..... the city centre. I was getting some money from the cashpoint when a car pulled up and parked nearby. A man got 2) ..... the car and approached me. His face looked familiar and he reminded me 3) ..... somebody. Suddenly, 4) ..... my horror, he tried to grab my wallet from me. I screamed 5) ..... help and, 6) ..... my relief, a group of boys heard me. They ran over just 7) ..... time to grab the man and hold him until the police arrived.

- B Some people believe that one of the best cures 1) ..... loneliness is to use the Internet. They say that it is fun to make friends 2) ..... the Internet. 3) ..... the other hand, some people argue that people who use the Internet to make friends become isolated 4) ..... the real world. I believe that people should get out and socialise, rather than sit in front of a computer screen for hours.

(11 marks)

**6 Underline the correct word.**

- 1 My father refused to **leave / let** me stay out later than 11 o'clock.
  - 2 The rain **avoided / prevented** us from having a picnic in the park.
  - 3 Tim was a(n) **alone / lonely** man who lived all by himself in a small cottage.
  - 4 She kept **staring / glancing** over her shoulder to see whether James was behind her.
  - 5 Be careful or you'll **drop / fall** your glasses.
  - 6 They gave him medication but couldn't **treat/cure** the disease.
- (6 marks)

**7 Rewrite the sentences in the passive voice.**

- 1 Who discovered Australia?  
.....
  - 2 An architect is designing Mary's new house.  
.....
  - 3 They will install air-conditioning in their office.  
.....
  - 4 Four climbers are planning an expedition up Mount Everest.  
.....
  - 5 Has Jason fed all the animals?  
.....
- (5 marks)

**8 Fill in "will" or "am going to".**

- 1 A: What are you doing tonight?  
B: I'm not sure. I think I ..... stay in and watch TV.
  - 2 A: Your grass needs cutting.  
B: I know. I ..... call the gardener and ask him to cut it.
  - 3 A: Would you like juice or soda?  
B: I ..... have soda, please.
  - 4 A: Pat is sitting her exams this week.  
B: I hope she ..... do well.
  - 5 A: Have you made any plans for the summer?  
B: Yes, I have. I ..... do a course at Oxford.
- (5 marks)

**9 Complete the following sentences using the words in bold. Use two to five words.**

- 1 "Have you finished your homework?" she asked me.  
**had** She asked ..... my homework.
  - 2 "She will come soon," he said to me.  
**would** He told me ..... soon.
  - 3 "Don't go near the dog," Mother said to me.  
**warned** Mother ..... near the dog.
  - 4 "Why didn't you speak to the manager?" she asked us.  
**spoken** She asked us ..... to the manager.
  - 5 "Listen carefully!" the teacher said to me.  
**told** The teacher ..... carefully.
  - 6 "I live just round the corner," he said to her.  
**told** He ..... just round the corner.
- (6 marks)

**10 Give advice to the people in the following situations, using the expressions from the list below.**

*The best thing, If I were you, Why don't you, You ought to, How/What about ...*

- 1 Mary wants to get fit.  
..... join a gym?
- 2 Mark has failed his physics test.  
..... study harder.
- 3 Nick has been feeling exhausted.  
..... taking a long holiday?
- 4 Sheila feels very lonely.  
..... you can do is to find a flatmate.
- 5 Erika has problems at work.  
....., I'd find a new job.

(5 marks)

**11 Fill in the correct tense.**

- A Everyone 1) ..... (look) forward to the school picnic for weeks before it took place. The students 2) ..... (organise) the games a week before and parents 3) ..... (prepare) the food on the morning of the picnic. We 4) ..... (have) a wonderful time when suddenly it 5) ..... (start) to rain. We all 6) ..... (get) completely soaked, and it 7) ..... (turn) out to be the worst picnic we 8) ..... (ever/have).



- B Helen 1) ..... (live) in England for the past two years, but she 2) ..... (still/have) some problems with the language. Every time she 3) ..... (try) to speak, she is afraid she 4) ..... (make) a mistake. Most people who 5) ..... (learn) a foreign language may feel this way. The best thing to do is to keep talking.

(13 marks)

**12 Say how your life will be different in five years' time. Make sentences using future continuous and future perfect.**

(5 marks)

## Writing

**Answer the following questions.**

- 1 What tenses do we normally use in stories?
- 2 Suggest various ways of ending a story.
- 3 How do you finish a letter of advice to a friend?
- 4 What is included in the main body of a story?
- 5 List various ways of expressing opinion.

(10 marks)

# Experiences

Units 13-18

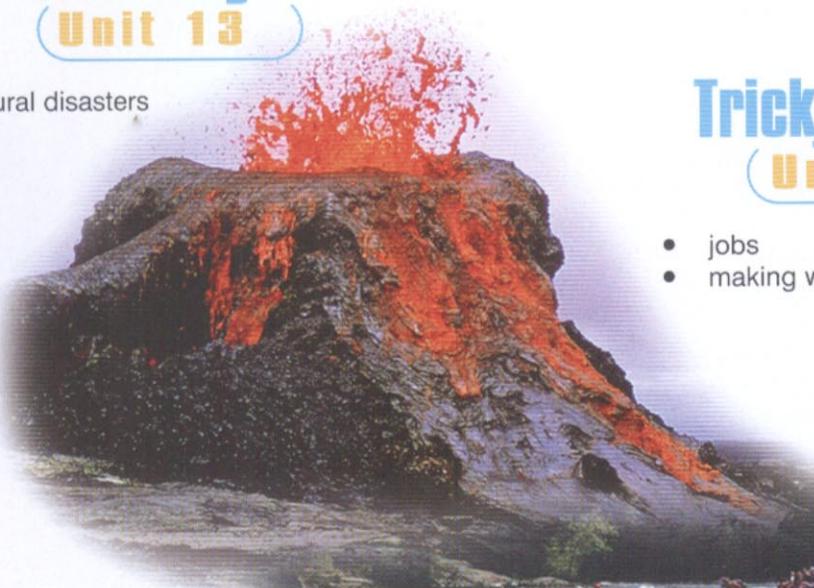
## Before you start

- What do you like reading? Why?
- What do you think life will be like in thirty years' time?

## Read, listen, talk and write about...

### Nature's Fury (Unit 13)

- natural disasters



### Panic is Rare (Unit 15)

- types of sports/hobbies
- sports equipment
- skills & qualities



### London's Burning (Unit 16)

- life in the future
- making predictions
- expressing opinions



### Tricky Jobs (Unit 14)

- jobs
- making wishes



**M****O****d****u****I****e****3**

## Scary but lovely to watch

**(Unit 17)**

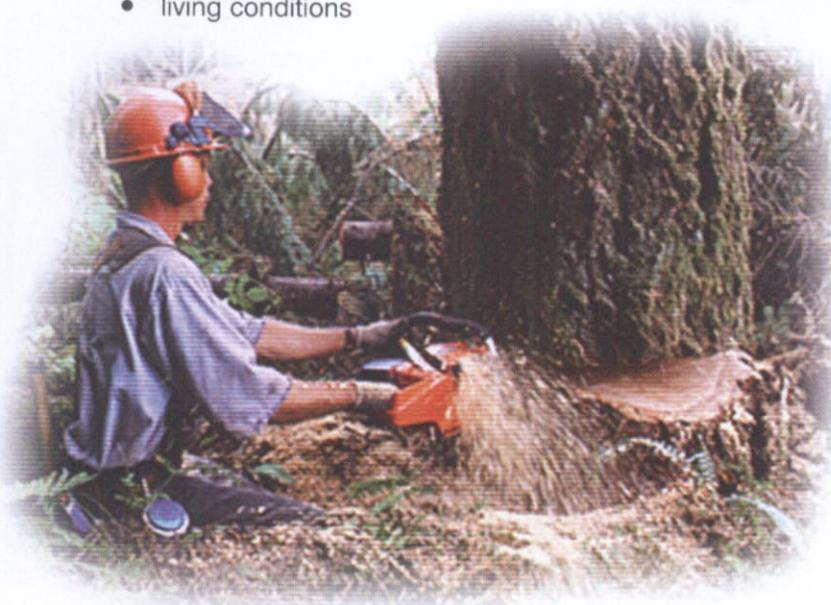
- wild animals
- endangered species
- animal sounds



## Problems of the Planet

**(Unit 18)**

- ecology
- expressing cause & effect
- living conditions



### Learn how to...

- describe/comment on natural disasters
- comment on jobs
- make wishes
- describe sports
- ask for confirmation/agreement
- describe sights
- describe animals
- express cause and effect
- provide solutions

### Practise ...

- the passive voice
- Conditionals Type 2 & 3
- making wishes
- infinitives/the -ing form
- question tags
- reflexive pronouns
- plurals
- expressing reason
- clauses of result/purpose
- too/enough

### Write ...

- a news report
- an essay describing the advantages/disadvantages of sth
- a short article comparing & contrasting sports
- a description of a sight
- a description of an animal
- an essay providing solutions to problems

# UNIT 13

## Lead-in

1 What disasters are shown in the pictures? What other natural disasters can you think of?

2 Match the following words with the natural disasters shown in the pictures.

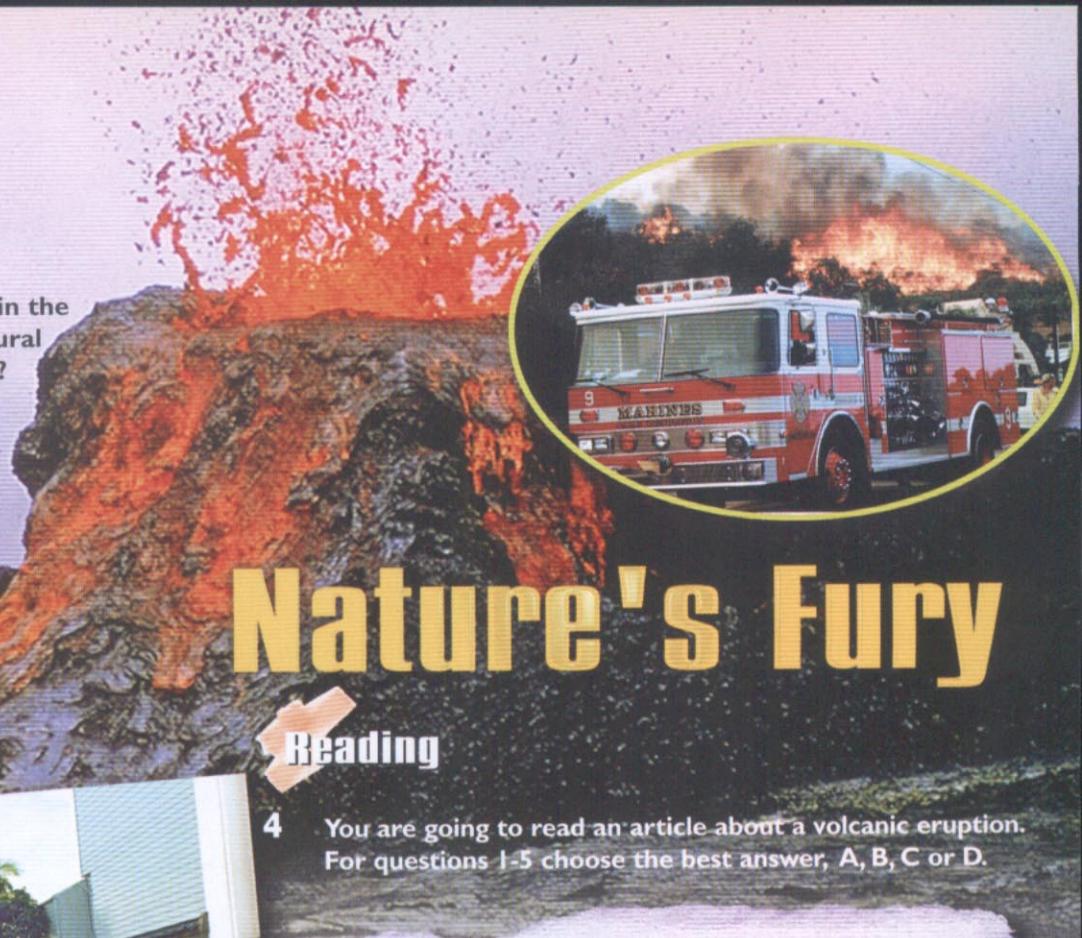
Can you think of any more words?

ash, mud, explode,  
smoke, burn, shake,  
debris, crater, lava,  
volcano, flames,  
casualties



3 You are going to listen to a news report. Read the sentences below and put them in the correct chronological order. Now listen to the tape and check your answers.

- a The tremendous heat inside was released.
- b Mud from the volcano is filling rivers, causing flooding.
- c The top of the mountain was blown off.
- d Huge blocks of ice and rock fell onto the surrounding area.
- e The mountain was hit by two earthquakes.
- f The hot ash started fires.
- g Hot ash and gas came out of the mountain causing a lightning storm.



## Nature's Fury

### Reading

4 You are going to read an article about a volcanic eruption. For questions 1-5 choose the best answer, A, B, C or D.

Mount St Helens, the **volcano** in Clark County, Washington State, **erupted** on Monday morning. The disaster has caused at least ten deaths as well as **massive destruction** in that region of the state.

The mountain was hit by two **earthquakes** just before half past eight. Then, at eight thirty-two, the top of the mountain was **blown off** by an **explosion** that was heard two hundred miles away. Huge blocks of ice and rock fell onto the **surrounding** area and the mountain was left 1,300 feet shorter. Then the tremendous heat inside was **released**.

Hot **ash** and **gas** came out of the mountain, causing a **lightning storm** as it rose into the air. White ash, along with **steam** and thick mud, continue to pour from the giant crater left by the explosion.

At each stage of this dramatic eruption people have been killed. The explosion caused the first **casualties**; several people were injured or died due to the **force** and heat of it. Then the hot ash started fires which have burned **vast** areas of forest, causing more deaths. Fortunately, fire-fighters have managed to put most of them out. The volcanic cloud was so large and dark that it was said to have turned day into night, **forcing** airports to close **temporarily**. One more life was lost as a pilot flew his aeroplane into the cloud and hit electricity cables. Mud from the volcano is running down the mountainside and filling rivers, causing **flooding**. People living nearby have been forced to leave their homes as the water continues to **rise**.

Rescue workers have picked up casualties and survivors by helicopter, and are moving them away from the dangerous areas. More **victims** are expected to be found during the next few days. One witness said that it had been like the end of the world. "I really thought we were all going to die," Jerry Irvine said. "I've never been so terrified in my life."

Scientists say that the top of the mountain had been '**growing**' by five feet per day for several weeks before the explosion. They say that ash and mud could continue to **pour out** of St. Helens for up to fifteen years. Meanwhile, the people of Clark County are learning to **cope** with nature's fury.

- 1** When the volcano erupted, the top of the mountain  
 A grew taller.  
 B landed two hundred miles away.  
 C turned into mud.  
 D was broken into pieces.
- 2** The first people to die were killed by  
 A the forest fires.  
 B the explosion.  
 C the thick mud.  
 D the lightning storm.
- 3** The volcanic cloud  
 A made everything very dark.  
 B damaged many aeroplanes.  
 C wasn't very big.  
 D damaged the forest.
- 4** People had to leave their homes as  
 A their houses were burnt.  
 B the mountain fell on their homes.  
 C they had no electricity.  
 D there was flooding in the area.
- 5** Before the eruption  
 A scientists had been making the mountain bigger.  
 B the people of Clark County had learnt how to cope with a volcano.  
 C the mountain had been getting taller.  
 D ash and mud had been pouring out of St. Helens for fifteen years.

## Vocabulary Practice

**5** Look at the words in bold in Ex. 4 and try to explain them, then choose any three and make sentences.

**6** Match the numbers to the letters.

- |           |              |
|-----------|--------------|
| 1 crater  | a flow       |
| 2 region  | b huge       |
| 3 pour    | c because of |
| 4 stage   | d free       |
| 5 vast    | e point      |
| 6 release | f area       |
| 7 due to  | g large hole |

**7** Fill in the correct word(s) from the list below. Use the words only once.

to be hit, thick, tremendous, massive, volcanic, blocks, lightning, electricity, rescue, to start

- |                     |                            |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 ..... destruction | 6 ..... eruption           |
| 2 ..... of ice      | 7 ..... cables             |
| 3 ..... heat        | 8 ..... by two earthquakes |
| 4 ..... storm       | 9 ..... workers            |
| 5 ..... mud         | 10 ..... fires             |

## Words often Confused

**8** Underline the correct word.

- A bomb **erupted/exploded** at the station yesterday.
- Everyone died in the plane crash; there were no **survivors/casualties**.
- A violent hurricane **hit/knocked** Miami this morning.
- The **witnesses/victims** of the fire have been taken to hospital.
- The house was **struck/beaten** by lightning.

## Phrasal verbs

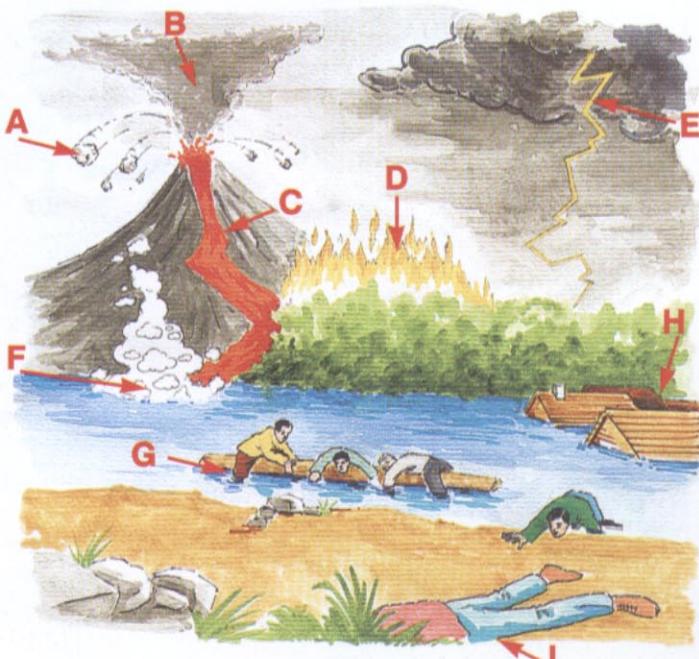
**9** Fill in the correct particle.

- |          |                                |
|----------|--------------------------------|
| put out: | to stop a fire burning         |
| put up:  | to let sb stay in your house   |
| put on:  | to place clothes on one's body |
| put off: | to postpone                    |

- He **put** ..... his coat and left the house.
- He **put** ..... the meeting until the following week.
- Bill **put** me ..... for the night as I could find nowhere else to stay.
- Don't forget to **put** ..... the candles before you go to bed.

**10** Match the letters with the words.

lava, cloud of ash, lightning storm, steam, forest fire, flooding, victim, survivors, falling rocks



**Prepositions**

- 11** Fill in the correct prepositions, then choose any three and make sentences.

1 ..... least; 2 to rise ..... the air; 3 ..... each stage;  
 4 due ..... sth; 5 to turn day ..... night; 6 the top ..... the mountain;  
 7 to break ..... pieces; 8 to be growing ..... five feet a day;  
 9 to cope ..... sth; 10 to fall ..... an area

**Follow-up**

- Read the article again and answer the questions.
  - What happened just before the explosion?
  - What caused the lightning storm?
  - What caused the forest fires?
  - How did the pilot die?
  - What did the rescue workers do to help the victims?
- Using the events in Ex. 3, talk about the eruption of Mount St Helens.

**Language Development**

- 12** Match the people's comments with the natural disasters, then rewrite their words in the passive.

hurricane, earthquake, volcanic eruption, drought, flood, famine

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 It is blowing down trees and houses!                              | 2 They have sent food to help the starving people.      |
| 3 It shook me awake!  | 4 Television stations gave warnings before it exploded. |
| 5 The weather reporters expect even more rain in the next few days. | 6 The government has asked people not to waste water.   |

e.g. 1. **hurricane:** Trees and houses are being blown down.

- 13** Look at the picture and the notes. First try to explain the words in bold, then expand the notes into full sentences.



Several villages in Scotland - completely **cut off** - three days **snowstorm**. - it started Saturday at 4 pm. Since then, one person - found dead - three - still **missing**. Two motorists - **trapped** - their cars - five hours - before - **rescued**. Many roads - still completely **blocked** - and food supplies - running out - quickly. Food - **dropped** - villages - helicopter - later today. People - **warned** - police - **avoid** the area - poor

**weather conditions** - expected - continue - three more days.

e.g. Several villages in Scotland have been completely cut off for three days ...

**Grammar in Use**

- 14** Complete the sentences using the words in bold. Use two to five words.

- 1 They will send a reporter to the scene of the accident.  
**sent** A reporter ..... to the scene of the accident.
- 2 They are taking the survivors to the hospital.  
**taken** The survivors ..... hospital.
- 3 They didn't inform the police about the theft.  
**informed** The police ..... about the theft.
- 4 Fire planes dropped water on the burning forest.  
**was** Water ..... burning forest by fire planes.
- 5 They have found twenty people in the building.  
**been** Twenty people ..... in the building.
- 6 The lifeboat team have rescued five crew members.  
**been** Five crew members ..... the lifeboat team.
- 7 Police are carrying out an investigation.  
**being** An investigation ..... the police.

- 15** Rewrite the following in the passive.

- 1 Factory waste polluted a local river. The authorities have fined the owners £20,000. e.g. *A local river was polluted by factory waste. The owners have been fined £20,000.*
- 2 Last month James Smith burnt down the Town Hall. The judge sent him to prison for five years.
- 3 Last week a careless driver caused a serious accident. They are going to send him to prison for four years.
- 4 Craig McDrew was attacking an old lady when police arrested him last week. The judge has sent him to prison for fifteen years.

## Pronunciation

### 16 Listen and tick, then listen and repeat.

|      | /ɒ/ | /əʊ/ |
|------|-----|------|
| rob  |     |      |
| robe |     |      |
| Joan |     |      |

|      | /ɒ/ | /əʊ/ |
|------|-----|------|
| John |     |      |
| goat |     |      |
| got  |     |      |

## Writing (a news report)

### 17 Read the text and rewrite the highlighted sentences in the passive. Then answer the questions.

- What information is given in the first paragraph?
- In which paragraph is the main event described in detail?
- In which paragraph are the consequences of the event described?
- In which paragraph are people's comments mentioned?
- In which paragraph is the action to be taken mentioned?

# Quake hits Santa Maria

An earthquake struck the town of Santa Maria in Peru early yesterday morning. The quake measured 7.5 on the Richter scale and is one of

the worst earthquakes to have struck the area in over fifty years.

The authorities have reported fifty people missing.

The quake struck at 5 am local time, and lasted for about half a minute. Most buildings collapsed, ten people have died and hundreds are still buried under debris. Other countries are now sending emergency medical supplies to the town. Volunteers are building shelters and Red Cross doctors are treating the injured. Ambulances have taken others to a hospital in a nearby city.

The government will give money to the town to help pay for the rebuilding of the houses which the earthquake has destroyed. Local people are still trying to get over the shock. "It was horrible," one resident said. "I'll never forget it."

A news report differs from a story. It gives only facts whereas a story has a personal and chatty style. A news report always has a headline and is written in a formal, impersonal style. The writer's feelings and emotions are not mentioned. Passive voice is frequently used. Direct speech is also used to mention people's comments.

### 18 Listen to the tape and make sentences using the words from the list.

Bangladesh, hit by heavy rains, serious flooding, people died, others made homeless, animals drown, rescue workers, trapped, food, medicines, tents.



### 19 Listen again and answer the questions. Finally give a summary of the event.

- What has happened?
- When and where has it happened?
- How many people have been made homeless?
- How many people have died?
- What has happened to the animals?
- What are rescue workers doing?
- Who said, "I've lost everything. My house and all my cattle."?
- What is being sent to the area?

### 19 You work as a journalist. Using the plan below and the information from Ex. 18, write a news report about the recent flood in Bangladesh.

#### Plan

##### INTRODUCTION

Para 1: summary of the event (what, when, where, who)

##### MAIN BODY

Para 2: detailed description of the event, consequences

##### CONCLUSION

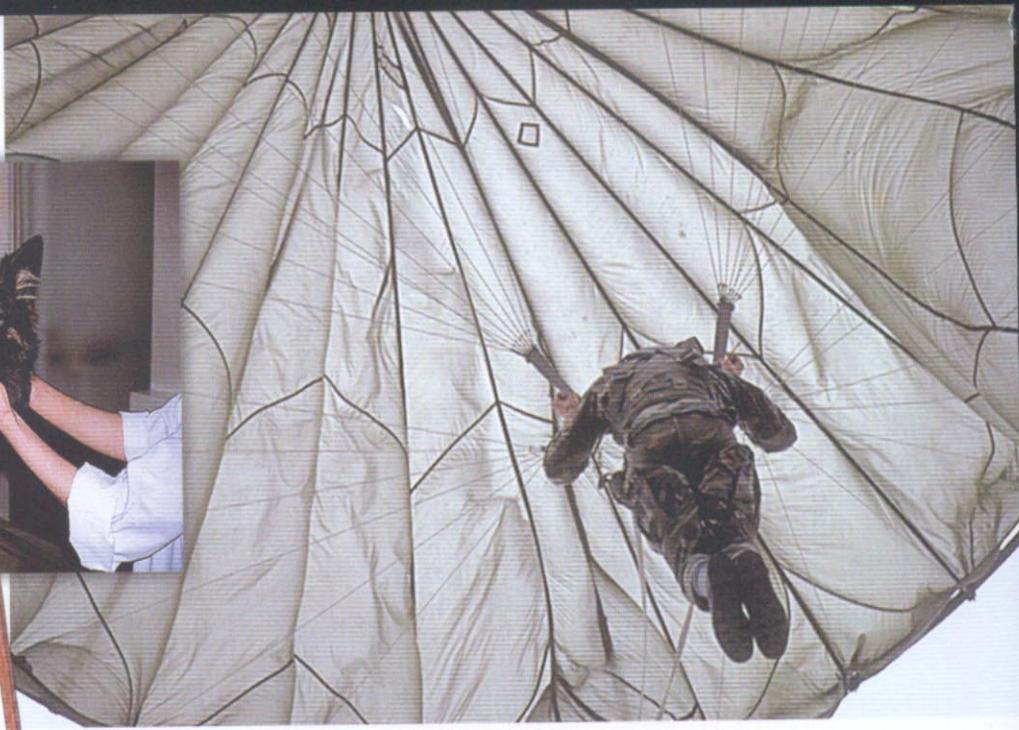
Para 3: action to be taken, people's comments

## Words of Wisdom

Read these sentences. What do they mean?

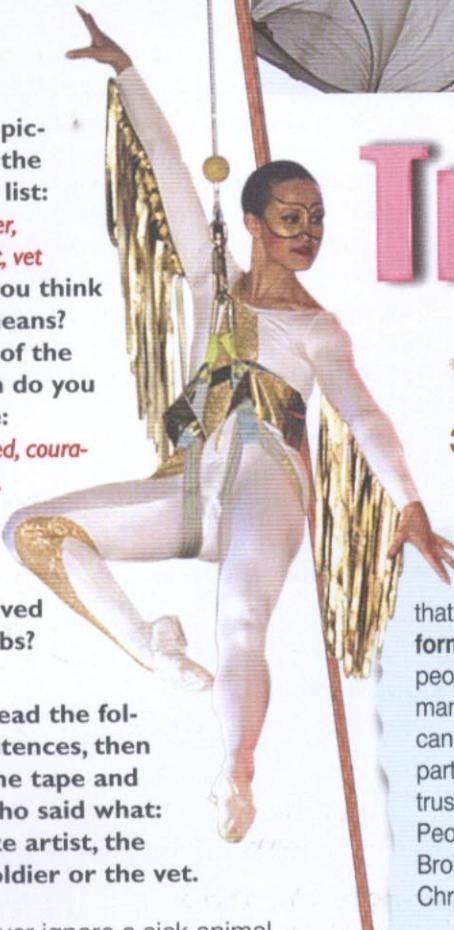
- After a storm comes a calm.
- Bad news travels fast.
- A drowning man will clutch at a straw.

# UNIT 14



## Lead-in

- 1 • Match the pictures with the jobs in the list:  
*combat soldier, trapeze artist, vet*  
What do you think the title means?  
• For which of the jobs shown do you need to be:  
*tough, talented, courageous, caring, dedicated?*  
• What are the risks involved in these jobs?



- 2 First read the following sentences, then listen to the tape and find out who said what: the trapeze artist, the combat soldier or the vet.

- a "I would never ignore a sick animal, even if it was dangerous enough to kill me."
- b "I just wish they didn't take so long to mend."
- c "If I didn't know how to handle some animals, I would probably have permanent scars by now."
- d "Many times in the past, if I hadn't had a partner I could trust, I would have fallen and probably hurt myself seriously."
- e "If the enemy had caught us, they would have killed us."

# Tricky Jobs

## Reading

- 3 Read these texts and say what the positive and negative points of each job are.

A How many of us used to dream of joining the circus when we were children? Well, Chris Sayers, a **trapeze artist** at Zippo's Circus, did just that. It took him ten years of **training** before he felt **confident** enough to **perform** six metres above the ground. Since then he has become one of the few people in the world who can do four **somersaults** one after the other. There are many risks **involved** in this job. Trapeze artists need to work with a partner they can depend on. When flying through the air at 60 mph, they have to be sure their partner will catch them. "Many times in the past, if I hadn't had a partner I could trust, I would have fallen and probably **hurt myself seriously**," says Chris. People who work in the circus love the risks and the thrill of their profession. Broken bones are part of the job. "I just wish they didn't take so long to **mend**," Chris **explains**. He earns £500 per week, but it is certainly not easy money.

B

There are only two hundred **combat soldiers** in the British Army who can **parachute** into the sea, dive for hours in freezing waters and then **spy** in **enemy territory** successfully. James Rennie is one of them. This isn't his real name because his own **identity** has to be kept secret. "It's a very exciting job, but it's also tough and dangerous. You have to be courageous," says James. It takes five long years of training before such a soldier can go on a special **mission**. According to James, the toughest part of the business is spying. "I've been on a lot of missions that involve this kind of work. If the enemy had caught us, they would have killed us." £45,000 per year might sound like a lot, but few people would risk their lives for less.

**C** Most **patients** are thankful for the **care** they get from their doctors, but when it comes to animals it's a different story. Every vet knows that animals are much more likely to turn round and **bite** rather than thank them. Steve Divers is an **experienced** vet and has been bitten by countless cats and dogs. With more dangerous animals, though, he takes special care. For example, with **poisonous** snakes, he keeps them in a cloth bag, and uses a metal instrument to keep the head down and the teeth away from his hands. "If I didn't know how to handle some animals, I would probably have permanent **scars** by now," Steve says. Although it takes many years of study to become a vet, it is a very **rewarding** and well-paid career. "All animals in need must be treated. I would never **ignore** a sick animal, even if it was dangerous enough to kill me," says Steve.

## Vocabulary Practice

**4** Look at the words in bold in Ex. 3 and try to explain them, then choose any five and make sentences.

**5** Match the numbers to the letters.

|              |              |               |
|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1 risk       | 5 countless  | 9 handle      |
| 2 instrument | 6 thrill     | 10 courageous |
| 3 depend on  | 7 vet        |               |
| 4 tough      | 8 profession |               |

|             |              |         |
|-------------|--------------|---------|
| a rely on   | e danger     | h job   |
| b very many | f doctor for | i tool  |
| c treat     | animals      | j brave |
| d difficult | g excitement |         |

## Follow-up

If you had to do one of the three jobs mentioned in the texts, which would you choose and why? Which would you definitely not choose? Why?

## Language Development

**6** Fill in the adjectives from the list, then say what the pros and cons of being a singer are.

tiring, exciting, stressful, rewarding

Singers have a very 1) ..... job because they have to travel a great deal and often have to perform late at night. Their lives are often 2) ....., however, since

they meet many famous people and get lots of public attention. A singer's job can be very 3) ....., especially if a song becomes a hit, but it can also be very 4) ..... because they have to continue to perform well, otherwise they will no longer be successful.

**7** First describe the jobs below, then answer the questions:

- a) Which of these people wear uniforms when they work?
- b) Which of these people work indoors and which outdoors?
- c) What are the pros and cons of each job? Give reasons.

traffic warden, waiter, doctor, policeman, postman, flight attendant, porter, dustman, typist, gardener, teacher, farmer, builder, secretary, pilot, fire-fighter, optician, butcher, surgeon

**8** Look at the words in bold and say how each word is used.

### Joining similar ideas

It's a tiring job as you have to stand on your feet all day long. Also/In addition to this/What is more/Furthermore/Moreover/Besides this, you have to work on Saturdays.

### Joining contrasting ideas

- It's a dangerous job because you might get burnt. However/On the other hand/Nevertheless, you do get long holidays.
- Although/In spite of the fact (that)/Despite the fact (that) it is a difficult job, it is very poorly paid.
- In spite of/Despite being a difficult job, it is very poorly paid.
- It's a difficult job, yet/but it is poorly paid.

**9** Replace the words in bold with other words from the boxes above.

- 1 Working on a fishing boat is exciting. However, mending the nets is tiring.
- 2 It's exhausting because I work long hours. Moreover, it is not a well-paid job.
- 3 Although I like performing in front of audiences, I can't stand travelling all the time.
- 4 It's a very dangerous job, yet it is rewarding to know that you have saved people.
- 5 It's a very sociable job as you meet many new people. Moreover, it's well paid.
- 6 You need to be qualified for this job. Furthermore, you have to be older.
- 7 Despite the fact that his job involves many risks, he decided to renew his contract.
- 8 It is a tiring job. Also, it takes a lot of physical strength.

# UNIT 14

## 10 Join the following sentences in all possible ways.

- 1 It's a risky job. It is poorly paid.
- 2 It's an interesting job. I earn a lot of money.
- 3 It's very tiring because you spend all day in front of a computer. It's boring as you do the same thing all the time.
- 4 It's an exciting job. You travel a lot which is exhausting.
- 5 It's not a steady job. It's not well paid.

## Grammar in Use

### CONDITIONALS: TYPES 2 AND 3

#### 11 Read the sentences and identify the types of conditionals. Which refers to the present/past?

- "If I didn't know how to handle some animals, I would probably have permanent scars by now."
- "If the enemy had caught us, they would have killed us."

Now fill in the missing information in the table below, then say how each type is formed and how it is used.

|                                 | if-clause  | Main clause                       | Use   |
|---------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| Type 2<br><i>unreal present</i> | If + ..... | would/could/might + .....         | imaginary situation in the present or future (unlikely to happen); also used to give advice |
| Type 3<br><i>unreal past</i>    | If + ..... | would/could/might + ..... + ..... | imaginary situation in the past; it is used to express criticism and regrets                |

### WISHES

#### 12 Read the sentences. Which expresses an unreal situation in the present? Which expresses regret about a past event?

- I wish I hadn't left school. (but I did)
- I wish I earned more money. (but I don't)

Now make wishes for the following situations.

- 1 You lied to your best friend.
- 2 You can't afford to go on holiday.
- 3 Your broken leg hurts.
- 4 You failed your exams.
- 5 Your mum is angry with you.
- 6 You missed an important meeting.
- 7 You aren't old enough to get a driving licence.

#### 13 Make sentences as in the example:

e.g. I wish I had all my teeth. If I had all my teeth, I could eat the apple.



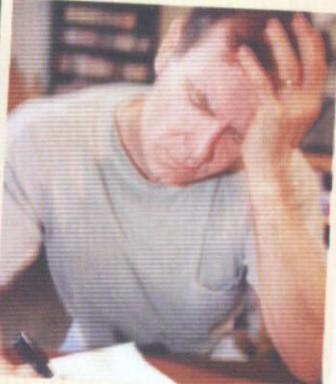
- 1 have all my teeth - eat the apple



- 2 have a friend – not feel lonely



- 3 have a job – be happy



- 4 not have a headache – work faster

#### 14 Make sentences as in the example:

e.g. I wish we hadn't stolen the money. If we hadn't stolen the money, the police wouldn't have arrested us.



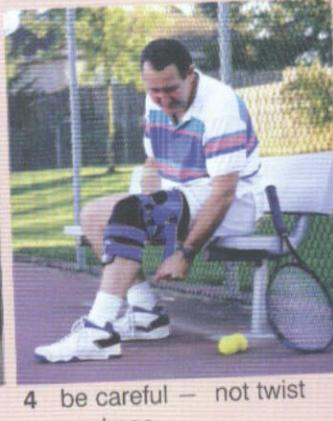
- 1 not steal money – police not arrest us



- 2 check petrol tank – not have run out of petrol



- 3 wake up early – not miss bus



- 4 be careful – not twist my knee

**15** Fill in the correct tense.

- 1 If I hadn't lied to my boss, he ..... (not/fire) me.
- 2 I wish I ..... (not/spend) so much money on clothes. Now, I can't pay the phone bill.
- 3 If he ..... (have) his car, he would give us a lift to the station.
- 4 If she were qualified, she ..... (find) a good job.
- 5 If he ..... (find) a job, he'll move to a bigger house.
- 6 I wish I ..... (not/have to) work such long hours. Then, I could spend more time with my son.
- 7 If you keep coming to work late, you ..... (lose) your job.
- 8 If he had left on time, he ..... (not/be) late for the meeting.
- 9 If you stopped smoking, you ..... (be) in better health.
- 10 I wish you ..... (follow) her advice. If you had done what she had told you to do, you ..... (not/lose) all your money.

**Pronunciation****16** First listen and tick. Then, listen and repeat.

|       | /ʊ/ | /ju:/ |
|-------|-----|-------|
| shoot |     |       |
| fume  |     |       |
| few   |     |       |
| shoe  |     |       |

|       | /ʊ/ | /ju:/ |
|-------|-----|-------|
| suit  |     |       |
| true  |     |       |
| new   |     |       |
| proof |     |       |

**17** Read the table, then listen to the tape and fill in the missing information.

| NEWS REPORTER                              |   |
|--|---|
| <b>advantages</b><br>.....                 | <b>reasons</b><br>travel around and meet lots of .....<br>the news stories I do are .....<br>every day    |
| interesting                                |   |
| <b>disadvantages</b><br>stressful<br>..... | <b>reasons</b><br>have to do everything in a very ..... time<br>often work in places where there are wars |

| SURGEON                                    |   |
|--|---|
| <b>advantages</b><br>.....                 | <b>reasons</b><br>the job needs a lot of skill<br>it's great being able to ..... people's lives |
| rewarding                                  |   |
| <b>disadvantages</b><br>stressful<br>..... | <b>reasons</b><br>work long, unsteady hours<br>responsible for people's lives                   |

**Writing** (advantages and disadvantages)

Before writing a composition about the **advantages** and **disadvantages** of a certain topic you should make a list of the good and bad points, giving reasons for each one. Start your composition by briefly stating the topic, then present the points for and against in two separate paragraphs, giving reasons. End your composition by restating the fact that the topic has both advantages and disadvantages. Remember to use appropriate linking words (e.g. *furthermore*, *to start with*, *also*, *what is more*, *on the other hand*, *in conclusion*, etc). Also begin each paragraph with a topic sentence (a sentence which summarises what the paragraph is about).

- 18** You have been asked to write an article for your school magazine about the **advantages** and **disadvantages** of being either *a reporter* or *a surgeon*. Use the notes from Ex. 17 and the plan below to write your article. The beginning and ending as well as the linking words/phrases have been written for you. Underline the topic sentences after you have written your composition.

**Plan****INTRODUCTION****Para 1:** state topic**MAIN BODY****Para 2:** list the advantages and give reasons**Para 3:** list the disadvantages and give reasons**CONCLUSION****Para 4:** restate the fact that there are both advantages and disadvantages

Have you ever considered becoming a .....? There are many advantages and disadvantages to doing this kind of job.

One of the main advantages of being a ..... is that ..... because ..... Furthermore, ..... as .....

However there are disadvantages to becoming a ..... Firstly, ..... because ..... In addition to this, ..... as .....

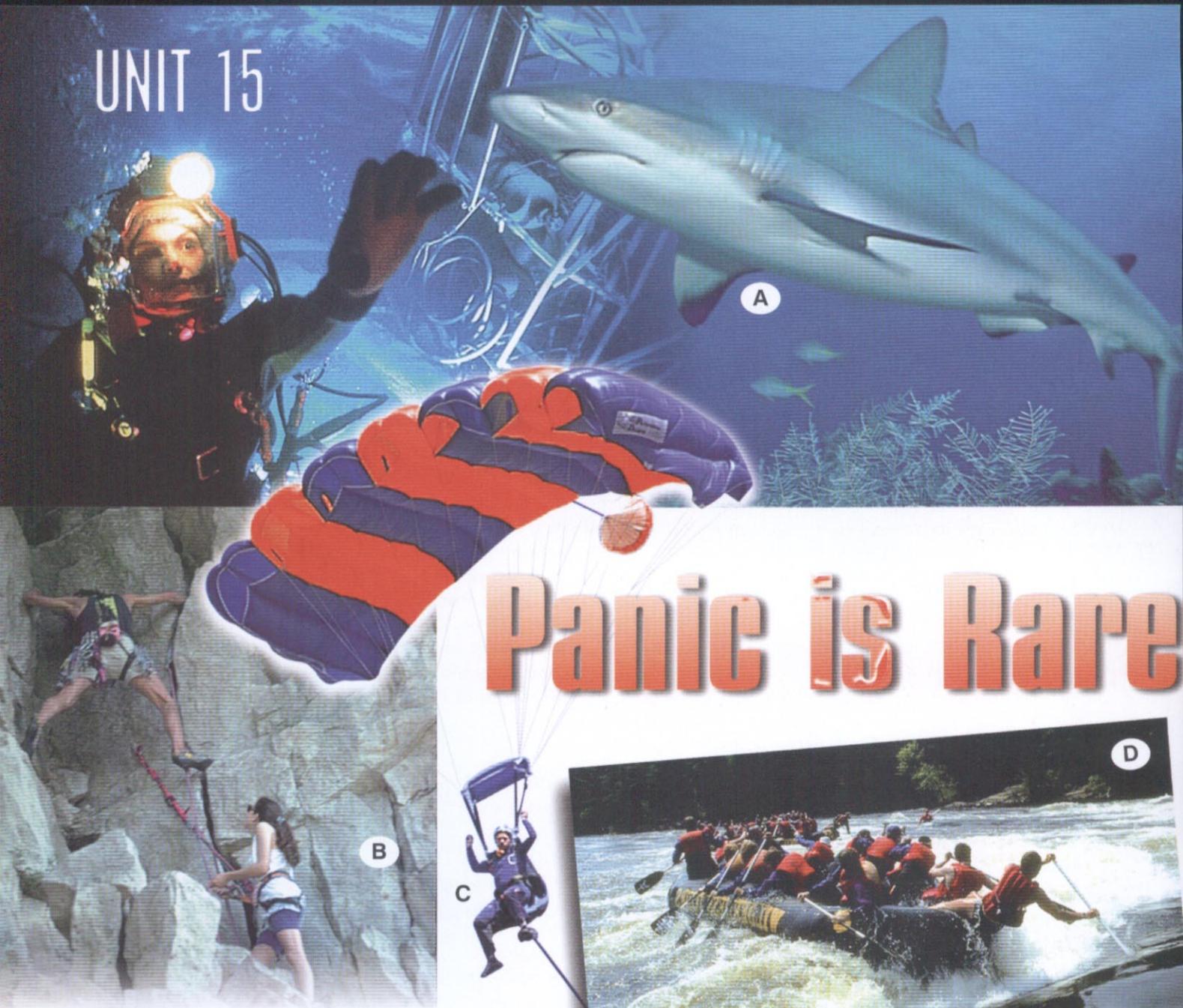
All things considered, becoming a ..... is a good idea, as long as you are aware of the drawbacks.

**Words of Wisdom**

Read the sentence. What does it mean?

- A bad workman always blames his tools.

# UNIT 15



## Panic is Rare

### Lead-in

- 1 Match the pictures with the sports: **rafting, skydiving, scuba-diving, rock-climbing, paragliding**  
How is the title related to these pictures?  
What other extreme sports can you think of?  
• What do you enjoy doing in your free time?

- 2 Read the sentences then listen to the tape and find out who said what: Gill Williams, Bob Card or Sandra Quiggen.

- 1 "I love scary animals."
- 2 "I believe there is an adventurer inside every one of us."
- 3 "It doesn't matter how old or strong you are."
- 4 "Your life will take on new meaning."
- 5 "Those hippos have big teeth. But a little fear makes the brain work faster."
- 6 "If you don't do things right, you are asking for trouble."

## Reading

- 3** Read this magazine article about extreme sports. Choose the most suitable heading from the list A - D, for each part (1 - 4).

- |                      |                                  |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| A Hidden adventurers | C Thrilling free-time activities |
| B Positive fear      | D Risky rewards                  |

Imagine this scene: a woman inside a cage in the sea, with sharks all around her. Wouldn't you expect the woman to feel **terrified**? Not Gill Williams — she finds such **experiences** absolutely thrilling. Gill is an "extreme" sportswoman — an **adventurer** who takes sport to its most dangerous limits.

**1**

"I love **scary** animals," says Gill. "I love being near them and touching them. Great white sharks come and attack the **bars** of the cage. I touch them, but I don't let them bite me!" There are more people like Gill than you might think. They leave their offices and businesses to spend their free time doing extremely dangerous things. Some of them fly jets across deserts or go diving in **unexplored** caves, while others explore African rivers. All of them want to **experience** something more than their normal lives can offer. They want adventure.

**2**

Bob Card is a skydiving trainer. He teaches people to leap out of aeroplanes and let themselves fall through the air without opening their **parachutes** until the very last minute.

"I believe there is an adventurer inside every one of us," he says. "It doesn't matter how old or strong you are. The adventurer is there — it's just hidden away somewhere. If you find that **spirit**, your life will take on new meaning."

One advantage of doing extreme sports to satisfy your need for adventure is that you can completely forget about your everyday problems. As Bob says: "You can't be concerned about business phone calls or examination results when you're jumping out of a plane."

**3**

How much danger can a person take? According to Sandra Quiggen, panic is rare, even when you come face to face with a bad-tempered hippopotamus on the Zambezi River. "You get scared," she says. "Those hippos have big teeth. But a little fear makes the brain work faster, **as long as** you don't let it turn into **panic**."

**4**

There is an **element** of risk in all extreme sports. "If you don't do things right, you are asking for trouble," says Card. But training and proper equipment help to make these sports safer. The difference between extreme sport and "normal" sport is that, although there are organised competitions for these sports, most extreme sports people are more interested in testing their own abilities than in winning prizes. In fact, most of them would agree with mountaineer Sir Edmund Hillary's reply when asked why he wanted to climb Everest: "Because it's there."

## Vocabulary Practice

- 4** Look at the words in bold in Ex. 3 and try to explain them, then choose any three and make sentences.

- 5** Match the numbers to the letters.

- |             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| 1 thrilling | a worried       |
| 2 trainer   | b very exciting |
| 3 leap      | c teacher       |
| 4 concerned | d jump          |
| 5 abilities | e skills        |

- 6** Fill in the correct word(s) from the list below. Use the words only once.

scary, to ask, to satisfy, face, business, to test, to go, to do, take on, everyday, examination, to win

- |                        |                                    |
|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 ..... for trouble    | 7 ..... diving                     |
| 2 ..... extreme sports | 8 ..... phone calls                |
| 3 ..... animals        | 9 your life will ..... new meaning |
| 4 ..... problems       | 10 ..... their own abilities       |
| 5 ..... to face        | 11 ..... your need                 |
| 6 ..... a prize        | 12 ..... results                   |

## Phrasal Verbs

- 7** Fill in the correct participle.

- turn into: to change into  
 turn down: to refuse to accept  
 turn on: to switch on  
 turn up: to arrive

- We waited for hours, but she never **turned** .....
- Jenny, could you **turn** ..... the light please?
- The magician made the bird **turn** ..... a rabbit.
- They **turned** him ..... for the job because he didn't have the right qualifications.

**Prepositions**

- 8** Fill in the correct prepositions, then choose any three and make sentences.

1 to leap ..... of an aeroplane; 2 to fall ..... the air; 3 a need ..... sth; 4 to forget ..... sth; 5 to be concerned ..... sth; 6 to be interested ..... sth; 7 to agree ..... sb

**Follow-up**

- Read the text again, then talk about the reasons why people get involved in extreme sports.

**Language Development**

- 9** Look at the list of **sports/hobbies** and their **equipment**, and underline the odd words out.

wind-surfing: board, camera, wetsuit, sail  
 knitting: needles, ropes, wool, patterns  
 rafting: paddles, life-jacket, raft, binoculars  
 fishing: trainers, boat, fishing rod, hooks  
 stamp-collecting: album, stamps, helmet, magnifying glass  
 scuba-diving: mask, oxygen tank, life-jacket, flippers  
 rock-climbing: ropes, boots, light clothes, bat  
 painting: palette, canvas, brushes, club  
 skydiving: skis, parachute, gloves, goggles  
 football: shorts, stick, trainers, ball  
 jet-skiing: life jacket, jet ski, flippers, swimming suit

Now read the list of **skills/qualities** and say which are needed for the above sports and hobbies.

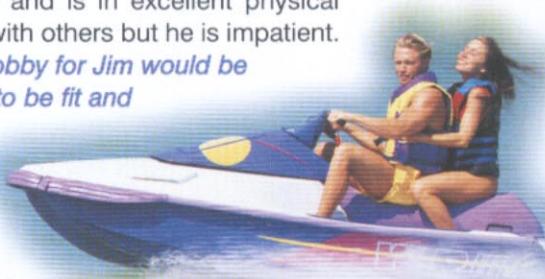
**Skills/Qualities needed:** fit, patient, imaginative, courageous, good sense of balance, cooperative, strong, determined, good training, adventurous

e.g. You need to be fit and strong and you must also have a good sense of balance to go wind-surfing, etc.

- 10** Read the following information and decide what **hobby/sport** would be best/worst for each person, giving reasons as in the example. Then say which hobby/sport you would like to do and why.

1 Jim likes adventure a lot and is in excellent physical condition. He works well with others but he is impatient.

e.g. I think that the best hobby for Jim would be rafting because you have to be fit and cooperative. I think that fishing would be the worst hobby for him because he isn't patient.



2 Antony is a very active person and quite fit, but he can't afford to buy expensive equipment.

3 Peter is a very energetic person who enjoys taking risks. He loves anything to do with the sea.

4 David is very adventurous. He loves being close to nature, especially in the mountains.

- 11** Read the table, then listen to the tape and fill in the missing information. Finally, looking at the table, talk about each sport.

|               | equipment                          | pros            | cons             | skills/qualities                    |
|---------------|------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| windsurfing   | board, wet-suit                    | keep fit, ..... | expensive        | courageous, ....., sense of balance |
| skateboarding | skateboard, fun, knee pads, helmet | .....           | hurt yourself    | sense of balance, fit               |
| parachuting   | parachute                          | thrilling       | ....., expensive | courageous, good training, fit      |
| basketball    | ball, trainers, shorts             | ....., cheap    | .....            | cooperative, ....., good training   |

**Grammar in Use****INFINITIVE / -ING FORM**

- 12** Look at the sentences, identify the **to-infinitive**, the **infinitive without to** and the **-ing form** and say how they are used. Then read the text on p. 67 and underline the same forms.

- 1 You **should wear** a life-jacket when you're sailing.
- 2 He doesn't mind **waiting** for hours for fish to bite.
- 3 I would like **to play** football.

- 13** Say whether the following go with the **to-infinitive**, the **infinitive without to** or the **-ing form**?

must, may, can, will, learn, teach, agree, hope, like, mind, can't stand, enjoy, hate, expect, it's worth, keep (= continue), would like, look forward to, it's no use, prefer, want, would prefer, avoid, suggest, imagine, would rather, make, let

**14** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form:  
**(to) infinitive or -ing form.**

I have always enjoyed 1) ..... (**take part**) in team sports, so when my P.E. teacher asked me if I wanted 2) ..... (**learn**) how 3) ..... (**play**) rugby, I decided 4) ..... (**try**) it. It sounded ideal for me as I don't mind 5) ..... (**be**) outside in cold weather, and I like 6) ..... (**exercise**). I expected 7) ..... (**find**) it easy, but it wasn't. I kept 8) ..... (**practise**), though, and now I'm quite good. My coach thinks I may 9) ..... (**become**) a professional rugby player one day.



**15** Cross out the unnecessary words where necessary.

- 1 If you fancy ~~to~~ trying a sport which doesn't
- 2 involve using too much energy or money,
- 3 you should to visit the Brymouth Billiards club.
- 4 The price per hour is £1.50 and we will to help
- 5 you improve your game. So, if you
- 6 enjoy to playing billiards, snooker or pool in a
- 7 relaxed setting, we suggest to trying our club.

**16** Fill in the correct form of the **infinitive or -ing form**.

- 1 I like ..... (**play**) tennis.
- 2 I'd like ..... (**play**) tennis with you.
- 3 You must ..... (**practise**) more if you want to win the race.
- 4 If a job is worth ..... (**do**), it's worth ..... (**do**) it well.
- 5 You have to ..... (**be**) courageous if you want ..... (**try**) rock climbing.
- 6 Tom agreed ..... (**meet**) us at the pool.
- 7 I look forward to ..... (**see**) you soon.
- 8 She doesn't mind ..... (**get up**) early.
- 9 I'd prefer ..... (**play**) darts rather than play cards.
- 10 She made me ..... (**tidy**) my room.

## Pronunciation

**17** First listen and tick. Then, listen and repeat.

|      | /eɪ/ | /aɪ/ |
|------|------|------|
| tale |      |      |
| tile |      |      |
| day  |      |      |
| die  |      |      |

|        | /eɪ/ | /aɪ/ |
|--------|------|------|
| lay    |      |      |
| lie    |      |      |
| hate   |      |      |
| height |      |      |

## Writing

**18** Read the text and fill in the correct word derived from the words in brackets. Then cover the text and compare and contrast the two sports.



Golf is a very 1) ..... (**relax**) and 2) ..... (**enjoy**) sport because you can spend time in natural surroundings, but it is also one that requires great skill. Learning how to play golf takes a long time, so you need a lot of 3) ..... (**patient**). It's also a rather 4) ..... (**expense**) sport because the equipment costs a lot of money, and prices at golf courses can be very high. On the other hand, roller-blading is an 5) ..... (**excite**) sport and is easy to learn. It's fast and fun and keeps you fit because you have to use all your muscles. It's also cheap because you only need a helmet and a pair of roller-blades. However, roller-blading can be a 6) ..... (**danger**) sport as you might lose your balance and hurt yourself.

**19** Project

Using the information from Ex. 11 write two paragraphs comparing and contrasting a) **windsurfing and parachuting**, and b) **skateboarding and basketball**. Say which you would like to do most and why. Cut pictures from the Photo File Section at the back of the book to use with your project.



**Useful words:** and, also, too, but, however, on the other hand

## Words of Wisdom

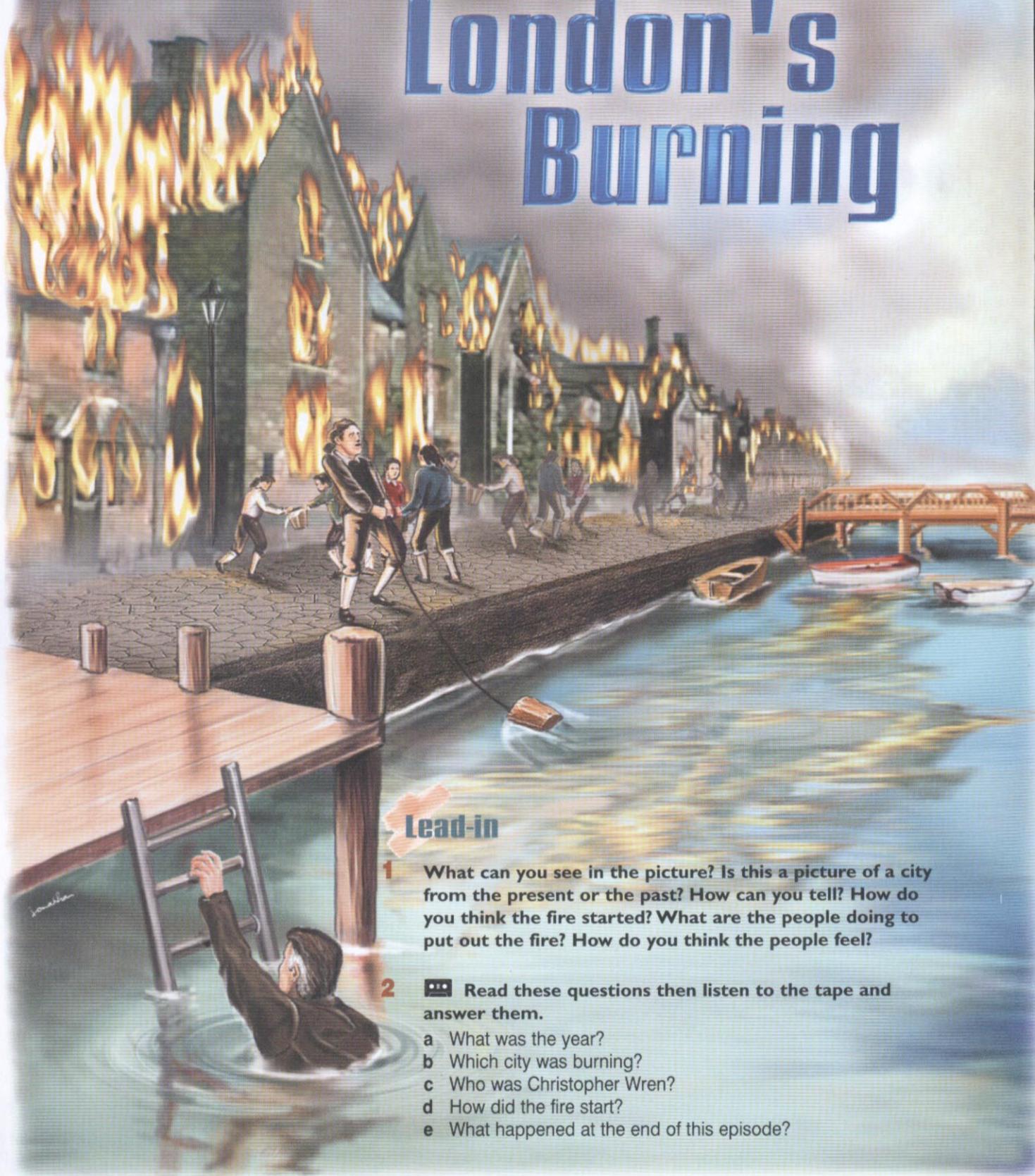
Read these sentences. What do they mean?

- There is an exception to every rule.
- Practice makes perfect.
- Variety is the spice of life.

# UNIT 16

## episode 4

# London's Burning



### Lead-in

- 1 What can you see in the picture? Is this a picture of a city from the present or the past? How can you tell? How do you think the fire started? What are the people doing to put out the fire? How do you think the people feel?
- 2 Read these questions then listen to the tape and answer them.
  - a What was the year?
  - b Which city was burning?
  - c Who was Christopher Wren?
  - d How did the fire start?
  - e What happened at the end of this episode?



## Reading

- 3** Read the text. Six sentences have been removed from it. Choose from the sentences A-F the one which fits each gap (1-5). There is an example at the beginning (0).

The Vikings had tied a **weight** around the professor's legs, and he **sank** quickly into the water. He didn't feel the cold; he didn't feel anything. The water was black, and he could feel himself being **pulled down**. Then the weight broke off, and the ropes around his arms and legs came free. **0** **B**

The year was 1666. A horrible **plague** had killed 75,000 people in London, and now their city was burning. Everyone thought that they were **cursed**.

Once he was out of the river, James saw some people passing **buckets** of water from one person to the next trying to put out the fire. He decided to help them. **1**  He also told them that the city would be rebuilt in a bigger and better way.

"How do you know all this?" one man asked **suspiciously**.

"Perhaps he's a Dutch **spy**," another said.

"Maybe he's the one who started the fire," the first man added.

England was at war with the Dutch, and many people thought that they had set London on fire. The people dropped their buckets and began **chasing** the professor. **2**

He ran through the streets of London with the angry crowd chasing after him and buildings burning all around. He ran into a **dead-end street**. There was a wall in front of him. All he could do was wait for the crowd to **close in on** him.

They **dragged** James to the palace. **3**  The professor also saw Christopher Wren, the famous architect who would rebuild most of the churches in London, and he was amazed at the historical **significance** of the moment. It almost made him forget the trouble he was in.

The **charges** against James were read out to the King, accusing him of being a spy and the possible cause of the fire. **4**

"Even if I told you the truth," he said, "you wouldn't believe me."

The King told him he would be sent to the Tower if he did not answer the charges. James didn't think they would believe him, but he told them it was the King's baker who had started the fire by accident and that it had **spread** because of the wind and because all the buildings were made of wood. Everyone listened with interest. The King asked him how he knew this.

"I'm from the 21st century. I've been sent here by mistake," he said.

Everyone began to laugh. The King was furious. He thought the professor was treating him like a fool. **5**

When they placed his head on the block, James hoped that he would be saved again from death, but he didn't feel sure. His heart **beat** wildly and his mind **raced**.

"I just want to get back to the 21st century," he said.

Then he heard a **thud** as the **axe** hit the block.

- A The King asked him if he had anything to say.
- B James swam to the **surface**, and when he put his head above the water he saw that he was in the River Thames during the Great Fire of London, and everything was burning.
- C They were screaming and shouting, calling him a spy, and soon more people joined the crowd.
- D He **silenced** everyone and ordered the guards to **chop off** the professor's head.
- E As he was doing so, he tried to tell them that the fire would end the plague.
- F There, he was brought before Charles II, the King of England at that time.



## Vocabulary Practice

- 4** Look at the words in bold in Ex. 3 and try to explain them, then choose any three and make sentences.
- 5** Fill in the correct word(s) from the list below. Use the words only once.

beat, dead-end, to answer, to be, to start/put out, to set, to chop off, to tell, to treat, came, to accuse

- |                     |                      |                    |
|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1 ..... the fire    | 6 ..... sb           | 10 his heart ..... |
| 2 ..... at war      | like a fool          | wildly             |
| 3 ..... sth on fire | 7 ..... sb the truth | 11 the ropes ..... |
| 4 a(n) ..... street | 8 ..... the charges  | free               |
| 5 ..... sb of sth   | 9 ..... sb's head    |                    |

### Words often confused

- 6** Underline the correct word.

- The fire-fighters couldn't find the **cause/reason** of the fire.
- There are several **causes/reasons** why I was late.
- He walked **past/passed** the bank and turned left.
- He felt very happy when he **passed/past** his exams.
- Some people **believe/think** in ghosts, but I don't.
- What do you **think/believe** of my new shoes?

- 7** Fill in the gaps with words derived from the words in brackets.

- He was ..... (**fury**) when his car broke down.
- Julie was reading a ..... (**history**) novel.
- Although I was telling the truth, he looked at me .... (**suspicion**).
- She didn't understand the ..... (**signify**) of his words.

- 8** Cross out the unnecessary words.

- On September 2, 1666 a small fire ~~has~~ started
- in the house of the King's baker in Pudding Lane near the London Bridge. A strong wind
- made the fire to spread quickly and it burned
- for three days. The fire it destroyed
- about 13,000 homes. Thousands of people
- gathered their belongings and were escaped to the
- river. Other people ran out to the hills and
- open fields. The Great Fire of London was
- the most worst fire the city had ever experienced
- as it was destroyed more than half of its buildings.

## Follow-up

- What did the professor see when he swam to the surface of the river?
- Put the events in the order they happened, then retell the story.
- He told them that the fire would end the plague.
- The city was burning and people were trying to put out the fire.
- The people thought he was a spy.
- James found himself in London in the year 1666.
- He was taken to King Charles II.
- He decided to help the people.
- The King ordered the guards to chop off his head.

## Grammar in Use

### QUESTION TAGS

- 9** Read these sentences. How are **question tags** formed?

- They are twins, **aren't they?**
- Helen wasn't there, **was she?**
- You study French, **don't you?**
- He left early, **didn't he?**

Study these question tags.

- I am taller than you, **aren't I?**
- She used to live here, **didn't she?**
- Please post this letter for me, **will you?**
- Let's go to the cinema, **shall we?**
- Let her come with us, **will you/won't you?**
- Don't talk to any strangers, **will you?**
- Tammy has your jumper, **hasn't she?**
- Jill had a bad cold last week, **didn't she?**
- There is some cake left for me, **isn't there?**
- This car is Erica's, **isn't it?**
- Everybody likes holidays, **don't they?**

- 10** Fill in the question tags.

- It doesn't rain much in the desert, ....?
- The wedding was lovely, ....?
- They locked the front door, ....?
- This is where you live, ....?
- Don't tell anybody, ....?
- Let's go dancing, ....?
- He has a bicycle, ....?
- You don't like spicy food, ....?

**11** Fill in the question tags.

- 1 Don't forget to ring me, ..... ?
- 2 You haven't typed those letters yet, ..... ?
- 3 Let's go for a run, ..... ?
- 4 You are coming to the party, ..... ?
- 5 She doesn't know his name, ..... ?

**Intonation in question tags**

If we are **not sure** and we expect an answer, we use a rising intonation (↗) in the tag. If we are **sure** and don't really expect an answer, we use a falling intonation (↘) in the tag.

**12** Listen and tick, then listen and repeat.

- 1 It was an awful film, wasn't it?
- 2 The train leaves at 2 pm, doesn't it?
- 3 We'll be able to go home, won't we?
- 4 The film is on tonight, isn't it?
- 5 He can't see very well, can he?

| SURE | NOT SURE |
|------|----------|
|      |          |
|      |          |
|      |          |
|      |          |
|      |          |

**REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS****13** Look at the sentences and the box below. How are **reflexive pronouns** formed? When do we use them?

- 1 Kearns could feel **himself** being pulled down.
- 2 She cut **herself** while chopping the vegetables.

| Singular       | Plural            |
|----------------|-------------------|
| I → myself     | we → ourselves    |
| you → yourself | you → yourselves  |
| he → himself   | they → themselves |
| she → herself  |                   |
| it → itself    |                   |

**14** Complete the sentences using a word from the list below and a reflexive pronoun.

enjoyed, killed, dry, help, burnt, hurt

- 1 You're soaking wet. Here, ..... with this towel.
- 2 Mary ..... quite badly on the hot iron.
- 3 Mark ..... when he fell off the ladder.
- 4 ..... to some coffee while it's hot.
- 5 Robert really ..... during the skiing trip.
- 6 Romeo and Juliet .....

**15** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- 1 If you don't get up soon, you ..... (**be**) late for work.
- 2 What would you do if you ..... (**lose**) your job?
- 3 Your goldfish ..... (**not/die**) if you had remembered to feed them!

- 4 Tom ..... (**pass**) his exams if he had studied harder.
- 5 If Sarah ..... (**be**) here, she would help us.
- 6 Unless you ..... (**stop**) making so much noise, you'll wake the baby.

**Writing (Project)****16** Look at the table, then listen to the tape and fill in the missing words. Finally, use the information to make **a poster for a tourist information centre in London**. Cut pictures from the Photo File Section at the back of the book to use with your project.**TOWER BRIDGE**

built between ..... -1894  
by Sir Horace Jones

- steam ..... were used to raise the bridge so that ..... could pass underneath
- impressive twin Gothic .....

**THE TOWER OF LONDON**

built during the ..... century  
by William the Conqueror

- was the Royal Residence until the ..... century
- has 19 towers
- see the Crown Jewels in the .....

**BIG BEN**

installed in .....

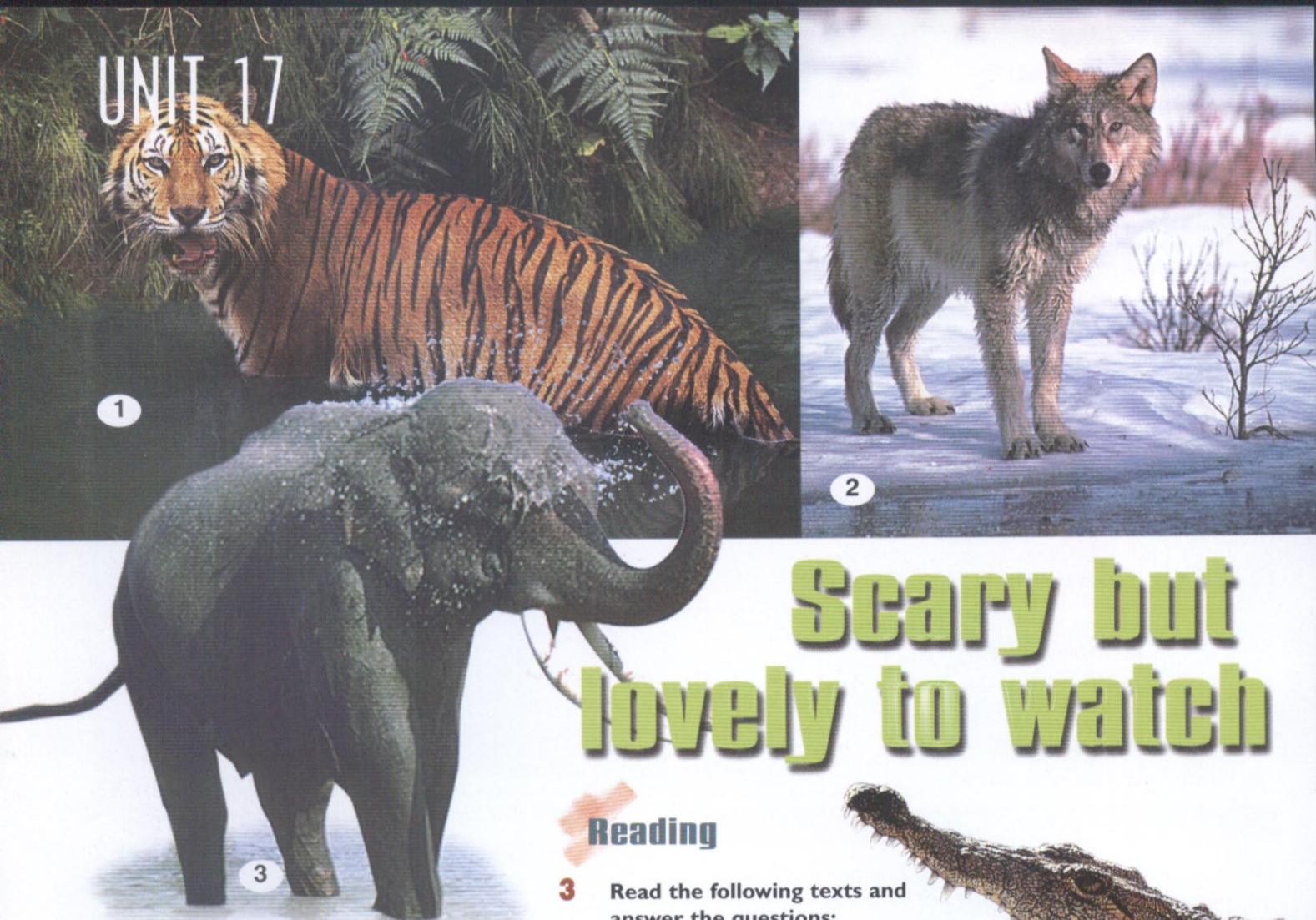
- the largest clock in Britain
- the bell weighs ..... tons
- the name "Big Ben" refers to the ..... , not the clock itself

**BUCKINGHAM PALACE**

built in ..... by the Duke of Buckingham

- Victoria was the first ..... to live there
- Royal Standard is flying when the Queen is in residence
- every morning a changing of the guard ceremony .....

# UNIT 17



## Scary but lovely to watch

### Reading

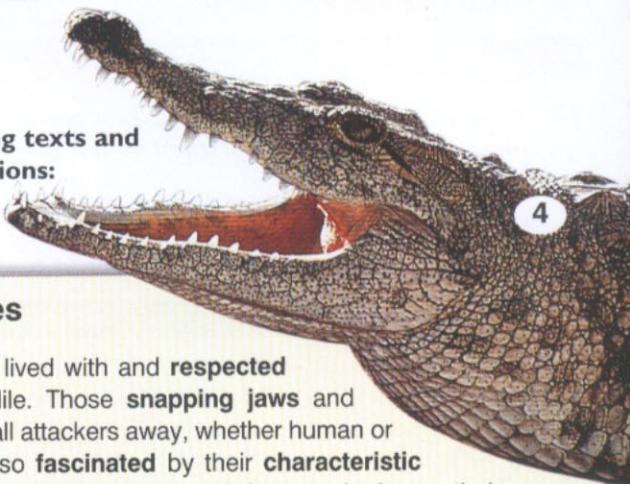
- 3 Read the following texts and answer the questions:

#### Lead-in

- 1 • Can you name the animals in these pictures? What do they have in common?  
• What other endangered animals can you name?  
• Which of the animals in the pictures:  
a live in swamps?      c live in the jungle?  
b attack farm animals?      d eat plants and grass?

- 2 Read the statements and guess whether they are true or false. Then listen to the tape to see if your guesses were right.

- 1 People kill crocodiles for their beautiful skin.
- 2 Crocodiles are protected by law.
- 3 Some crocodiles live safely on farms.
- 4 Wolves are very good hunters.
- 5 Wolves attack and kill people.
- 6 The government will pay farmers if wolves kill their animals.



#### Crocodiles

For centuries, people lived with and **respected** the all-powerful crocodile. Those **snapping jaws** and **lethal teeth** frightened all attackers away, whether human or animal. People were also **fascinated** by their **characteristic calls**, their beauty and their **intelligence**. Unfortunately, it was their beautiful skin which put them **under threat**. When explorers realised how valuable crocodile skin was, everything changed. Hunters risked their lives – and sometimes lost them – in order to satisfy the world's **demand** for crocodile skin.

Worse was to come. The crocodiles' homes began to disappear as new towns and **industries** were developed on the land near **swamps** and rivers. Luckily for the crocodiles, people realised that a world without them would just not be the same, and now they have been officially **declared** an endangered **species**. In some parts of the world, there are now parks where crocodiles may live safely, with laws to protect them.

"It is **illegal** to kill crocodiles," says **conservationist** Charles Swaby, who has spent the last thirty years protecting the Jamaican crocodiles. The problem is that when farm animals are killed by crocodiles, farmers ignore the law and kill them. This is what Charles is fighting against. "Crocodiles are much more scared of us than we are of them. They are scary but lovely to watch," he adds. If Charles, and others like him, can convince the world to **share this opinion**, crocodiles will be with us forever.

## Wolves

The big bad wolf eats the poor little pig or chases Little Red Riding Hood. The brave young hunter comes along and – BANG! – the wolf is dead. Unfortunately, in some parts of the world there are no more wolves **living in the wild**. And all because the wolf has **traditionally** been seen as an evil enemy. In fact, this misunderstood animal has many virtues.

Wolves are superb hunters. They prefer hunting **wild animals** to **domestic ones**. They do not **over-populate**, but keep their numbers at the level they can feed. As for killing people, conservationists **insist** that this is simply not true. "Wolves avoid people. We have to teach the world that wolves only attack human beings in fairy tales."

There are plans to bring wolves back to the **wild areas** of Scotland, but local people have doubts about the idea. "We want wolves back. They lived for thousands of years in Scotland – it is their land – but we fear for our animals," one farmer says. The government has **announced** that it will pay for any farm animals killed by wolves. People in favour of bringing the wolf back say this: "Let our children have the chance to hear a wolf **howl** at the moon on **a still**, Scottish **night**, and let us be proud that we made it possible."

- a Why are there fewer crocodiles now than before?
- b What has been done to protect crocodiles?
- c In Jamaica, why do conservationists have a problem with farmers?
- d How are wolves presented in fairy tales?
- e What are local people in Scotland worried about?
- f In Scotland, how will the government try to stop farmers from killing wolves?

## Vocabulary Practice

- 4** Look at the words in bold in Ex. 3 and try to explain them, then choose any three and make sentences.

- 5** Match the numbers to the letters.

|               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1 superb      | a good points |
| 2 still night | b excellent   |
| 3 virtues     | c state       |
| 4 convince    | d formally    |
| 5 officially  | e quiet night |
| 6 evil        | f very bad    |
| 7 declare     | g persuade    |

- 6** Match the animals with the sounds.

moo, bleat, roar, cluck, miaow, buzz, bark, quack, neigh

- |                |              |               |
|----------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1 lions .....  | 4 dogs ..... | 7 cows .....  |
| 2 horses ..... | 5 hens ..... | 8 sheep ..... |
| 3 cats .....   | 6 bees ..... | 9 ducks ..... |

## Speaking

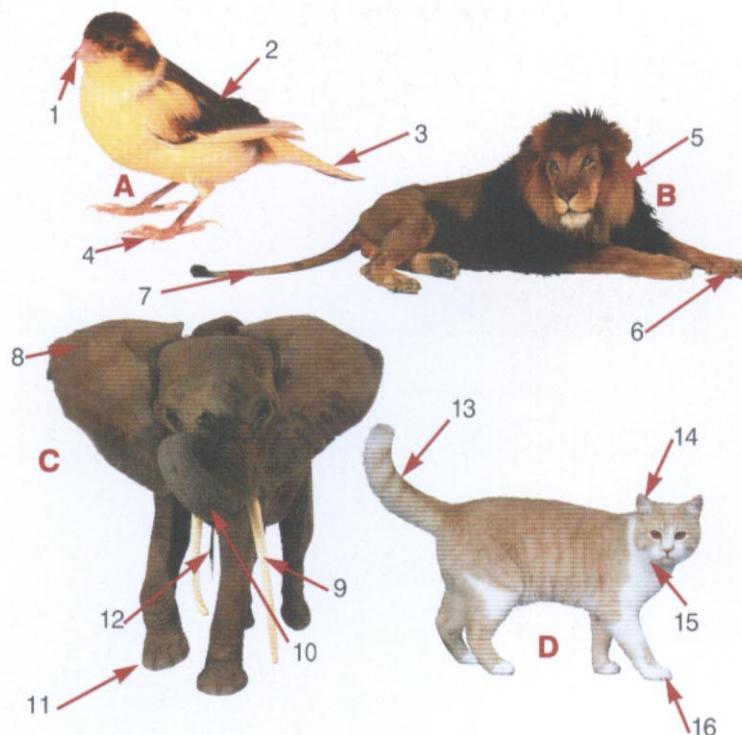
- Answer the following questions:

- a) Do you think it is right for people to wear animal skins? Why/Why not?
- b) Do farmers have the right to shoot wild animals? Why/Why not?
- c) Would you ever kill an animal? Why/Why not?

## Language Development

- 7** Look at the pictures and the list of words below. Can you label the parts of the animals?

feet, mane, wing, claws, beak, whiskers, tail, tusk, trunk, ears, paws



- 8** Study the sentences below. How many animals do we compare in each case? When do we use **both** and **neither**? When do we use **all** and **none**? When do we use a **singular/plural verb**?

Look at pictures **B** and **D**.

- Both of them have got paws.
- Neither of them has got a trunk.

Look at pictures **B**, **C** and **D**.

- All of them are mammals.
- None of them have/has got a beak.

- 9** Now look at pictures **B** and **C** and make sentences using **both** and **neither**, then look at pictures **B**, **C** and **D** and make sentences using **all** and **none**.

too + adjective/adverb  
adjective/adverb + enough

### 18 Read these pairs of sentences. Do they differ in meaning?

- 1 a The ring was **too expensive** for her to buy.  
b The ring was **not cheap enough** for her to buy.
- 2 a The calf was **too weak** to stand up.  
b The calf was **not strong enough** to stand up.

### 19 Complete the sentences with **too** or **enough**.

- 1 It is not warm ..... to play outside.
- 2 Baby lions are not strong ..... to hunt.
- 3 The instructions were ..... difficult for him to understand.
- 4 Tigers are ..... dangerous to keep as pets.
- 5 The rock was ..... heavy for the elephant to pick up.
- 6 The penguin wasn't quick ..... to catch the fish.
- 7 The small bear was ..... short to reach the bees' nest in the tree.

### 20 First look at the examples, then rewrite the sentences in as many ways as possible.

The river was **too deep** for the men to cross.  
The river **wasn't shallow enough** for the men to cross.  
The river was **so deep that** the men couldn't cross it.  
It was **such a deep** river that the men couldn't cross it.

- 1 The bridge was too low for the lorry to pass under. (**high**)
- 2 This ocean is not warm enough for tropical fish to survive in. (**cold**)
- 3 The rabbit was so fast that the dog couldn't catch it. (**slow**)
- 4 It was such a small sign that Mary couldn't see it. (**big**)

## Pronunciation

### 21 Listen and tick. Then listen and repeat.

|      | /əʊ/ | /aʊ/ |
|------|------|------|
| howl |      |      |
| hole |      |      |
| town |      |      |

|       | /əʊ/ | /aʊ/ |
|-------|------|------|
| tone  |      |      |
| nose  |      |      |
| house |      |      |

## Similes

### 22 Read the sentences. What do the words in bold mean?

John is as stubborn as a mule. Jim is as strong as an ox.  
They fight like cat and dog. Ray is like a fish out of water.  
Pam eats like a horse. Fred drinks like a fish.

### 23 Read the table, then listen to the tape and fill in the missing information. Finally talk about these animals.

|                                  | Giant Panda   | Elephant                                       | Rhino   |
|----------------------------------|---|--|---|
| where it lives                   | Southwestern .....  | ..... Africa                                   | Africa  |
| food                             | flowers, ..... bamboo   | grass, twigs, some .....                       | grass, .....  |
| how it has become endangered     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• destruction of habitat</li> <li>• variety of bamboo is decreasing</li> <li>• hunted for their .....</li> </ul> | hunted for their .....                         | hunted for their .....  |
| what has been done to protect it | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• illegal to ..... them</li> <li>• special wildlife ..... have been set up</li> </ul>                            | the ..... and trading of ivory has been banned | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• areas are guarded</li> <li>• the selling of rhino horns has been banned</li> </ul> |

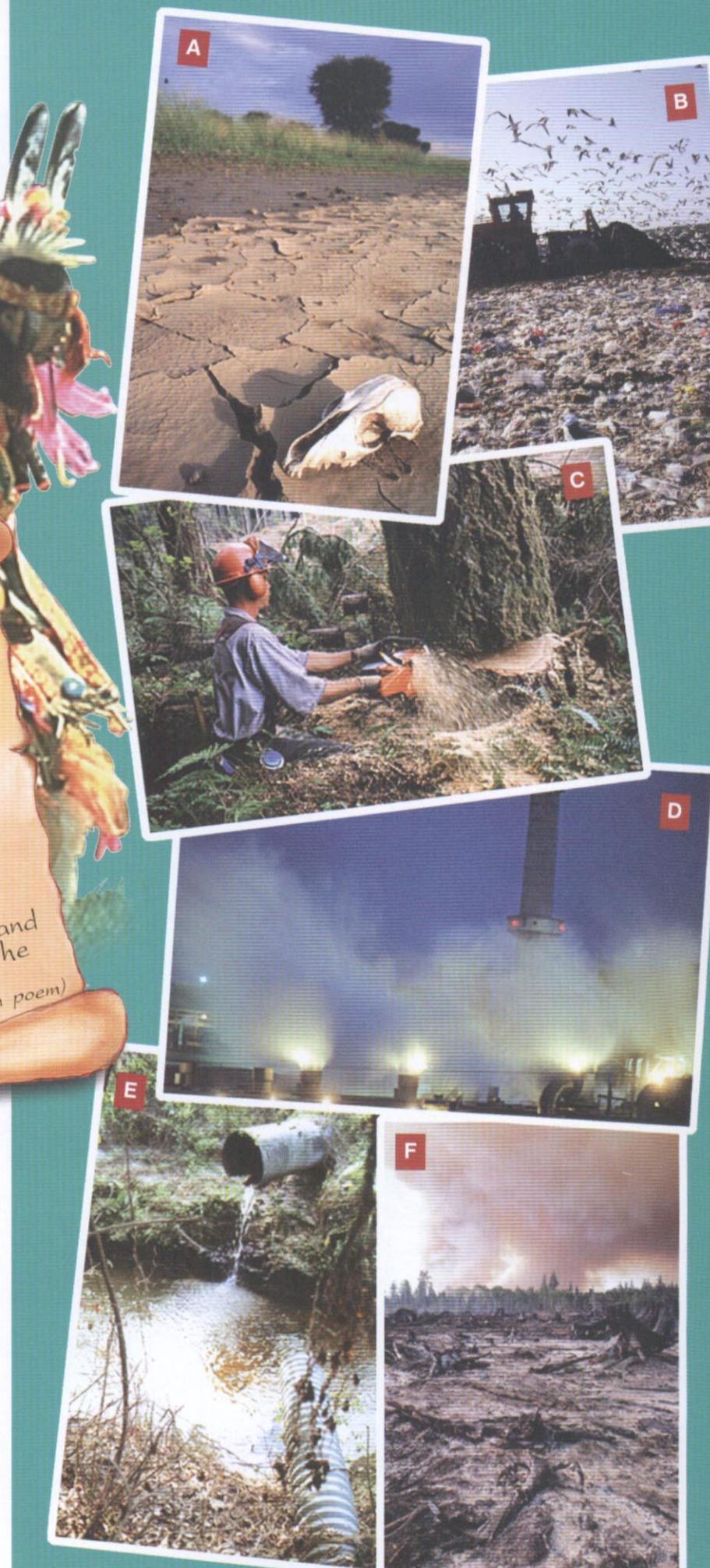
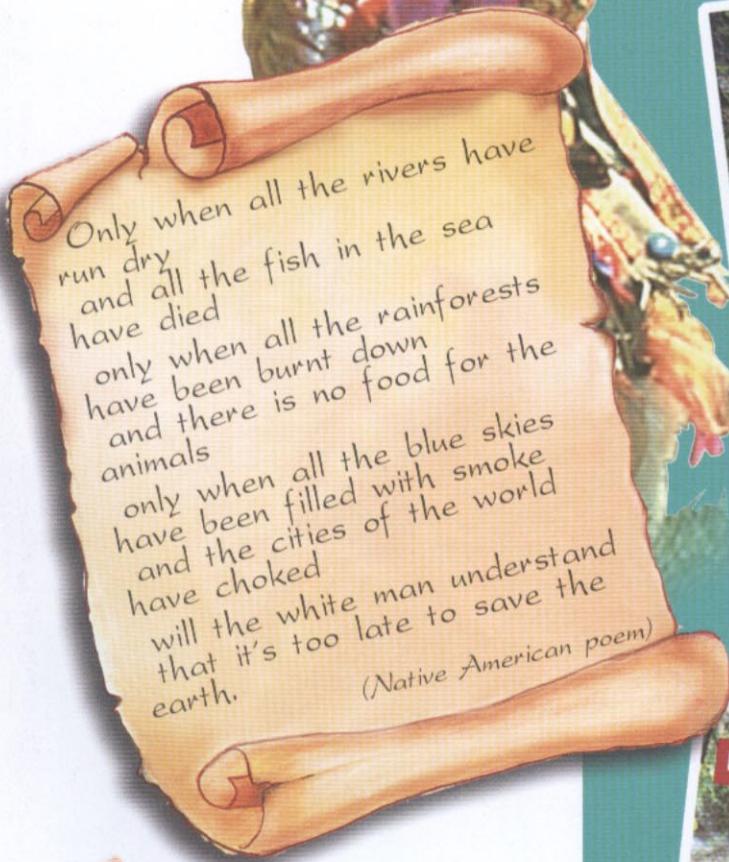
## Writing (Project)

- Use the information in the table above to write about these animals. Mention **where they live, what they eat, how they became endangered and what has been done to protect them**. Cut pictures from the Photo File Section at the back of the book to use with your project.



# UNIT 18

## Problems of the Planet



### Lead-in

1 Listen to the poem. What is it about?

2 Choose three pictures which best match the poem. Now look at the list of problems and match them with the pictures. What do you think has caused these problems?

water pollution, litter, destruction of the rainforests, air pollution, drought

- 3** Read the sentences, then listen to the tape and underline the correct word.

- 1 Rare plant and **human** / animal species are disappearing.
- 2 The trees are being **cut** / **chopped** down for paper or to make room for cattle farms.
- 3 Birds and animals **lose** / **miss** their homes.
- 4 Factories are polluting our rivers and lakes with dangerous **oils** / **chemicals**.
- 5 Sea life is threatened with **extinction** / **loss**.
- 6 Cars and factories are giving off dangerous **waste** / **fumes**.
- 7 We can plant trees and **adopt** / **adapt** animals.

## Reading

- 4** Read this article about the problems of our planet. Choose the most suitable heading from the list A - F for each part (1 - 4). There is one heading you do not need to use. There is an example at the beginning (0).

- |                            |                                  |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| A A watery <b>grave</b> .  | D Nature can <b>heal</b> itself. |
| B Running out of time.     | E No trees – no life.            |
| C <b>Choking</b> to death. | F We can do it!                  |

We have spent thousands of years fighting for our **survival**. Yet now we have discovered that our planet is under **threat** and, to make matters worse, it's all our **fault**.

**0**   **B**

The **rainforests** are dying, rare plant and animal **species** are disappearing, rivers and seas are being contaminated, **crops** are failing to grow, people are dying of **hunger** and the air is being polluted. It's time we woke up to these problems and started repairing the **damage**.

**1**  

One of the major problems is the **destruction** of the rainforests in South America. They are home to half the world's species and to millions of people. Moreover, the rainforests clean the air by **absorbing** carbon dioxide and **giving out** oxygen. The trees are being cut down for paper or to make room for **cattle farms**. As a result, birds and animals lose their homes and die. This destruction is also bringing about changes in the climate, air pollution, **flooding**, drought and famine. If we continue to burn and cut down the rainforests as we are doing now, the earth will never be the same again.

**2**  

Another big problem is water **pollution**. Do you like swimming in the sea or drinking a cool glass of water on a hot day? These simple pleasures may soon become a thing of the past. Factories are polluting our rivers and lakes with dangerous chemicals. **Oil tankers** are **releasing** thick, black oil into our oceans. Tons and tons of industrial and **domestic waste** are **poured** into our seas. **Consequently**, **sea life** is threatened with extinction.

**3**  

Air pollution is another important **issue**. The cars and factories in and around our cities are giving off dangerous **fumes**. In the past few years, more and more people than ever before have developed allergies and breathing problems. If we don't do something now, our cities will become impossible to live in.

**4**  

Fortunately, it is not too late to solve these problems. We have the time, the money and even the technology to prepare the way for a better, cleaner and safer future. We can plant trees and **adopt** animals. We can create parks for endangered species. We can put pressure on those in power to **take action**. Together we can save our planet. All we need to do is open our eyes and **act** immediately.



## Vocabulary Practice

**5** Look at the words in bold in Ex. 4 and try to explain them, then choose any three and make sentences.

**6** Match the numbers to the letters.

- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1 drought     | a lack of food |
| 2 contaminate | b take in      |
| 3 famine      | c lack of rain |
| 4 absorb      | d pollute      |

**7** Fill in the correct word(s) from the list below. Use the words only once.

to be threatened, carbon, to become, endangered, to give off, breathing, to take, industrial/domestic, oil, to develop

- |                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1 ..... waste   | 6 ..... with      |
| 2 ..... dioxide | extinction        |
| 3 ..... a thing | 7 ..... allergies |
| of the past     | 8 ..... problems  |
| 4 ..... tankers | 9 ..... species   |
| 5 ..... fumes   | 10 ..... action   |

### Prepositions

**8** Fill in the correct prepositions, then choose any three and make sentences.

1 to fight ..... sth; 2 to be ..... threat; 3 to die ..... hunger; 4 to live ..... a city; 5 to put pressure ..... sb; 6 those ..... power

## Follow-up

- Read the text again and make notes under the following headings: **Problem - Cause - Effect** as shown in the table. Then look at your notes and talk about the problems our planet is facing. Use **consequently, as a result, therefore, as a consequence or so**, to link the causes with the effects.

| PROBLEM                        | CAUSE                        | EFFECT                                     |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| destruction of the rainforests | trees are burnt and cut down | birds and animals lose their homes and die |

## Language Development

**9** Look at the text on p. 79 again. Find the following words and underline them: **yet, moreover, fortunately**. Now match the words with the following: **furthermore, however, luckily**.

### Expressing Cause and Effect

**10** Link the following sentences with: **as a result, therefore, consequently or as a consequence**.

- 1 Trees are being cut down. Many species will become extinct.
- 2 People in cities breathe exhaust fumes every day. Many of them develop breathing problems.
- 3 Industrial waste is dumped into the sea. Fish die.
- 4 People drop litter in the streets. People get diseases.
- 5 Most factories do not use filters. The air gets dirty.

**11** Read the table, then listen to the tape and fill in the missing information. Finally, talk about the problems, causes and effects mentioned.

| PROBLEM                | CAUSES  | EFFECTS   |
|------------------------|---|---|
| litter                 | lack of education   | streets are ..... , people catch diseases   |
| air pollution          | factories and ..... pollute the air                                       | cause serious ..... problems, trees and ..... are damaged   |
| water pollution        | factories dump waste into ..... , sea is polluted with ..... from tankers | people suffer from ..... problems, fish are killed, rivers are contaminated                             |
| destruction of forests | people cut down or ..... forests  | animals and plants lose their ..... , animals may even become extinct, people have less ..... to breath |

## Grammar in Use

### CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

- (in order) to - infinitive (affirmative purpose)
- so that + can/will -infinitive (affirmative purpose)
- so that + can't/won't -infinitive (negative purpose)

**12** Read the following sentences. How are the *clauses of purpose* introduced?

- We should stop using cars **to** reduce air pollution.
- We should stop using cars **so that** we can reduce air pollution.
- We should stop using cars **so that** we won't have polluted cities.

**Now join the sentences using **to** or **so that**.**

- 1 We should stop cutting down trees. Animals won't lose their natural habitats.
- 2 We should build wildlife parks. We can protect animals from extinction.
- 3 We should plant more trees. We will have more oxygen.
- 4 We should clean up the litter in cities. We won't catch diseases from it.
- 5 We should find clean forms of energy. We can save the planet.

**13** Look at the boxes and match the *suggestions* with their *results*. Then, link the sentences with **so that** or **to** and talk about how we can improve the living conditions in our cities.

#### SUGGESTIONS

- 1 Governments should improve public transport.
- 2 People should get involved in recycling schemes.
- 3 We should ban cars from city centres.
- 4 Governments should force factories to put filters on chimneys.
- 5 We should stop using the products of companies whose factories cause pollution.

#### RESULTS

- a There will be less rubbish to pollute the environment.
- b We will force them to use environmentally friendly production methods.
- c We can make the streets cleaner, safer and quieter.
- d People won't have to use cars to get around.
- e The harmful gases won't be able to pollute the atmosphere.

**14** Your town is facing serious problems. The streets are full of rubbish, there are too many cars, people keep cutting down the trees to make space for more buildings, the nearby river is being polluted with chemicals from the factories and people are suffering from breathing problems and stomach illnesses.

**Suggest ways to improve the situation, explaining the results of each suggestion.** You can use ideas from the whole unit as well as your own ideas.



## Writing (Providing solutions to problems)

Before you write a composition providing solutions to problems, you should make a list of the suggestions and the results. Start your composition by stating the problem(s) and cause(s), then present each of your suggestions and results in separate paragraphs. Join your suggestions and results using **so**, **consequently**, **therefore**, **by doing this**, **in this way**, etc. End your composition by summarising your opinion.

**15** Use the plan below to write an article for your school magazine entitled "**How can we make our town a better place to live in?**" Draw ideas from Exs. 13 and 14. The introduction and conclusion have been written for you.

#### PLAN

#### INTRODUCTION

**Para 1:** state the problem:

*The living conditions in our city are getting worse and worse. Exhaust fumes and smoke from the factories are polluting the air and trees are being cut down. Furthermore, the river is being polluted by chemicals from the factories and people are suffering from breathing difficulties and stomach problems. We should do something before it is too late.*

#### MAIN BODY

**Para 2:** suggestion 1 & result

**Para 3:** suggestion 2 & result

**Para 4:** suggestion 3 & result

#### CONCLUSION

**Para 5:** summarise your opinion:

*All things considered, there are many solutions to all the problems. The sooner we put them into practice, the better our lives will become.*

## Words of Wisdom

Read the sentences. What do they mean?

- In the eyes of nature we are just another species in trouble.
- "The world began without man, and it will complete itself without him." (Claude Levi-Strauss)

# Module Self-Assessment 3 (Units 13 - 18)

## 1 Choose the correct item.

- 1 The ..... erupted, destroying the nearby villages.  
A earthquake B volcano C explosion D flooding
- 2 The children were looking at ..... in the mirror.  
A itself B himself C themselves D yourselves
- 3 ..... came out of the kettle when the water boiled.  
A Steam B Ash C Gas D Force
- 4 He ..... on his family for help whenever he had problems.  
A joined B involved C depended D explained
- 5 We could hear the wolves ..... in the distance.  
A neighing B mooing C clucking D howling
- 6 No one knew the spy's ..... as he was carrying a false passport.  
A identity B mission C experience D element
- 7 The fire quickly ..... to the nearby buildings.  
A pulled B sank C dragged D spread
- 8 Quick ..... had to be taken to avoid further damage.  
A charge B action C significance D intelligence
- 9 The snake's ..... bite killed the farmer.  
A lethal B scary C illegal D dangerous
- 10 A lot of ..... is dumped into the world's rivers and seas.  
A damage B destruction C pollution D waste

(10 marks)

## 2 Fill in the correct word from the list.

*pouring, furious, unexplored, training, declared, roared, accused, axe*

- 1 He was ..... when he found out they had lied to him.
- 2 He used a(n) ..... to chop wood for the fire.
- 3 The tiger ..... as it attacked the zebra.
- 4 Lava kept ..... out of the volcano for days after the eruption.
- 5 Mrs Jones ..... Jim of breaking her window.
- 6 There are no maps of this ..... area of the country.
- 7 It takes years of ..... to become a vet.
- 8 The mediterranean seal has been ..... a protected species.

(8 marks)

## 3 Fill in the gaps with words from the list.

*endangered, test, put, dead-end, do, win, examination, develop, beat, set*

- 1 to ..... out the fire
- 2 to ..... the competition
- 3 ..... results
- 4 they ..... their own abilities
- 5 to ..... a house on fire
- 6 a(n) ..... street
- 7 His heart ..... wildly.
- 8 to ..... allergies
- 9 a(n) ..... species
- 10 to ..... extreme sports

(10 marks)

## 4 Underline the correct word.

- 1 The **witnesses/victims** of the earthquake have left their homes and are now living in tents.
- 2 The tree was **struck/beaten** by lightning.
- 3 Tom walked **past/passed** me without even saying "hello".
- 4 What was the **cause/reason** of the accident?
- 5 Do you **think/believe** in ghosts?

(5 marks)

## 5 Fill in the correct prepositions from the list.

*for, about, out of, with, in, through, to, of*

- 1 Due ..... his need ..... adventure, he forgot ..... the risks of parachuting. So, after months of hard training, he finally leapt ..... the aeroplane and fell ..... the air.
- 2 People who live ..... cities have to cope ..... air pollution and heavy traffic. Those concerned ..... environmental issues and those ..... power must take action in order to solve these problems.

(9 marks)

## 6 Fill in the correct particle from the list.

*into, up, off, down, on*

- 1 She offered to **put us** ..... for the night.
- 2 They **turned** ..... just in time for dinner.
- 3 They **turned** ..... her application for the position.
- 4 Tim always **puts** ..... his dentist's appointments.
- 5 **Turn** ..... the radio. I want to listen to the news.
- 6 Water **turns** ..... ice when it freezes.

(6 marks)

## 7 Look at pictures A and B and answer the questions using both or neither.



a Which of them can talk?/fly?/roar?  
e.g. **Neither of them** can talk.

b Which of them has a beak?/ears?/claws?/paws?/a tail?

(5 marks)

- 8** Look at the pictures A, B and C and answer the questions using all or none.



a Which of them can run fast?/fly?/talk?

e.g. **All of them** can run fast.

b Which of them has ears?/feet?/a beak?/a tail?

(5 marks)

- 9** Fill in the correct tense.

- 1 If I ..... (**be**) a bird, I would be able to fly.
- 2 I wish I ..... (**leave**) on time. If I had, I (**not/be**) ..... late for the appointment.
- 3 I wish I ..... (**not/spend**) so much money when I went shopping with Julie.
- 4 I wish I ..... (**have**) my car; now I have to take a taxi home.
- 5 They wish they ..... (**service**) their car. If they had, it ..... (**not/break**) down.
- 6 If I ..... (**have**) more time, I ..... (**take up**) a sport.
- 7 If she ..... (**know**) about the meeting, she would come.
- 8 I wish Myriam ..... (**not/leave**) so late for the airport. If she hadn't, she ..... (**catch**) her flight home.

(8 marks)

- 10** Fill in (to) infinitive or -ing.

- 1 I'm looking forward to ..... (**go**) on holiday this summer.
- 2 It's no use ..... (**ask**) him for money.
- 3 She made him ..... (**pay**) for the damage.
- 4 You may ..... (**leave**) now if you wish.
- 5 I would like ..... (**buy**) a bigger motorcycle.

(5 marks)

- 11** Fill in the question tags.

- 1 Switch on the light, ..... ?
- 2 That film was awful, ..... ?
- 3 I'm taller than Jim, ..... ?
- 4 Let's go out, ..... ?
- 5 Ann hasn't come yet, ..... ?

(5 marks)

- 12** Complete the sentences using the words in bold. Use two to five words.

- 1 He wasn't old enough to drive a car.  
**young** He ..... a car.
- 2 The dinner was so delicious that they really enjoyed it.  
**such** It was ..... dinner that they really enjoyed it.
- 3 It was such an expensive dress that she couldn't buy it.  
**too** The dress ..... for her to buy.
- 4 They are reporting the accident on channel 10.  
**reported** The accident ..... on channel 10.
- 5 The zoo will adopt a baby gorilla next year.  
**be** A baby gorilla ..... the zoo next year.
- 6 The film wasn't interesting enough for them to watch.  
**so** The film ..... couldn't watch it.
- 7 Rescue workers have found six survivors in the ruins.  
**been** Six survivors ..... in the ruins by rescue workers.
- 8 The fire destroyed half the forest.  
**was** Half the forest ..... by the fire.
- 9 The match was cancelled because of the heavy rain.  
**due** The match ..... the heavy rain.
- 10 The photographers have taken hundred of photos of the scene of the accident.  
**been** Hundreds of photos of the scene of the accident ..... by the photographers.
- 11 Although he was short, he played basketball well.  
**spite** He played basketball well ..... short.
- 12 Despite being tired, he continued walking.  
**although** He continued walking ..... tired.

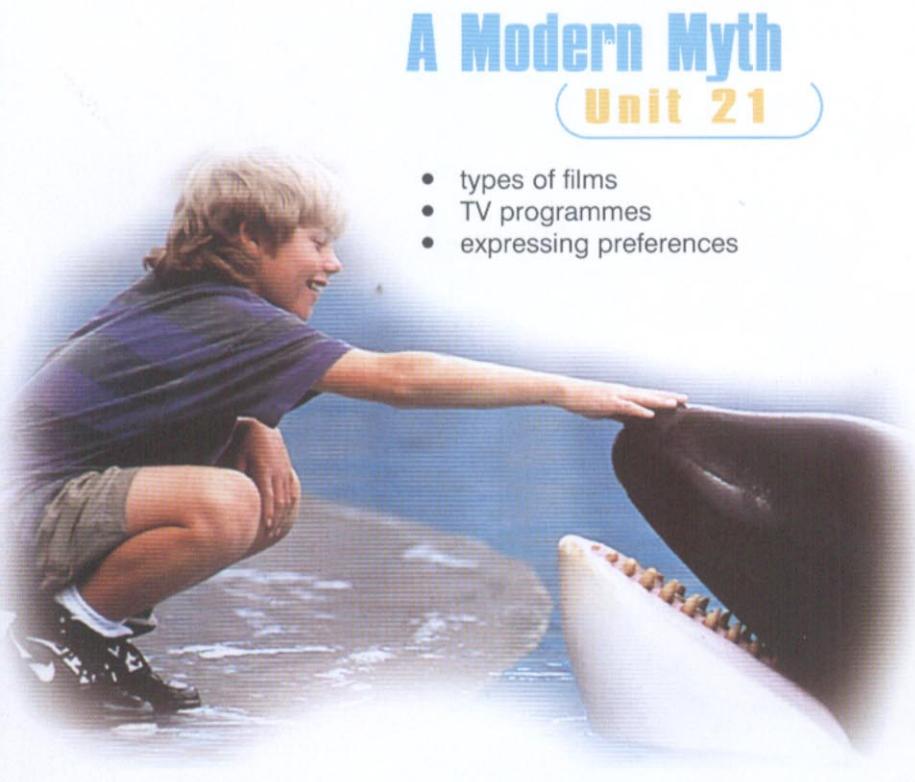
(12 marks)

## Writing

- 13** Answer the following questions.

- a) How do we start a composition about the advantages and disadvantages of a certain topic?
- b) How many paragraphs do we use to present the points for and against?
- c) How do we end a for and against composition?
- d) What linking words do we use to link similar/contrasting ideas?
- e) What linking words do we use to express cause?/effect? /purpose?
- f) When we compare and contrast sports, what information should we talk about?

(12 marks)



## A Modern Myth

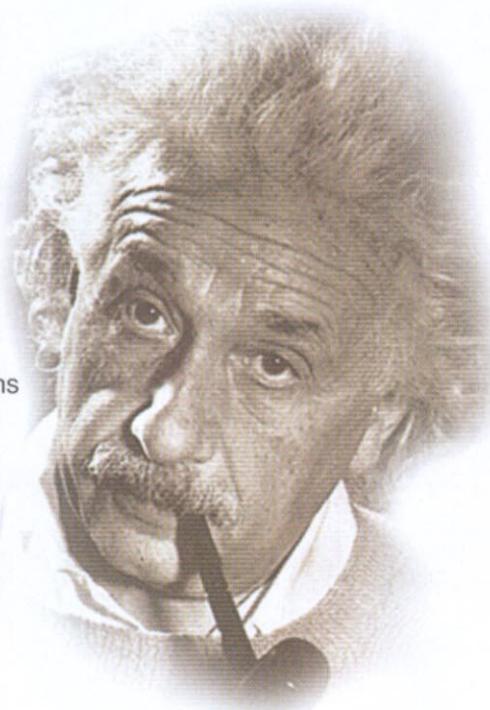
(Unit 21)

- types of films
- TV programmes
- expressing preferences

## The Return

(Unit 22)

- great minds
- inventors & inventions



### Learn how to...

- make comparisons
- make complaints
- describe life in the past
- make deductions
- describe cars in the future
- make recommendations
- express preferences
- describe films/TV programmes
- make preparations
- talk about inventions

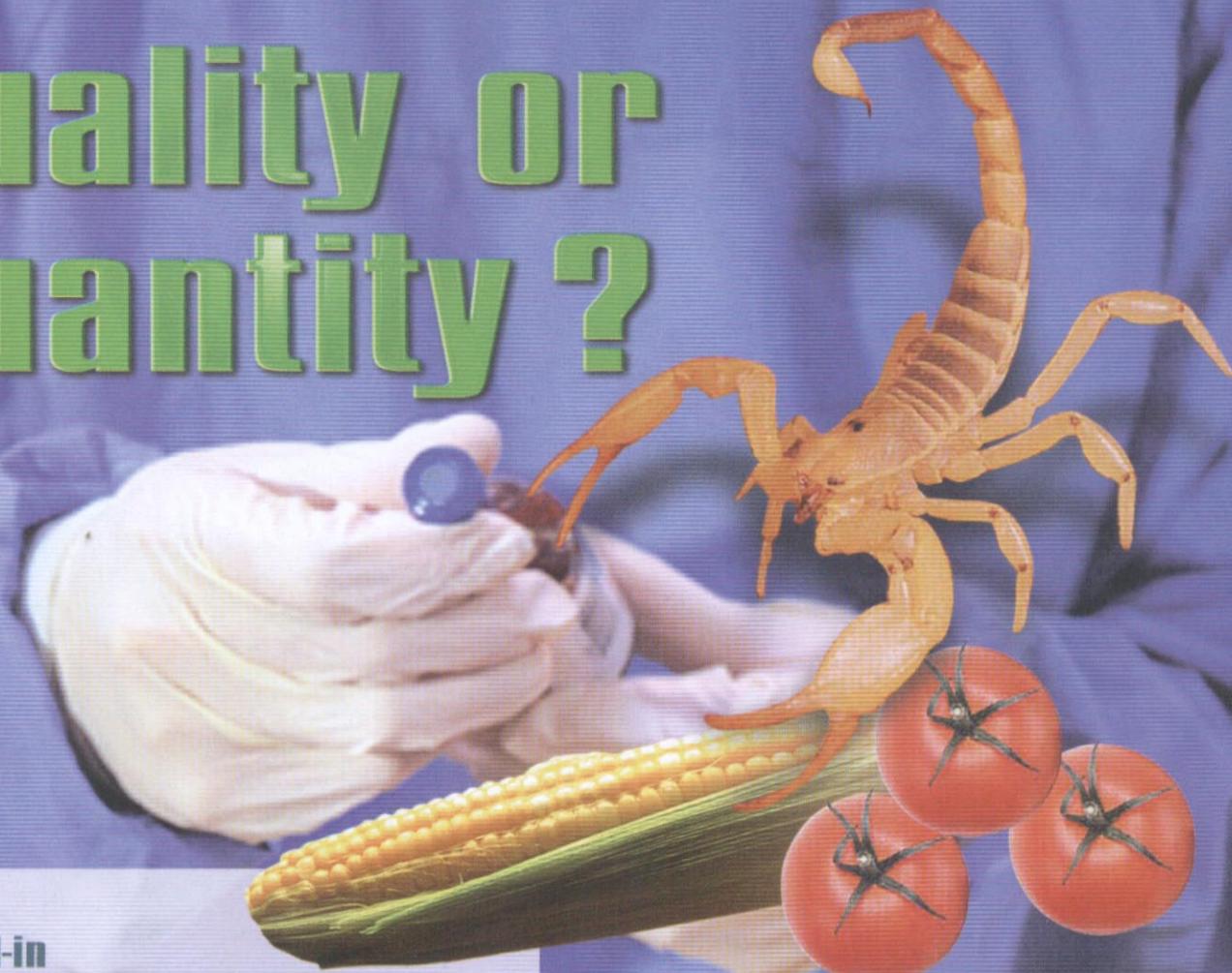
### Practise ...

- countable - uncountable nouns
- how much/how many
- comparative/superlative degree
- making deductions (must - can't - may/might/could)
- present & past participles
- expressing preferences
- so/neither
- causative form

### Write ...

- a letter of complaint
- a description of cars in the future
- a film review
- about inventions & inventors

# Quality or Quantity?



## Lead-in

1 Look at the picture on page 85. This is Frankenstein's monster. Have you ever heard the story of Frankenstein? What happened in the story? What do you think scientists are doing with the types of food shown on p. 84? What do you think the members of Greenpeace are protesting against?

2 Read the sentences, then listen to the tape and fill in the missing words.

- 1 Every ..... thing has genes.
- 2 Genetic engineers put duck genes into chickens to make the chickens .....
- 3 The effects of genetic engineering on our health are not .....
- 4 The engineers may create life forms – monsters – that we cannot .....
- 5 Greenpeace is trying to ..... all such food experiments.
- 6 Genetic engineering could be the solution to the ..... of famine.





## Reading

- 3** You are going to read a text about genetically engineered food. Five sentences have been removed from it. Choose from the sentences A-E the one which fits each gap. There is an example at the beginning (0).

You didn't ask for it, and you might not know about it. But you've probably already eaten some of it. It's **genetically engineered** food.

Perfectly round tomatoes all exactly the same size, long straight cucumbers and big fat chickens are now a normal part of our diets. They are made that way by genetic engineering – not by **nature**. Their **genes** have been changed.

Every living thing has genes. **0** **B** They are passed on from **generation** to generation. They make sure that humans **give birth to** humans and cows give birth to cows. They also make sure that a dog cannot give birth to a frog, or an elephant to a horse. Genetic engineers take genes from one species – for example, a scorpion, and **transfer** them to another – for example, corn. In this way a new life form is **created**. **1**

Genetic engineers put **duck** genes into chickens to make the chickens bigger. They put hormones into cows to make them produce more milk. They put genes from flowers into soya **beans** and from scorpions into corn. This does not make them cheaper, tastier or healthier. It makes them easier and faster for the farmer to grow.

The **effects** of genetic engineering on our health are not known. Many of the genes which are used – such as those of scorpions, **rats**, mice and **moths** – are not part of our diet so we do not know how dangerous they may be. For example, people can develop allergies to food which has been genetically engineered.

The effects of genetic engineering on the natural world may be disastrous. The engineers may create life forms – monsters – that we cannot control. The new life forms have no natural habitat or home. They will have to find one, **fight** for one – or kill for one.

**2** Moreover, the effects of these experiments can often be cruel. In America, pigs were given human genes to make them bigger and less fatty. **3** The pigs became very ill and began to lose their **eyesight**.

Greenpeace is trying to **prevent** all such food experiments. Some – but not all – food companies are refusing to use genetically engineered foods. **4** We must all be aware of what is happening.

Some people believe, though, that genetic engineering could be the solution to the problem of famine. Plants which grow faster, or cows which produce more milk, can save the lives of **starving** people.

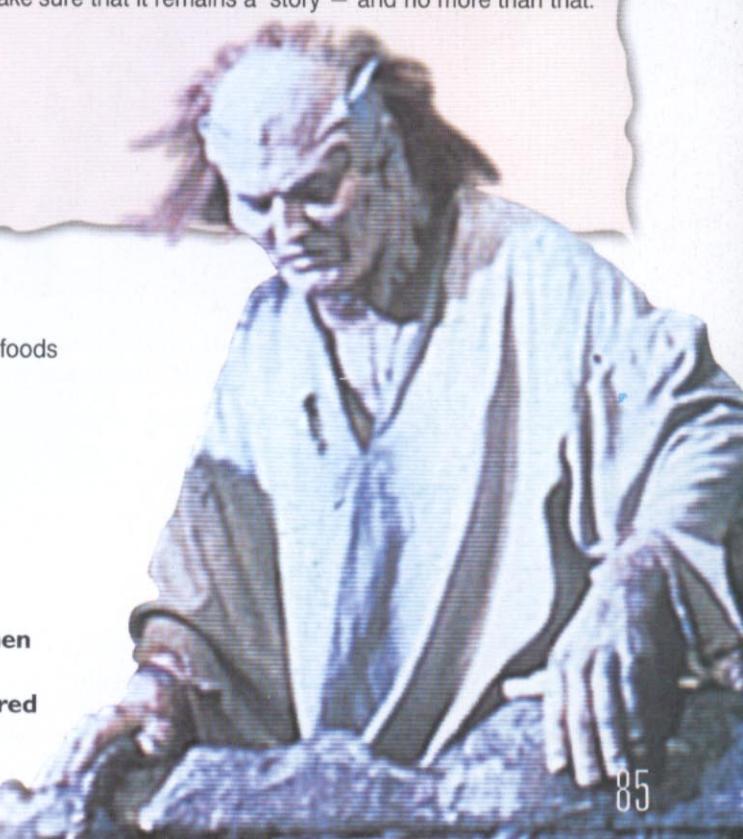
We would all like a better, healthier and longer life, and genetic engineering might give us this. On the other hand, it may be a dangerous experiment with nature. In the story, Frankenstein created such a terrible and dangerous monster that he had to **destroy** it. We must make sure that it remains a story – and no more than that.

- A The experiment failed.
- B Genes carry information.
- C Some – but not all – supermarkets are telling their customers which foods are genetically engineered.
- D It may be your land they fight for – or you that they kill.
- E These new life forms have been described as a "real-life Frankenstein".



## Follow-up

- Look at the words in bold in Ex. 3 and try to explain them, then choose any three and make sentences.
- What are the arguments for and against genetically engineered food? What do you think about it?



## Language Development

- 4** Look at the list of words below and underline the types of food/drinks you can see in the picture, then list the words under these headings:  
**fruit - seafood - dairy products - meat - poultry - vegetables - sweets - drinks**

Finally say which of these you **often, rarely or never** eat or drink.

ice-cream, cabbage, pepper, lettuce, aubergine, strawberries, lobster, carrots, prawns, mushrooms, crab, cake, pumpkin, chicken, turkey, sausages, grapefruit juice, lamb chops, steak, ham, milk, cheese, grapes, salmon, beans, yoghurt, trout, pineapple, pear, peach, artichoke, garlic, onion, mussels



- 5** Look at the menu. Which of these foods are: **spicy, sweet, salty, healthy, fattening, creamy, juicy?**

**STARTERS:**

CHICKEN SOUP  
GREEN SALAD

FISH AND CHIPS  
STEAK AND KIDNEY PIE

**MAIN COURSES:**

STEAK AND CHIPS  
BEEF CURRY  
SPAGHETTI CARBONARA  
ROAST BEEF AND POTATOES

**DESSERTS:**

ICE-CREAM  
FRESH FRUIT SALAD  
CHOCOLATE CAKE

## Grammar in Use

### COUNTABLE – UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

**Countable nouns** are those which can be counted. They have singular and plural forms, e.g. *a strawberry, two strawberries*.

**Uncountable nouns** are those which cannot be counted. They have no plural forms, e.g. *bread, sugar*. We do not use **a/an** before them.

We use **a/an** with countable nouns in the singular and **some** with uncountable nouns or countable nouns in the plural, e.g. *an apple, some apples, some flour*. We use **some** in affirmative sentences (e.g. *I need some butter*) and **any** in negative sentences and questions (e.g. *Do you need any apples? No, we don't need any apples.*). **No** is used instead of **not any** (e.g. *There isn't any milk. There is no milk.*).

- 6** Fill in **a/an** or **some**.

|   |       |          |   |       |           |
|---|-------|----------|---|-------|-----------|
| 1 | ..... | orange   | 5 | ..... | fruit     |
| 2 | ..... | bread    | 6 | ..... | hamburger |
| 3 | ..... | biscuits | 7 | ..... | sausages  |
| 4 | ..... | lemon    | 8 | ..... | pineapple |

many + countable nouns

much + uncountable nouns

- 7** Fill in **How many** or **How much**.

|   |       |               |   |       |         |
|---|-------|---------------|---|-------|---------|
| 1 | ..... | orange juice? | 5 | ..... | jam?    |
| 2 | ..... | watermelons?  | 6 | ..... | prawns? |
| 3 | ..... | eggs?         | 7 | ..... | flour?  |
| 4 | ..... | sugar?        | 8 | ..... | grapes? |

- 8** Fill in **any, some, much or many**. Then listen to the tape and check your answers.

Mary: I'll make an omelette. Do we have 1) ..... eggs?  
 Bill: No, there aren't 2) ..... . We need to buy 3) ..... .  
 Mary: Is there 4) ..... cheese in the fridge? I'll need 5) ..... .  
 Bill: Yes, there's plenty.  
 Mary: Good. Is there 6) ..... ham?  
 Bill: Not 7) ..... . Only two slices.  
 Mary: That's OK. I need 8) ..... tomatoes too.  
 Bill: How 9) ..... do you need?  
 Mary: Just two.

Now, using the words below, act out similar dialogues in pairs.

**cake:** flour, sugar, eggs, butter

**apple pie:** apples, flour, sugar, butter

Uncountable nouns can be made countable using partitives.  
e.g. a **bottle** of water, a **glass** of milk, a **pot** of yoghurt

### 9 Fill in the blanks with words from the list:

packet, loaf, cup, slice, bar, can

- |                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 a ... of ham/cheese/cake   | 5 a ..... of soup/Coke/soda |
| 2 a ..... of bread           | 6 a ..... of tea/coffee     |
| 3 a ..... of chocolate       |                             |
| 4 a ..... of crisps/biscuits |                             |

### COMPARATIVE – SUPERLATIVE DEGREE

### 10 Read the following sentences. Which include comparative forms and which superlative forms? How are they formed? How are **as ... as, less... than** used?

- a This apple pie is **tastier than** the one I baked yesterday.
- b Is this restaurant **more expensive** than the other one?
- c Chicken is **less fattening** than lamb.
- d These grapes are **as juicy as** those ones.
- e Pierre makes **the lightest** soufflé in Paris.
- f Sarah made **the most delicious** cake I've ever eaten.

### 11 Write the comparative and superlative forms of these adjectives: **spicy, strong, fattening, nutritious, delicious, rich, juicy, disgusting, tasty, hot, good, bad, little**

### 12 Compare and contrast the two places using comparative and superlative forms, **as ...as, or less ... than.**

|                    | Paul's restaurant           | Ed's restaurant           |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>SERVICE:</b>    | good ***                    | good **                   |
| <b>FOOD:</b>       | tasty ***<br>expensive **** | tasty ***<br>expensive ** |
| <b>ATMOSPHERE:</b> | friendly **                 | friendly ***              |
| <b>DECOR:</b>      | luxurious ***               | luxurious **              |

e.g. The service at Ed's restaurant is **not as good as** at Paul's. The service at Paul's is **better than** the service at Ed's.

### Writing (letter of complaint)

Letters of complaint are normally formal. They start with a) *Dear Sir/Madam* and end with *Yours faithfully + your full name* or b) *Dear Mr/Mrs + surname* and end with *Yours sincerely + your full name*. Start your letter by stating the reason why you are complaining, then, in separate paragraphs, explain your complaints in detail with reasons. Finish by suggesting what action you expect to be taken. Link your complaints with: **firstly, to make matters worse, what is more, etc.**

### 13 Read the table, then listen to the tape and fill in the missing words. Finally, using the plan and the information in the table, write a letter of complaint to the restaurant manager. The beginning and ending have been written for you.

| Complaint               | Reason                                |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| • service was .....     | we had to ..... half an hour          |
| • music was very.....   | we couldn't ..... each other          |
| • food was ..... cooked | steak was tough and chips were greasy |
| • waiter was.....       | didn't apologise for spilling .....   |

#### PLAN

OPENING REMARKS      Dear Sir/Madam,

#### INTRODUCTION

Para 1: Reason for writing:

- ✓ I am writing to complain about your restaurant, which I visited on May 6th.

#### MAIN BODY

Para 2: Complaint 1 (details and reason)

Para 3: Complaint 2 (details and reason)

#### CONCLUSION

Para 4: action expected to be taken:

I trust that you will give the matter serious consideration and that this won't be repeated.

#### CLOSING REMARKS

Yours faithfully,  
(signature)

### Words of Wisdom

Read these sentences. What do they mean?

- Don't put all your eggs in one basket.
- Too many cooks spoil the broth.

# UNIT 20

## episode 5

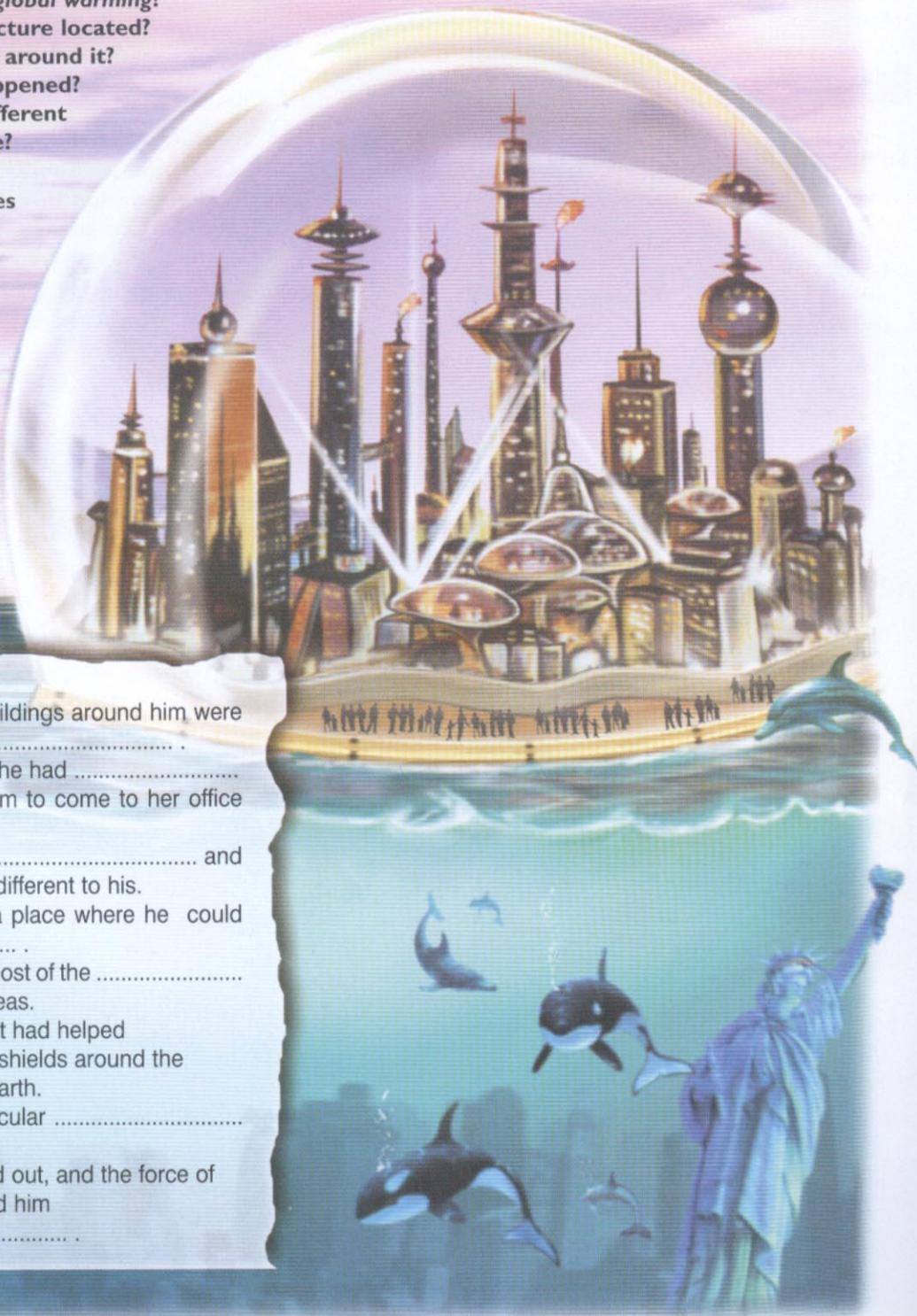
# Earth 3,000

### Lead-in

- 1 What do you know about *global warming*?  
Where is the city in the picture located?  
Why is there a glass shield around it?  
What do you think has happened?  
In what ways is this city different  
to the place where you live?

- 2 First read the sentences below, then listen to the tape and fill in the missing information.

- 1 He saw that all the buildings around him were made of mirrors and .....
- 2 She thought perhaps he had ..... himself, and asked him to come to her office for an examination.
- 3 He noticed that her ..... and hair were completely different to his.
- 4 Glynis drove him to a place where he could view the old .....
- 5 The sun had melted most of the ..... in the earth's polar areas.
- 6 The world government had helped ..... glass shields around the highest areas of the earth.
- 7 There was a large circular ..... full of water.
- 8 The water was sucked out, and the force of the air around it pulled him .....



## Reading

- 3** Read the text and for questions 1 - 4, choose the best answer, A, B, C or D.

The professor's head felt heavy and his neck hurt.

He looked around and saw he was sitting on something like a white **rubber** carpet. A **bubble-car floating** on air several **inches** above the carpet **pulled up** beside him. He saw that all the buildings around him were made of mirrors and glass. "This must be the future," he thought.

A woman wearing a white plastic suit and strange shoes got out of the car and asked him if he was all right. Her name was Glynis, and she was a doctor. James didn't know what year it was, and when he heard it was the year 3,000, he could **hardly** believe it. He told Glynis he was from the 21st century. She thought perhaps he had hurt himself, and asked him to come to her office for an **examination**.

Glynis found nothing wrong with him. As she was examining James he **noticed** that her skin and hair were completely different to his. Hers was so shiny and perfect that it didn't look real.

James explained what had happened to him, and he asked if any sort of time machine had been **developed** so that he could get home. Glynis said there wasn't one, but she **suggested** they **look up** his name on the computer to see what information it might have on him. They found that the computer only had information on him up to the day he had begun travelling through time. Next to that day it said "**presumed dead**".

He couldn't understand it. Did that mean he never made it back to the present? Would he always be travelling through time? He asked Glynis if she could take him to his home town. Perhaps he could find where Dr Applebaum used to live. Maybe there was a **secret passage** under his house. Glynis looked at him sadly.

"That's impossible," she said. "The world as you knew it has been destroyed."

Glynis drove him to a place where he could **view** the old world. During the drive, she told him what had happened. The sun had **melted** most of the ice in the earth's **polar** areas, causing **worldwide flooding**. The earth's temperature had **risen**, and thousands of people had died. Finally, in 2,300, the world government had helped build glass **shields** around the highest areas of the earth to protect people from the sun and the water.

"Perhaps that's why our hair and skin are so different," Glynis said.

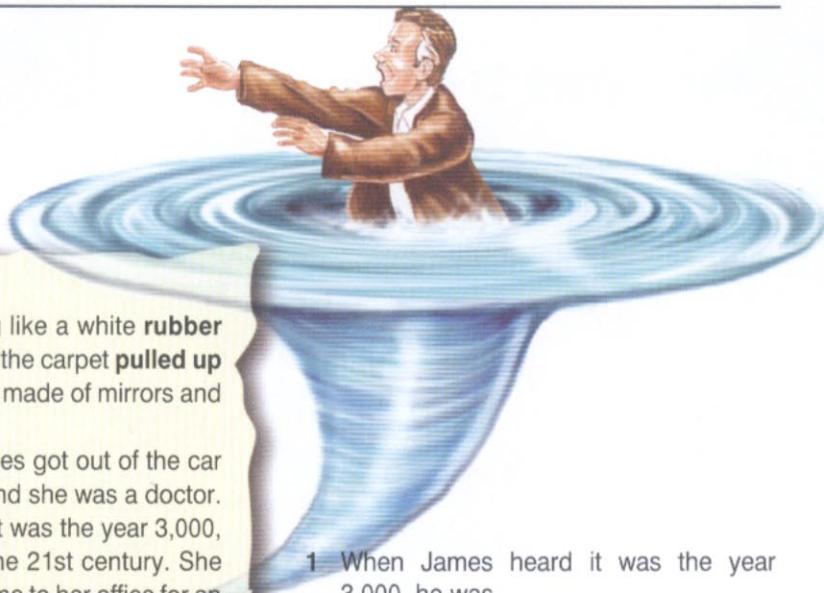
"We no longer have natural sunlight or air."

She took him to the **edge** of the glass shield where he could see miles and miles of water. There were video screens **set up** along a **walkway** which showed the Statue of Liberty, the Eiffel Tower, Big Ben and the Acropolis, all underwater.

There was a large circular hole full of water **nearby**. There were **pipes** taking water out of it to a nearby factory. Every few minutes, the water was **sucked out**, then **refilled** from below. Glynis explained that this was how they got water from outside and changed it into clean, **usable** water. James went close to the edge to look down into it.

"Professor! Don't!" Glynis screamed.

But it was too late. The water was sucked out, and the **force** of the air around it pulled him inside. When the **bottom** opened, he was pulled from the future world, underwater, to the old world where he used to live.



- 1 When James heard it was the year 3,000, he was
  - A thrilled.
  - B amazed.
  - C horrified.
  - D sad.
- 2 The information on the computer stated that James
  - A was alive.
  - B had left the country.
  - C had been found dead.
  - D was thought to have died.
- 3 The old world was underwater because
  - A there had been an earthquake.
  - B the sea level had risen.
  - C there had been a rainstorm.
  - D the earth's temperature had dropped.
- 4 A large hole in the surface of the new world was used to
  - A take water to a nearby factory.
  - B send water to the old world.
  - C refill the pipes with water.
  - D communicate with the old world.

## Follow-up

- 4** Read the text again and answer the questions.
- 1 What did the professor see when he looked around?
  - 2 What was Glynis wearing?
  - 3 How had the old world been destroyed?
  - 4 Why were Glynis' hair and skin different to the professor's?
  - 5 How did the professor return to the old world?

## Vocabulary Practice

**5** Look at the words in bold in Ex. 3 and try to explain them, then choose any five and make sentences.

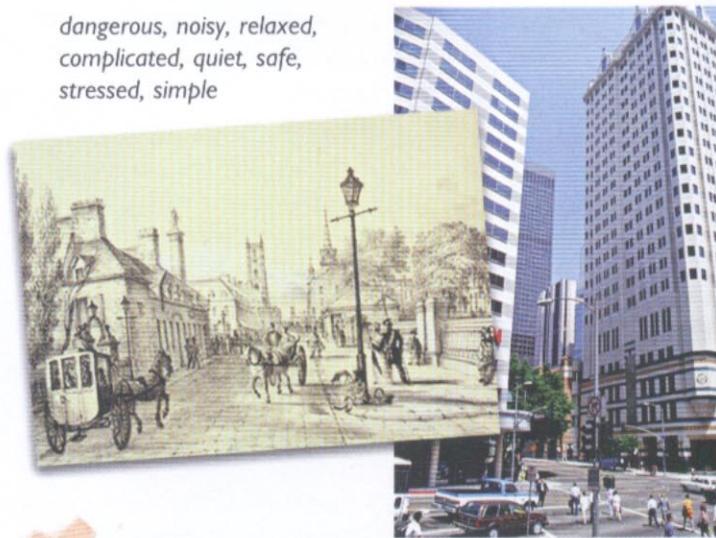
**6** Fill in the correct word(s) from the list below. Use the words only once.

video, home, glass, presumed, to look up, time, natural, the temperature, circular, secret

- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1 a ..... machine | 6 ..... sunlight  |
| 2 ..... town      | 7 ..... screens   |
| 3 a ..... passage | 8 ..... sb's name |
| 4 a ..... hole    | 9 ..... had risen |
| 5 a ..... shield  | 10 ..... dead     |

**9** First, look at the two pictures and compare them. Then, using adjectives from the list below, compare life today with life in the past.

dangerous, noisy, relaxed, complicated, quiet, safe, stressed, simple



## Language Development

**7** Listen to the tape and mark the statements about the past true (T) or false (F). Finally, use the statements to talk about life in the past.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Families used to spend more time with each other.               | 6 <input type="checkbox"/> People never used to lock their doors. |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> People were busier and more stressed.                           | 7 <input type="checkbox"/> There were fewer cars.                 |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> People were wealthier then.                                     | 8 <input type="checkbox"/> It was much quieter.                   |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Life was much safer.  | 9 <input type="checkbox"/> There was a lot of traffic.            |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> People never used to lock their doors.                          | 10 <input type="checkbox"/> People used to go to the theatre.     |
| 11 <input type="checkbox"/> People used to spend their time doing more interesting things. | 12 <input type="checkbox"/> People watched a lot of TV then.      |

## Words often confused

**8** Underline the correct word.

- Besides/Beside** being intelligent she is also good looking.
- The man standing **besides/beside** my father is a famous writer.
- The cost of living is very **tall/high** these days.
- John is really **high/tall** for his age.

## Grammar in Use

### MAKING DEDUCTIONS

**10** Read sentences 1 - 5 and match them with sentences a - e. Then say which modal verbs we use when we are **sure** about something and when we are **not sure** about something. Which sentences refer to the **past/present/future?**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 I'm sure he's lying to you.                   | a She <b>may/might</b> come later.            |
| 2 It is possible that they changed their minds. | b They <b>can't</b> be twins.                 |
| 3 I'm sure he didn't know it.                   | c He <b>must</b> be lying to you.             |
| 4 I'm sure they aren't twins.                   | d He <b>can't</b> have known it.              |
| 5 Perhaps she'll come later.                    | e They <b>could</b> have changed their minds. |

**11** Complete the following sentences using **must**, **can't** or **may/might/could**.



- She ..... be trying to escape.
- She ..... fall off the roof.
- She ..... be feeling safe.
- She ..... hurt herself.
- She ..... be feeling frightened.

## Study this table

| verb forms    | infinitive forms        |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| he tries      | → (to) try              |
| he is trying  | → (to) be trying        |
| he tried      | → (to) have tried       |
| he was trying | → (to) have been trying |
| he has tried  | → (to) have tried       |
| he had tried  | → (to) have tried       |
| he will try   | → (to) try              |

**Note:**  
In the passive voice we have only two infinitive forms: Present: **to be tried** or Perfect: **to have been tried.**

12 Match the sentences and make deductions using **must, can't or may/might/could**, as in the example:

e.g. *She must have been sunbathing because she's got a great tan.*

- 1 Has she been sunbathing?
- 2 Did they enjoy the play?
- 3 Did he eat all the pizza?
- 4 Is he going to work?
- 5 Is she at work?
- 6 Did he study?
- 7 Has she got married?

- a She's not at home.
- b He failed his exams.
- c She's wearing a ring.
- d She's got a great tan.
- e There isn't any left.
- f They left before the end.
- g He's very ill.

13 Look at the pictures and make deductions using **must, can't or may/might/could** and the notes below:

**picture A:**  
*burglars tied him up, he is feeling uncomfortable, he was robbed, he has been calling for help, she felt surprised*



**picture B:**  
*he stole money, they will put him in prison, he is unemployed, shopkeeper called the police, he is frightened*

## 14 Complete each sentence using the words in bold. Use two to five words.

- 1 I'm sure she is coming back.  
**must** She ..... back.
- 2 Perhaps he has lost his way.  
**may** He ..... his way.

- 3 I'm certain he won't fail his exams.  
**fail** He ..... his exams.
- 4 It's possible that she forgot the appointment.  
**could** She ..... appointment.
- 5 I'm sure she didn't commit the crime.  
**committed** She ..... the crime.
- 6 I'm sure he stole the money.  
**stolen** He ..... the money.
- 7 Perhaps he lied to you.  
**might** He ..... to you.
- 8 I'm sure she is still working in her office.  
**be** She ..... in her office.
- 9 Perhaps they were sleeping when you called them.  
**been** They ..... when you called them.
- 10 I'm sure he didn't pay the rent.  
**paid** He ..... the rent.

15 First explain the words in the list below, then listen to the tape and circle the correct answer, **A, B, or C**.

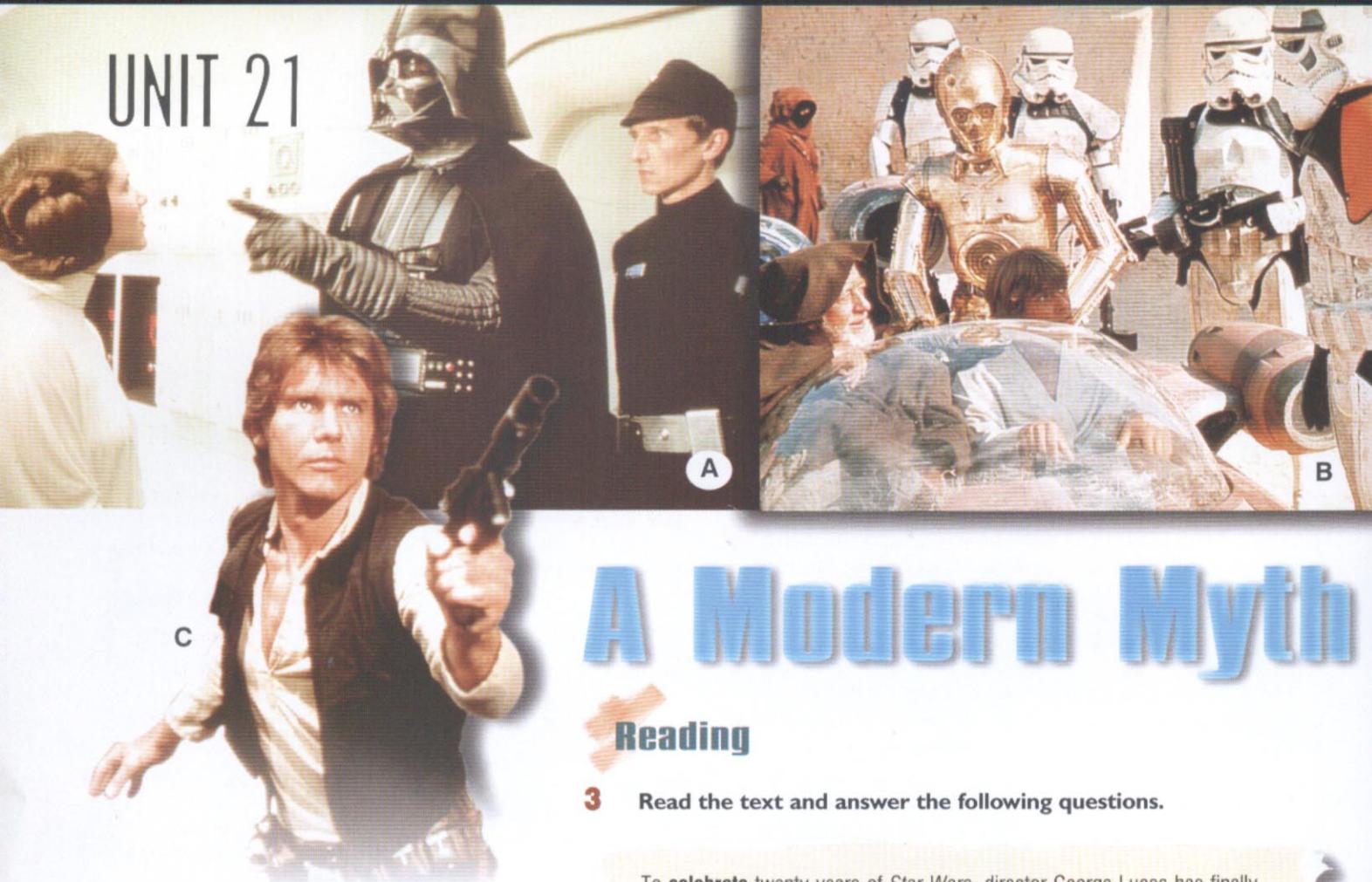
hydrogen, road map, steer, ultra violet, visibility, sensors

- 1 The car will run on  
 A petrol or water.  
 B batteries or hydrogen power.  
 C hydrogen batteries.
- 2 The computer screen will show the driver  
 A where he is on a road map.  
 B how to drive the car.  
 C how fast he can go.
- 3 The computer will also be able to show him  
 A how to reach his destination.  
 B how much time his journey will take.  
 C what the weather is like at his destination.
- 4 The driver will be able to avoid  
 A serious accidents.  
 B traffic jams.  
 C being late for work.
- 5 Parking will be easier because the computer will  
 A show the driver how much space there is.  
 B let the car park itself.  
 C steer the car for the driver.
- 6 The ultra violet headlights will  
 A improve visibility by 75%.  
 B be better than daylight.  
 C improve visibility by 50%.

## Writing (Project)

Write about the cars of the future. Cut pictures from the Photo File Section at the back of the book to use with your project.

# UNIT 21



## Lead-in

- 1** • Look at the pictures. Do you know which film they come from? What kind of film is it?  
• Do you recognise any of the characters? Which are the heroes and which are the villains? Think of some typical film heroes or heroines. What are the good things they do?
- 2** Read the words below which describe the *Star Wars* trilogy. Listen to the tape and match the words from column A with the words from column B.

A

- 1 thrilling
- 2 fantastic
- 3 classic
- 4 amazing
- 5 gigantic
- 6 convincing

B

- a tale
- b alien landscapes
- c space adventure
- d fighting robots
- e sound
- f space battles

## A Modern Myth

### Reading

- 3** Read the text and answer the following questions.

To **celebrate** twenty years of *Star Wars*, director George Lucas has finally released the film as he originally **intended** it to be. He has always said that the trilogy — which includes *Star Wars*, *The Empire Strikes Back* and *The Return of the Jedi* — was never as good as he had wanted. After years of watching these films on video, you can **experience** this thrilling space adventure again in the cinema and with fantastic sound.

The trilogy is a classic tale of the fight between good and **evil**. However, instead of happening on earth, the **action takes place** "...a long time ago in a **galaxy** far, far away." It involves not only humans but all sorts of frightening, and sometimes amusing, robots and **alien creatures**. The heroes of the trilogy are Luke Skywalker, Han Solo and Princess Leia, who work together to fight Darth Vader, the evil **leader** who wants to **take over the universe**.

Excellent performances are given by stars Harrison Ford, Carrie Fisher, Alec Guinness and Mark Hamill, but the special effects play a bigger role than any of the actors. There are amazing space **battles** and gigantic, fighting robots with laser **weapons**. You'll certainly enjoy the incredible **chases** on floating motorbikes. You will also be fascinated by some of the strangest creatures you've ever seen in completely convincing alien landscapes.

George Lucas says: "When I made the original *Star Wars*, I was very interested in creating a modern myth. Greek mythology, or mythology from any country, often takes place in an unknown area ... and the only area we have now which is like that is **outer space**." With this fantastic trilogy, Lucas has certainly succeeded in creating a myth that will never be forgotten. Even if you have seen the **original** films, you should definitely not miss the **chance** to experience the *Star Wars* trilogy as Lucas really wanted it to be.

- 1 Where and when is the story set?
- 2 Who is the director?
- 3 Who stars in the films?
- 4 What is the story about?
- 5 Who are the heroes?
- 6 Is the trilogy recommended? Why?

## Vocabulary Practice

- 4** Try to explain the words in bold in Ex. 3, then use any three and make sentences.
- 5** Match the numbers with the letters.

|              |                                       |
|--------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 incredible | a includes                            |
| 2 released   | b amazing                             |
| 3 trilogy    | c certainly                           |
| 4 involves   | d put into cinemas for the first time |
| 5 excellent  | e part                                |
| 6 role       | f very good                           |
| 7 convincing | g three linked stories                |
| 8 definitely | h believable                          |

### Phrasal verbs

- 6** Fill in the correct particle.

**take over:** to take control of sth

**take after:** to look like

**take up:** to begin sth new (a hobby, sport, etc.)

**take off:** (of aeroplanes) to leave the ground

- 1 John has decided to **take** ..... tennis.
- 2 The plane will be **taking** ..... in ten minutes.
- 3 Rachel really **takes** ..... her grandmother.
- 4 A large firm has **taken** ..... our company.

- 1 Home Alone
- 2 Raiders of the Lost Ark
- 3 Love Story
- 4 The Young Sherlock Holmes
- 5 Star Trek
- 6 Friday the 13th
- 7 The Lion King

- a science fiction film
- b cartoon
- c adventure film
- d detective film
- e romance
- f horror film
- g comedy

- 8** Listen to the tape and tick the expressions the woman uses to talk about the programmes she likes and doesn't like. Then use the expressions in the table to tell your partner about the types of TV programmes you like or dislike, giving reasons.

|                   |   |   |
|-------------------|---|---|
| Soap Operas       | <input type="checkbox"/> I like them.                   | <input type="checkbox"/> I don't like them.                 |
| Quiz Shows        | <input type="checkbox"/> I love them.                   | <input type="checkbox"/> I can't stand them.                |
| The News          | <input type="checkbox"/> I think it's brilliant.        | <input type="checkbox"/> I don't think much of it.          |
| Horror Films      | <input type="checkbox"/> absolutely fascinating         | <input type="checkbox"/> absolutely disgusting              |
| Documentaries     | <input type="checkbox"/> I'm really interested in them. | <input type="checkbox"/> I'm not really interested in them. |
| Dating Shows      | <input type="checkbox"/> They're great.                 | <input type="checkbox"/> They're terrible.                  |
| Sports Programmes | <input type="checkbox"/> my idea of fun                 | <input type="checkbox"/> not my idea of fun                 |

- 9** Look at the pictures below and say what types of films they are taken from. In pairs, talk about them as in the example. Use the adjectives in the list.

amusing, shocking, exciting, boring, humorous, moving, scary, disgusting

- e.g. A: Do you like westerns?  
B: Yes, I do. I think they're exciting./No, I don't. I find them boring.



### Follow-up

- Read the text on p. 92 again and make notes under the following headings: **title – type of film – where/when film is set – plot – characters**. Then, using your notes, tell your class about the trilogy.

### Language Development

- 7** Match the film titles to the types of films. What is your favourite type of film? Why?

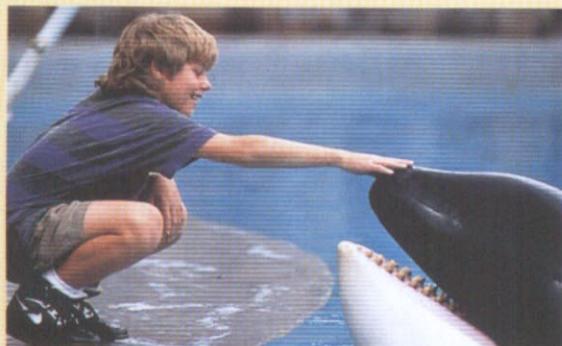
Respond to these statements as in the example.

- 1 I haven't seen *Mars Attacks*. e.g. *Neither/Nor have I*.
- 2 I really enjoyed last night's film. ....
- 3 I'm going to watch *Blind Date* tonight. ....
- 4 I will never watch a horror film again. ....
- 5 I love quiz shows. ....

## Writing (a film review)

**18** Read the following film review and fill in the gaps with verbs from the list. What tenses do we normally use when we write a film review? Finally, answer questions 1 to 9.

decides, become, plays, is filled, finds out, teach, is set, develops, meets



*Free Willy*, directed by Simon Wincer, is a fascinating and moving adventure. It 1) ..... on the west coast of North America. The film is about the relationship between a boy and a whale, called Willy. Jason James Richter 2) ..... Jesse, a young street child who 3) ..... the meaning of love and friendship.

Jesse first 4) ..... Willy in the sea park where the whale is kept. They 5) ..... good friends as they have both been separated from their families. As the story 6) ..... Jesse becomes so fond of Willy that he 7) ..... to try and free him.

All the actors, especially Lori Petty and Michael Madsen, are excellent. The film 8) ..... with suspense and emotion. The scenes involving Jesse and Willy 9) ..... us how close animals and human beings can be to each other.

This is a wonderful film for the whole family. Don't miss it as it will change the way you see life and relationships forever.

- 1 What is the title of the film?
- 2 Who is the director of the film?
- 3 What type of film is it?
- 4 Where is the film set?
- 5 Who are the main characters?
- 6 What is the plot?
- 7 Who stars in the film?
- 8 What comments are made about the film?
- 9 Is the film recommended or not?

**19** Read the table, then listen to the tape and tick (✓) the correct boxes.

### 1 Name of film

Spiderman  Batman Returns

### 2 Stars

Michael Douglas  Michael Keaton

### 3 Type

adventure  comedy

### 4 Director

Tim Burton  Richard Burton

### 5 Set in

real city  imaginary city

### 6 Theme

hero fights villains  hero escapes death

### 7 Acting

bad  brilliant

### 8 Plot

complicated  boring

### 9 Costumes/Special Effects

nothing special  out of this world

### 10 Recommendation

waste of time  not to be missed

**20** Using the plan below, write a review either for *Batman Returns* or any other film you have seen.

### Plan

#### INTRODUCTION

Para 1: title of the film, director, type of film, place it is set, main character(s), what the story is about

#### MAIN BODY

Para 2: main points of the plot

Para 3: comments about the acting, plot, sound effects, etc.

#### CONCLUSION

Para 4: recommendation

## Words of Wisdom

Read the sentences. What do they mean?

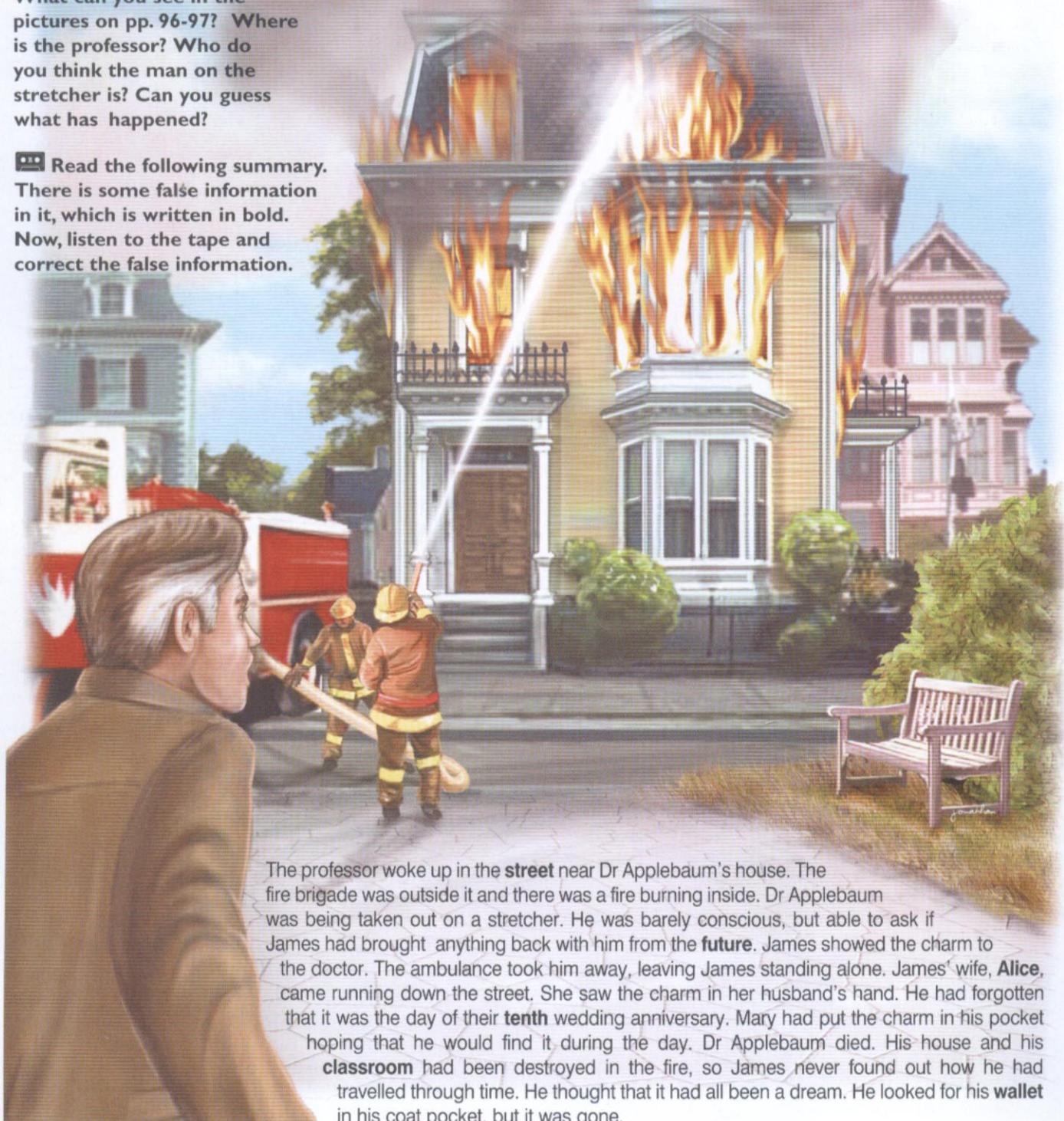
- You can't judge a book by its cover.
- Silence is golden.
- All's well that ends well.

# The Return

## Lead-in

1 What can you see in the pictures on pp. 96-97? Where is the professor? Who do you think the man on the stretcher is? Can you guess what has happened?

2 Read the following summary. There is some false information in it, which is written in bold. Now, listen to the tape and correct the false information.

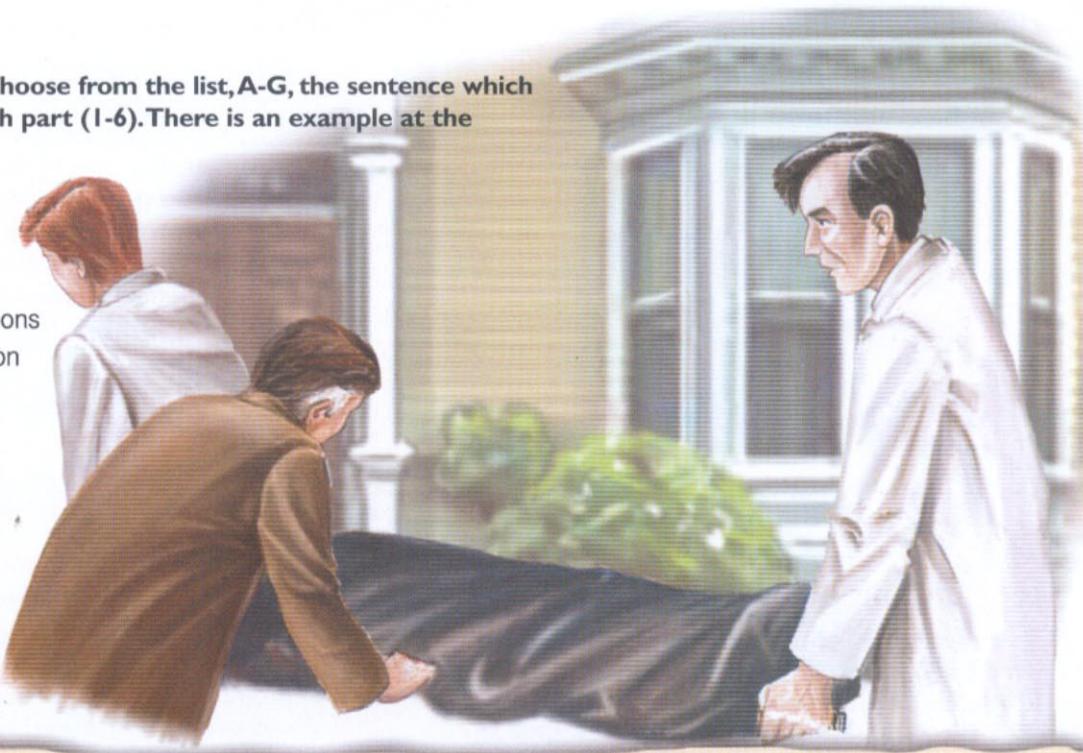


The professor woke up in the **street** near Dr Applebaum's house. The fire brigade was outside it and there was a fire burning inside. Dr Applebaum was being taken out on a stretcher. He was barely conscious, but able to ask if James had brought anything back with him from the **future**. James showed the charm to the doctor. The ambulance took him away, leaving James standing alone. James' wife, **Alice**, came running down the street. She saw the charm in her husband's hand. He had forgotten that it was the day of their **tenth** wedding anniversary. Mary had put the charm in his pocket hoping that he would find it during the day. Dr Applebaum died. His house and his **classroom** had been destroyed in the fire, so James never found out how he had travelled through time. He thought that it had all been a dream. He looked for his **wallet** in his coat pocket, but it was gone.

## Reading

- 3** Read the text, then choose from the list, A-G, the sentence which best summarises each part (1-6). There is an example at the beginning (0).

- A A Gift for James
- B Unanswered Questions
- C Waking up in London
- D A Fantastic Dream?
- E Happy Anniversary
- F A Reunion with Dr Applebaum
- G Mary Finds James



**0** **C**

The professor woke up in the park near Dr Applebaum's house. He still didn't know where he was or what year it was. He heard a **fire alarm** and saw a **fire engine** drive past him. The streets and the cars looked **familiar**. He was back in London. "Could I finally be home?" he asked himself.

**1**

He walked towards Dr Applebaum's house, but his excitement soon turned to fear. The **fire brigade** was outside the house, and there was a huge **blazing fire** burning inside. Dr Applebaum was being taken out on a **stretcher**. The doctor was **barely conscious** but he was able to ask if James had brought anything back with him from the past. James suddenly remembered the **charm** given to him by Ula. He took it out of his pocket and showed it to the doctor, who smiled **weakly** and then lost consciousness. The ambulance took him away, leaving James standing alone, holding the charm.

**2**

As he stood watching the doctor's house burn, James' wife, Mary, came running down the street. She threw her arms around him and told him how **worried** she had been about him when he hadn't come home after his **lecture**. Then she had thought he might be at Dr Applebaum's house, which was on fire. She was afraid something had happened to him.

**3**

As Mary stood back, she saw the charm in her husband's hand

and smiled. James **glanced** at it and said that a lot had happened to him that day. He thought of telling her the **whole** story but then decided that it would be better to wait until they got home. Mary put her arms round his shoulders, kissed him and said, "Happy **anniversary**, darling." James' face **reddened**; he had forgotten that it was the day of their twentieth wedding anniversary.

**4**

As they walked home, Mary told him that she had found the charm in an antique shop. The **saleswoman** there had told her it was an **authentic** Viking **artifact**, and, as she knew how much her husband loved the history of the Vikings, she had bought it. She explained that she had put it in his pocket hoping that he would find it during the day. James smiled and told her it was the perfect anniversary present, but quietly he wondered, "What about Ula?"

**5**

Dr Applebaum died. His house and his **laboratory** had been destroyed in the fire, so James never found out exactly how he had travelled through time, or if, **in fact**, he had. He began to think that it had all been just a dream. The places, he thought he had visited, were all places whose history he had studied. Perhaps it was all in his **mind**.

**6**

But how had he got to the park? Why had the doctor asked him if he'd brought anything back? Suddenly, he remembered his notebook. He looked for it in his coat pocket, but it was gone.

## Vocabulary Practice

- 4** Look at the words in bold in Ex. 3 and try to explain them, then choose any three and make sentences.
- 5** Fill in the correct words from the list below. Use the words only once.

to look, antique, to lose, blazing, wedding, to be, fire, threw, authentic

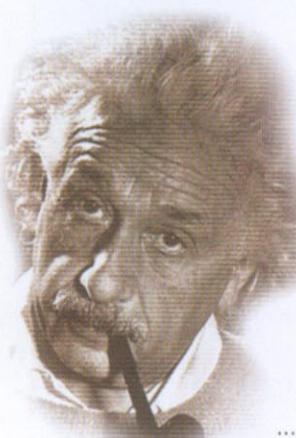
- |                                 |                          |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 ..... brigade                 | 5 a(n) ..... anniversary |
| 2 a(n) ..... fire               | 6 a(n) ..... shop        |
| 3 ..... consciousness           | 7 a(n) ..... artifact    |
| 4 she ..... her arms around him | 8 ..... in one's mind    |
|                                 | 9 ..... familiar         |

## Speaking

- Close your books and tell the class the summary of this episode.
- Did you enjoy the story about Professor Kearns' time travels? Would you have given it a different ending? If so, what would your ending be?
- Which episode was your favourite/least favourite? Why?

## Language Development

- 6** Fill in each gap with only one word.



Albert Einstein 1) ..... born in Germany in 1879. As a boy, he thought school was boring. At the age of fifteen, he left school without any qualifications. However, a 2) ..... years later he continued with his studies in Switzerland and graduated in 1900. Over the next few years, he did a 3) ..... of research in mathematics and physics. He wrote articles for scientific magazines 4) ..... his discoveries, which changed man's view of the universe. In 1921, he won the Nobel Prize for Physics and became one of 5) ..... most respected physicists in the world. In 1939, he left Germany and settled in America, 6) ..... he did research at the Institute for Advanced Studies. His research 7) ..... theories were later used to develop the atomic and hydrogen bombs. Einstein died 8) ..... 1955 in the United States.

## Words often confused

- 7** Underline the correct word.
- "Hold/Catch my hand and don't be afraid," he said to me.
  - The police held/caught the thieves late last night.
  - I quickly stared/glanced at my watch while waiting for Sue.
  - Bob was speaking very loudly in the library, making everyone stare/glance at him.
  - I can't believe Jake ate the all/whole pizza!
  - All/whole of the students went to the museum yesterday.
  - Everyone laughed/smiled loudly when I told a funny joke.
  - "Laugh/Smile, please!" the photographer said.

## Grammar in Use

### CAUSATIVE FORM (have something done)

- 8** Mary Kearns (James' wife) is organising a party for their wedding anniversary. Look at her list of preparations. Which sentences suggest that Mary herself is going to do something? Which sentences suggest that someone else is going to do something for Mary?

- Mary is going to have the floors polished.
- Mary is going to make a special cake.
- Mary is going to have James' suit cleaned.
- Mary is going to send out the invitations.



Study these sentences and say how the causative is formed.

Someone will repair my car. → I **will have** my car repaired.  
 Someone cut my hair. → I **had** my hair cut.  
 Someone has typed my report. → I **have had** my report typed.  
 Someone is making a cake for me. → I'm **having** a cake made.

- 9** Mrs Johnson is a rich woman. She has a lot of things done for her. Look at the notes and make sentences as in the example.  
 e.g. She **has** her clothes **made by** Luciano.

- clothes/make (by Luciano)
- house/clean (by the maids)
- car/wash (by the chauffeur)
- shopping/deliver (by the supermarket)
- letters/type (by the secretary)
- meals/cook (by the chef)

- 10** Read the list of preparations for the surprise anniversary party Mary Kearns is going to have.

Listen to the tape and tick which things are done by Mary and which by somebody else. Then talk about the things Mary asked somebody else to do as in the example:

e.g. *Mary had the house cleaned.*

| party preparations   | Mary | somebody else |
|----------------------|------|---------------|
| clean/house          |      |               |
| polish/floors        |      |               |
| make/cake            |      |               |
| clean/James' suit    |      |               |
| put/flowers in vases |      |               |
| set/table            |      |               |
| prepare/food         |      |               |
| film/party           |      |               |

- 11** First, look at these examples, then rewrite the sentences in the causative form.

My hair needs cutting. →

**I must have my hair cut.**

The windows were cleaned. →

**She had the windows cleaned.**

He will ask someone to mend the roof. →

**He will have the roof mended.**

- 1 Sue asked someone to paint the living room.
- 2 Bob will ask someone to take a photo of him.
- 3 Marcy's eyes need testing.
- 4 Helen's car is being serviced at the moment.
- 5 Tom's jeans need shortening.
- 6 Fiona's flat has been decorated.

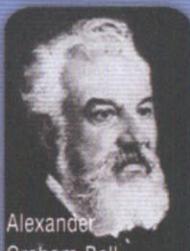
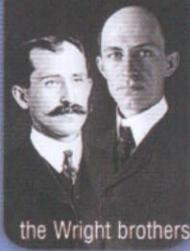
- 12** Look at the list below and say who does these things: a member of your family or somebody else?
- e.g. *We have the car serviced by a mechanic.*

service the car  
repair taps  
clean the house  
paint the walls

cut the grass  
wash the car  
water the plants  
examine the dog

## Writing (Project)

- 13** Listen to the tape and fill in the missing information. First talk then write your project about these inventors and their inventions. Use pictures from the Photo File Section at the back of the book to use with your project.

| INVENTOR(S)   | INVENTION  | DATE  | PLACE   | NOTES  |
|---|------------|-------|---------|--|
| <br>Galileo                | telescope  | ..... | Italy   | - his largest telescope was 120cm long<br>- he used it to study the ..... and Mars   |
| <br>Alexander Graham Bell | .....      | ..... | USA     | - telephones first used in US cities<br>- by 1887, more than ..... phones in USA   |
| <br>Thomas Edison        | light bulb | ..... | USA     | - Edison also invented the .....   |
| <br>Karl Benz            | automobile | ..... | Germany | - first car had only ..... wheels, a steel frame and went ..... kph<br>- by 1888 Benz had 50 workers building the 3-wheeled cars |
| <br>the Wright brothers  | aeroplane  | 1903  | USA     | - first plane flew ..... feet in ..... seconds<br>- Orville was the first person to fly an aeroplane                             |

# Module Self-Assessment 4 (Units 19 - 22)

## 1 Choose the correct item.

- 1 The ..... of smoking can be very harmful.  
A genes B effects C moths D views
- 2 He ..... the money into my bank account.  
A transferred B created C prevented D destroyed
- 3 The recent bombing caused ..... concern.  
A convincing B worldwide C presumed D usable
- 4 Some people claim that he has been kidnapped by a(n) ..... spaceship.  
A nearby B alien C outer D circular
- 5 He walked to the ..... of the cliff and looked down.  
A passage B walkway C edge D space
- 6 The hot sun ..... the snow.  
A refilled B sucked C rose D melted
- 7 ET is a(n) ..... from outer space.  
A empire B galaxy C universe D creature
- 8 Thousands of soldiers died in the ..... of World War II.  
A battles B weapons C tales D actions
- 9 His face looks .....; I'm sure I've seen him before.  
A conscious B authentic C familiar D blazing
- 10 The class' yearly ..... is going to take place in July.  
A lecture B anniversary C reunion D artifact

(10 marks)

## 2 Fill in the correct word from the list:

barely, suggested, reddened, floated, laboratory

- 1 The scientist carried out the experiment in his .....
- 2 Her face ..... as the stranger kept looking at her.
- 3 The hot-air balloon ..... across the sky.
- 4 I ..... had enough time to catch the bus.
- 5 She ..... going out for dinner instead of watching TV.

(5 marks)

## 3 Fill in the correct word from the list:

home, secret, video, force, fire, blazing, antique, authentic

- |                |                        |
|----------------|------------------------|
| 1 ..... fire   | 5 the ..... of the air |
| 2 ..... screen | 6 ..... passages       |
| 3 ..... shop   | 7 ..... brigade        |
| 4 ..... town   | 8 ..... artifacts      |

(8 marks)

## 4 Fill in the correct particle:

after, over, up, off

- 1 The plane **took** ..... after a one-hour delay.
- 2 He will **take** ..... the company after his father retires.
- 3 She decided to **take** ..... knitting in her free time.
- 4 He **takes** ..... his father; they look very much alike!

(4 marks)

## 5 Fill in the correct word from the list:

slice, loaf, can, jar, tube, bar, glass, bottle, pot, packet

- |                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 a ..... of cake       | 6 a ..... of milk     |
| 2 a ..... of water      | 7 a ..... of jam      |
| 3 a ..... of soda       | 8 a ..... of biscuits |
| 4 a ..... of chocolate  | 9 a ..... of bread    |
| 5 a ..... of toothpaste | 10 a ..... of yoghurt |

## 6 Fill in how much or how many.

(10 marks)

- 1 ..... apples do you need to make an apple pie?
- 2 ..... sugar do you like in your tea?
- 3 Can you tell me ..... milk I need to use?
- 4 He asked ..... steaks he should put on the barbecue.

## 7 Underline the correct item.

(4 marks)

- 1 Sheila sat **besides** / **beside** me at the cinema.
- 2 Prices in this supermarket are very **tall/high**.
- 3 The police have already **caught** / **held** the robber.
- 4 They stayed in and watched TV for the **all** / **whole** evening.
- 5 She **laughed** / **smiled** at us and said hello.

(5 marks)



## 8 Fill in: some, any, no, much, many.

Jenny: Well, Paul, the fridge and the cupboard are almost empty. We need to go shopping.

Paul: Right. It's my turn this week, isn't it? Let's see. What do we need?

Jenny: First of all there's 1) ..... coffee at all. We need 2) ..... of that. Oh, and we need 3) ..... flour if we want to make that cake.

Paul: Are there 4) ..... eggs left, Jenny?

Jenny: I'm afraid not. Let's get 5) ..... eggs and 6) ..... milk.

Paul: How 7) ..... eggs?

Jenny: Four.

Paul: And how 8) ..... flour do you think I should get?

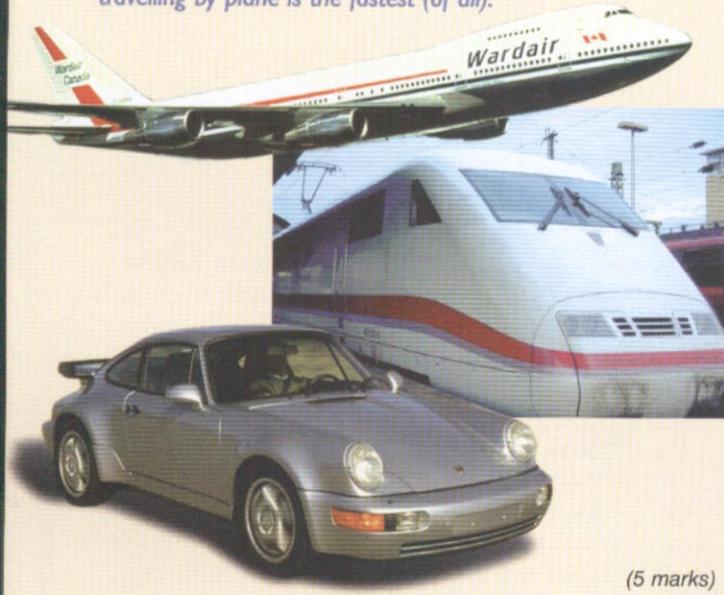
Jenny: About two pounds.

(8 marks)

**9** Look at the pictures and the list of adjectives and compare the three means of transport as in the example:

fast, expensive, comfortable, exciting, economical, safe

e.g. Travelling by express train is faster than travelling by car, but travelling by plane is the fastest (of all).



**10** Complete the sentences using the words in bold. Use two to five words.

- 1 Perhaps she was ill.  
**been** She ..... ill.
- 2 I'm sure they are leaving tomorrow.  
**must** They ..... tomorrow.
- 3 Perhaps John took the book.  
**might** John ..... the book.
- 4 I'm sure she hasn't typed the letters yet.  
**have** She ..... the letters yet.
- 5 I'm sure she is at the office now.  
**be** She ..... at the office now.

(5 marks)

**11** Fill in the correct participle of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 The clown's performance was ..... (**fascinate**).
- 2 We felt ..... (**exhaust**) after swimming for so many hours.
- 3 The play was ..... (**amuse**). Everybody enjoyed it.
- 4 The film was so ..... (**bore**) that I fell asleep halfway through it.
- 5 Sharon was very ..... (**depress**) when her pet cat ran away.

(5 marks)

**12** Rewrite the sentences in the causative form.

- 1 Susan's house needs cleaning.
- 2 Tim asked the mechanic to repair his bike.
- 3 My flat is being painted at the moment.
- 4 Sharon has asked Mrs Brown to make a cake.
- 5 Henry will ask someone to weed the garden.

(5 marks)

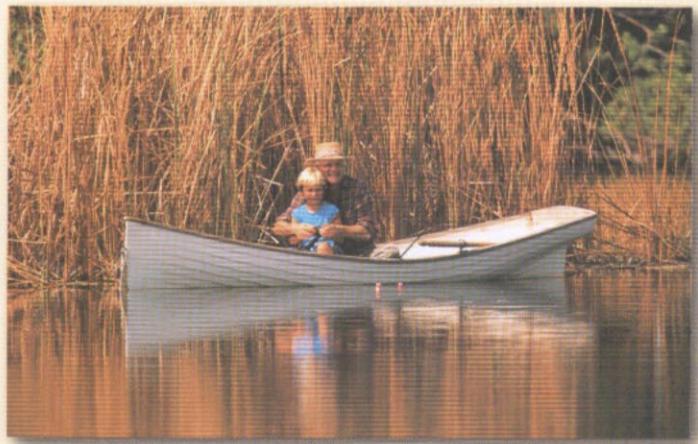
**13** Respond to these statements using *so*, *neither/nor*.

- 1 I've never seen Star Wars. ....
- 2 I don't like dating shows on TV. ....
- 3 I am going to redecorate my kitchen. ....
- 4 I went to the football game last night. ....
- 5 I won't go shopping tomorrow. ....

(5 marks)

**14** Complete the following sentences using:

*must, can't, may/might/could*



- 1 They ..... be on holiday.
- 2 They ..... be waiting for hours for fish to bite.
- 3 They ..... be in a city.
- 4 They ..... be in the countryside.
- 5 They ..... be feeling miserable.
- 6 They ..... have caught lots of fish.

(6 marks)

**15** Fill in the correct tense of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Tom is in the living room. He ..... (**still/paint**) it but he ..... (**already/finish**) with the kitchen.
- 2 She ..... (**travel**) by bus for years before she ..... (**decide**) to buy her own car.
- 3 A lot of changes ..... (**be**) made to our daily lives, by the year 2050.
- 4 After Julie ..... (**feed**) the dog, she went to bed.
- 5 How long ago ..... (**you/meet**) Jonathan?

(5 marks)

## Writing

**16** Answer the questions:

- a) What information do we write in the first and last paragraphs in a letter of complaint?
- b) How do we link our complaints?
- c) In a film review, what do we write in the first paragraph?
- d) In which paragraph do we (not) recommend the film?
- e) What do we include in the main body of a film review?

(10 marks)

TOTAL: 100 marks

# Grammar Reference

## UNIT 1

### PRESENT SIMPLE - PRESENT CONTINUOUS

We use the **Present Simple** for:

- facts and permanent states. e.g. *Georgia lives in Boston.*
- truths or laws of nature. e.g. *The temperature here falls below zero in the winter.*
- habits and routines (with always, usually, etc). e.g. *He usually gets up at 10 o'clock.*
- timetables/programmes (with a future meaning). e.g. *The train for Manchester leaves at 11.45 on Sunday.*
- feelings and emotions. e.g. *I love vanilla ice-cream.*

**Time expressions** used with Present Simple: **every day/ week/month/year, usually, sometimes, always, never, often, on Monday, in the evening/morning, etc**

We use the **Present Continuous** (to be + verb -ing) for:

- temporary situations. e.g. *I am painting the house this week.*
- actions happening now but not necessarily at the moment of speaking. e.g. *Sue is reading a book about animals.*
- fixed arrangements in the near future. e.g. *I am going to my doctor this afternoon.*

**Time expressions** used with Present Continuous: **now, at the moment, at present, nowadays, today, this month, this week, tonight, always, still, etc**

Verbs that are normally not used in the continuous tenses.

- verbs of the senses:** hear, see, smell, taste, sound, feel, seem, appear, look (= seem), etc. e.g. *The soup tastes salty.*
- verbs expressing feelings and emotions:** love, like, desire, prefer, dislike, detest, hate, enjoy, want, etc. e.g. *I want to go to the cinema tonight.*
- other verbs such as:** agree, believe, suppose, understand, forget, know, remember, think, belong, own, possess, have, want, need, etc. e.g. *I always forget your phone number.*

Some of the above verbs can be used in the continuous tenses. Note, however, the difference in meaning:

- THINK** – *I think you work too hard.* (=believe)  
– *What are you thinking about? I am thinking* about whether I should go to university.  
(=am considering)
- SEE** – *I see his point but I don't agree with him.*  
(=understand)  
– *The president is seeing the company's directors tomorrow morning.* (=is meeting)
- HAVE** – *He has two cars.* (=owns, possesses)  
– *I'm having breakfast.* (=am eating)  
– *I'm having a shower.* (=am taking)

- SMELL** – *It smells awful in here.* (=it has the smell of)  
– *Why are you smelling the cheese?* Should we throw it away? (=are you checking its smell?)
- TASTE** – *The spaghetti sauce tastes delicious.* (=it has a wonderful taste)  
– *I am tasting the rice to see if it's ready.* (=am testing its flavour)

## UNIT 2

### RELATIVE PRONOUNS

- We use the relative pronouns **who/that** for people.
- We use the relative pronouns **which/that** for objects and animals.
- We use the relative pronoun **whose** for people to show possession.

| Main Clause                  | Relative Pronoun | Relative Clause              |
|------------------------------|------------------|------------------------------|
| a Tom is a doctor            | who              | treats sick people.          |
| b An encyclopaedia is a book | which/that       | contains useful information. |
| c A dolphin is a mammal      | which/that       | lives in the sea.            |
| d That's the boy             | whose            | bicycle was stolen.          |

**Adverbs of frequency:**

always, frequently, often, once, twice, sometimes, usually, ever, hardly ever, never, rarely, etc.

Adverbs of frequency are normally placed before the main verb. e.g. *I usually travel by bus.* He **hardly ever** eats meat. However, adverbs of frequency are placed **after** the verb to be and **after** auxiliary verbs. e.g. *She is sometimes late for work.* Have you **ever** visited Disneyland?

## UNIT 3

### PAST SIMPLE - PAST CONTINUOUS

We use **Past Simple** (verb + ed or irregular past form) for:

- an action which started and finished in the past at a stated time. e.g. *I watched a science fiction film on TV last night.*  
*I met my friends for lunch last Monday.*
- past actions which happened one immediately after the other. e.g. *He got up, had breakfast and then left for his office.*

**Time expressions** used with Past Simple: **yesterday, last week/month, (how long) ago, then, just/when, in 1991, etc.**

We use **Past Continuous** (**was/were + verb -ing**) for:

- a past action in progress interrupted by another past action. The longer action is in the Past Continuous, the shorter action is in the Past Simple. e.g. *I was cooking dinner when the phone rang.*
- two or more simultaneous past actions of certain duration. e.g. *I was riding my bicycle while my sister was playing in the sandbox.*
- background description to events in a story. e.g. As she **was running** in the marathon, the crowds **were cheering** enthusiastically.

**NOTE:** To avoid repetition, when there are two past continuous forms in the same sentence, use just the -ing participle. e.g. *He was cleaning the windows and he was listening to the radio.* → *He was cleaning the windows, listening to the radio.*

**Time expressions** used with Past Continuous: **while, when, as, the moment that, etc.**

We use the **Present Perfect** (**have + past participle**) for:

- recent actions when the time is not mentioned or is not definite. e.g. *I've washed the clothes. We have redecorated the sitting-room.*
- personal experiences or changes. e.g. *Sue has dyed her hair red.*
- recently completed actions. e.g. *Tom has just finished typing the letters.*

## PRESENT PERFECT - PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

We use the **Present Perfect Continuous** (**have + been + verb -ing**) for:

- actions which began in the past and are still continuing up to the present. e.g. *I have been writing letters for four hours. She has been working for this company since 1987.*
- past actions of certain duration that have visible results or effects in the present. e.g. *It has been raining for hours, that's why the ground is wet. The children have been playing all afternoon, that's why they are tired.*

**Time expressions** used with Present Perfect and Present Perfect Continuous: **just, ever, never, already, yet (negative and interrogative sentences), always, how long, so far, recently, since, today, this week/month, etc.**

Note how the following words are used:

- **Ago** (=back in time from now) is used with Past Simple. e.g. *Sue arrived an hour ago.*
- **Since** (=from a starting point in the past) is used with Present Perfect and Present Perfect Continuous. e.g. *I've been waiting for you since 8 o'clock.*

- **For** (=over a period of time) is used with Present Perfect and Present Perfect Continuous. e.g. *I've been waiting for you for three hours.*
- **Already** is used with Present Perfect in statements and questions (to show surprise). e.g. *I've already done the housework. Have you already paid the bill? That was quick!*
- **Yet** is used with Present Perfect in questions and negations. e.g. *Have you seen the new James Bond film yet? He hasn't finished with his exams yet.*

## UNIT 4

### THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

The is used before:

- nouns which are unique (*the moon, the Tower of London*)
- names of cinemas (*The Odeon*), hotels (*The Hilton*), theatres (*The Theatre Royal*), museums (*The Museum of Modern Art*), newspapers/magazines (*The European*) (but: *Time*), ships (*The QE2*), institutions (*The Royal Academy of Art*), galleries (*The National Gallery*)
- names of rivers (*the Thames*), seas (*the North Sea*), groups of islands/states (*the Orkney Islands, the USA*), mountain ranges (*the Alps*), deserts (*the Sahara Desert*), oceans (*the Atlantic*), canals (*the Suez Canal*) and names or nouns with "of" (*the Chamber of Horrors, the Valley of Death*) **Note:** the equator, the Arctic/Antarctic, the South of France, the South/West/North/East
- musical instruments, dances (*the flute, the samba*)
- names of families (*the Browns*), nationalities ending in -sh, -ch or -ese (*the Welsh, the Dutch, the Chinese, etc.*). Other plural nationalities are used with or without "the" [*(the) South Africans, (the) Americans, etc.*]
- titles (*the President, the Prince of Wales, the Queen*). "The" is omitted before titles with proper names (*Queen Elizabeth II*)
- adjectives used as plural nouns (*the blind, the elderly, the rich, the poor, etc.*) and the superlative degree of adjectives/adverbs. e.g. *He's the most intelligent one here.*
- Note: "most" used as a determiner followed by a noun, does not take "the". e.g. *Most students failed the exams.* but: *The most interesting lecture was the one on endangered species.*
- the words: beach, cinema, city, coast, country(side), earth, ground, jungle, radio, pub, sea(side), sky, station, shop, theatre, village, weather, world, etc. but not before "man" (= people) e.g. *We went to the cinema last night.* Note: "the" is optional with seasons.
- morning, afternoon, evening, night e.g. *I'll come round in the morning.* (but: at night, at noon, at midnight, by day/night, at 5 o'clock, etc.)
- historical reference/events (*the French Revolution, the Second World War*) (but: *World War II*)
- only, last, first (used as adjectives). e.g. *Alex is the first to come and the last to leave.*

# Grammar Reference

The is omitted before:

- proper nouns (*Paolo, Italy*)
- names of sports, games, activities, days, months, holidays, colours, drinks, meals and languages (not followed by the word "language") e.g. *I love polo. Can you speak Spanish? but: The Chinese language is fascinating.*
- names of countries (*France*), (but: *the Netherlands, the Sudan, the Hague, the Vatican*). cities (*Vancouver*), streets (*Bond Street*), (but: *the High Street, the Strand, the Mall, the A11, the M4 motorway*) squares (*George Square*), bridges (*Tower Bridge*) (but: *the Bridge of Sighs, the Forth Bridge, the Severn Bridge, the Golden Gate Bridge*) parks (*Central Park*), stations (*King's Cross Station*), individual mountains (*Mount Everest*), islands (*Malta*), lakes (*Lake Ontario*), continents (*Asia*)
- possessive adjectives e.g. *That is my car.*
- two-word names whose first word is the name of a person or a place (*Glasgow Airport, Edinburgh Castle*) (but: *The White House*, because the first word "White" is not the name of a person or a place)
- pubs, restaurants, shops, banks and hotels which have the name of their founder and end in -s or -s's (*Tom's Café, Harrods, Baring's Bank*) (but: *the White Horse* (pub) because "White Horse" is not the name of the founder)
- bed, church, college, court, hospital, prison, school, university when we refer to the purpose for which they exist e.g. *He goes to church every Sunday. (but: We have to be at the church at two o'clock to see the Vicar. Work (= place of work) never takes "the". e.g. I have to go to work now.*
- the words home, father/mother when we talk about our own home/parents e.g. *Mum is home now.*
- means of transport: by bus/by car/by train/by plane, etc. (but: *in the car, on the bus/train*, etc. e.g. *She came by bus. but: She was on the bus when the accident happened.*)
- We say: flu/the flu, measles/the measles, mumps/the mumps (but: *He's got pneumonia.*)

## SUCH - SO ... THAT

- such a/an are used before countable nouns in the singular. e.g. *It was such a nice dress that I decided to buy it.*
- such is used before uncountable nouns or countable nouns in the plural. e.g. *It was such bad weather that we stayed in. They were such friendly people that we all felt sorry to see them go.*
- so is used before an adjective which is not followed by a noun. e.g. *The dress was so beautiful that I decided to buy it.*

## UNIT 5

### PAST SIMPLE - PAST CONTINUOUS

see Unit 3 p. 102

## DIRECT AND REPORTED SPEECH

- We use direct speech to give the exact words someone said, and we use quotation marks [ " "] at the beginning and end of the actual words. e.g. *"I am tired," he said.*
- We use reported speech to give the exact meaning of what someone said, but not the exact words. We do not use quotation marks in reported speech. e.g. *He said that he was tired.*

## UNIT 6

### PAST PERFECT - PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

We use the Past Perfect (had + past participle) for:

- a past action which happened before another action or before a stated past time. e.g. *By the end of the week he had painted the whole house. After they had finished their homework, Tom took the children to the playground.*

Time expressions used with Past Perfect: for, since, already, after, just, never, yet, before, by, by the time, etc.

We use the Past Perfect Continuous (had been + verb -ing) for:

- actions continuing over a period up to a certain time in the past. e.g. *He had been watching TV for hours before his friends arrived.*
- past actions of certain duration which had visible results in the past. e.g. *Their shoes were full of mud because they had been playing football.*

Time expressions used with Past Perfect Continuous: for, since, how long

## OBLIGATION/PROHIBITION/ABSENCE OF NECESSITY

We use must (=have to) to express obligation. e.g. *You must study hard or you'll fail your test.*

We use mustn't (=aren't allowed to) to express prohibition. e.g. *You mustn't tell lies.*

We use needn't (=don't have to, it's not necessary) to express absence of necessity. e.g. *You needn't wake up early tomorrow. It's Sunday.*

\* See pp. 113, 114 Unit 19 for formation of adjectives.

## UNIT 7

### PAST CONTINUOUS - PAST PERFECT - PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

See Unit 3 (Past Continuous) and Unit 6 (Past Perfect - Past Perfect Continuous).

## UNIT 8

### WILL - BE GOING TO - PRESENT CONTINUOUS

We use **Future Simple** (**will + bare infinitive**) for:

- decisions taken at the moment of speaking (on-the-spot decisions). e.g. *I'm starving. I think I'll make a sandwich.*
- hopes, fears, threats, offers, promises, warnings, predictions, requests, comments, etc. especially with the following verbs: **expect, hope, believe, I'm sure, I'm afraid**, etc. e.g. *I'm sure he will win the first prize.*
- actions or predictions which may or may not happen in the future. e.g. *We will probably buy a new car.*

We use **be going to** for:

- planned actions or intentions. e.g. *I'm going to repaint the kitchen next month.*

We use **Present Continuous** for:

- fixed arrangements in the near future. e.g. *I am seeing my dentist tomorrow evening.*

**Note:** After conjunctions of time such as **after, as, as soon as, before, till/until, when, whenever, while, by the time**, etc., we do **not** use a future form or a conditional tense. e.g. *When she arrives she will tell us all about the concert.* However, we can use **when + will** if **when** is used as a question word. e.g. *When will he be back?*

### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES - TYPE 1

#### if + present simple, will/may/can + bare infinitive

We use 1st type conditional sentences, for actions that are likely to happen in the present or the future. e.g. *If we wake up early, we will catch the 8 o'clock train. You may borrow the car if you promise to be careful.*

**Note:** With 1st type conditional sentences, we can use **unless** + affirmative verb (= if + negative). e.g. *You will miss the bus unless you wake up early* (= if you don't wake up).

## UNIT 9

### REPORTED SPEECH

#### Say - Tell

**Say** is used in direct and reported speech. In reported speech, it is followed by a **that - clause**. e.g. *"I won't go to Japan," she said. She said that she wouldn't go to Japan.*

**Tell** is used in reported speech and has to be followed by a personal direct object (me, you, him, her, etc.) e.g. *"I won't go to Japan," she said to me. She told me (that) she wouldn't go to Japan.*

#### Expressions with SAY, TELL

**SAY** say good morning/evening, etc, say something, say one's prayers, say a few words, say so, say no more, say for certain, say for sure, etc.

**TELL** tell the truth, tell a lie, tell (sb) the time, tell sb one's name, tell a story, tell sb a secret, tell sb the way, tell one from another, tell sb's fortune, tell sb so, tell the difference, etc.

#### Reported Statements

- Reported statements are usually introduced with **say (that)** or **tell (that)**. e.g. *"I am learning Spanish," she said.* → *She said (that) she was learning Spanish.*
- Personal pronouns and possessive adjectives** change according to context. e.g. *"I met a lot of people at the party," he said.* → *He said that he had met a lot of people at the party.*

**Tenses change** in Reported Speech as follows:

- Present Simple** → **Past Simple** e.g. *"She makes clothes," he said.* → *He said (that) she made clothes.*
- Present Continuous** → **Past Continuous** e.g. *"She is making a cake," he said.* → *He said (that) she was making a cake.*
- Past Simple/Present Perfect** → **Past Perfect** e.g. *"She made/has made a cake," he said.* → *He said (that) she had made a cake.*
- Future Simple** → **would + bare infinitive** e.g. *"She'll make a cake," he said.* → *He said (that) she would make a cake.*

Past Perfect and Past Perfect Continuous do not change in Reported Speech. Past Simple changes to Past Perfect or remains the same. When the reported sentence contains a time clause, the tenses of the time clause do not change. e.g. *"I left when it was getting dark," he said.* → *He said (that) he left/had left when it was getting dark.*

**Tenses do not change** in Reported Speech when:

- the reporting verb (said, told, etc.) is in the Present, Future or Present Perfect. e.g. *"I've always enjoyed going for long walks on the beach," she says.* → *She says that she's always enjoyed going for long walks on the beach.*
- the speaker expresses general truths, permanent states or conditions e.g. *"February the 14th is Valentine's Day," he said.* → *He said that February the 14th is Valentine's Day.*
- the reported sentence deals with type 2/type 3 conditionals, wishes or unreal past e.g. *"OK boys, it's time you went to bed," Mother said to us.* → *Mother told us that it was time we went to bed.*

# Grammar Reference

- the speaker **is reporting something immediately after it was said** (up to date). e.g. "The water is very cold," he said. → He said that the water **is** very cold.

**Note:** If the speaker expresses something believed to be true, the tenses may change or remain the same. e.g. "Cycling **is** good exercise," he said. → He said cycling **is** good exercise.

- Time words** can change or remain the same depending on the time reference:

## Direct Speech

tonight, today, this week/month/year, now

yesterday, last night/week/month/year, tomorrow, next week/month/year

two days/months/years, etc. ago

## Reported Speech

- that night, that day, that week/month/year
- then, at the time, at once, immediately
- the day before, the previous night/week/month/year
- the following day/the day after, the following/next week/month/year
- two days/months/years, etc. before

e.g. "He **is leaving next week**," she said. → She said (that) he **was leaving the following week**. (out-of-date reporting)  
"I visited Pam **last week**," she said. → She said (that) she visited Pam **last week** (up-to-date reporting)

## Reported Questions

- Reported Questions are introduced with **ask, wonder, want to know**, etc. We use affirmative word order and the question mark becomes a full stop. Inverted commas are omitted.
- To report a question we use: a) **ask + question word** (who, where, which, when, how, etc.) when the direct question begins with a question word. e.g. "**How** can I ever thank you?" she asked. She asked **how** she could ever thank me. and b) **ask + if/whether** when the direct question begins with an auxiliary verb (can, do, have, etc.). e.g. "**Could** you tell me how to open the cupboard?" he asked. He asked **if I could** tell him how to open the cupboard.
- Tenses, personal pronouns, possessive adjectives, time words, etc. change as in statements. e.g. "When are **you having your party?**" → She wondered when I was having my party. "Can **you go to the supermarket for me?**" → She asked me if I could go to the supermarket for her.

## UNIT 10

### FUTURE CONTINUOUS - FUTURE PRESENT

We use **Future Continuous (will be + verb -ing)** for:

- actions in progress at a stated future time. e.g. We **will be sailing** off the south coast next week.
- actions which will be a routine in the future. e.g. I'll be **working** at the office on Saturday as usual.

We use **Future Perfect (will have + past participle)** for:

- actions that will have finished before a certain time in the future. e.g. She **will have completed** her studies by July.

**Note:** **by** or **not ... until/till** are used with Future Perfect. **until/till** are normally used with Future Perfect only in negative sentences. e.g. He **will have repaired** the car **by** next Monday. Jane **won't have learnt** how to speak French **until** August.

## LINKING WORDS

- We can use **also, furthermore, in addition, moreover, as well, what is more**, etc. to link similar ideas and/or add more information. e.g. Computers are extremely useful tools. **Moreover**, they save time and money.
- We can use **however, but, on the other hand, although, but**, etc. to link opposing ideas. e.g. Computers are extremely useful tools. **On the other hand**, they shouldn't replace humans.

## UNIT 11

### REPORTED COMMANDS/REQUESTS/ORDERS

- To report commands, requests and orders we use a **special introductory verb** (e.g. warn, order, ask, request, suggest, etc.) followed by a **to-infinitive**, an **-ing form** or a **that-clause** depending on the introductory verb.  
e.g. "Brush your teeth before you go to bed," said the dentist.  
→ The dentist **advised** me **to brush** my teeth before I go to bed.  
"Keep medicine out of children's reach," said the doctor.  
→ The doctor **warned** us **to keep** medicine out of children's reach.

**Note:** To report direct commands we usually use the imperative. e.g. "Stop talking," the teacher said. The teacher told us **to stop** talking. "Don't step on the grass," said the gardener. The gardener asked us **not to step** on the grass.

- To report negative commands and requests, we usually use **not +to-infinitive**.

e.g. "Don't go near the cliff, it's dangerous!" the guide said. The guide told us **not to go** near the cliff because it was dangerous.

### Introductory Verbs

| Introductory Verb                     | Direct Speech                                  | Reported Speech  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| • agree + <b>to -infinitive</b>       | "Yes, I'll type the letters."                  | <b>He agreed to type the letters.</b>                            |
| • offer                               | "Shall I make coffee?"                         | <b>He offered to make coffee.</b>                                |
| • promise                             | "Of course I'll write home every day."         | <b>He promised to write home every day.</b>                      |
| • refuse                              | "No, I won't go to the dentist."               | <b>He refused to go to the dentist.</b>                          |
| • threaten                            | "Give me all your money or I'll shoot."        | <b>He threatened to shoot if I didn't give him all my money.</b> |
| • advise + <b>sb + to -infinitive</b> | "You should see a doctor."                     | <b>He advised me to see a doctor.</b>                            |
| • ask                                 | "Could you do me a favour?"                    | <b>He asked me to do him a favour.</b>                           |
| • beg                                 | "Please, please mummy don't leave me alone!"   | <b>She begged her mother not to leave her alone.</b>             |
| • command                             | "Cease fire!"                                  | <b>He commanded the soldiers to cease fire.</b>                  |
| • invite                              | "Would you like to go to the concert with me?" | <b>She invited me to go to the concert with her.</b>             |
| • remind                              | "Don't forget to take your passport."          | <b>He reminded me to take my passport.</b>                       |
| • warn                                | "Don't touch the exhibits."                    | <b>He warned us not to touch the exhibits.</b>                   |

### Introductory Verbs

| Introductory Verb             | Direct Speech                            | Reported Speech  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| • admit + <b>gerund</b>       | "Yes, I lied to you."                    | <b>He admitted (to) lying/having lied to me.</b>                 |
| • accuse sb of                | "You broke the vase."                    | <b>She accused me of breaking/having broken the vase.</b>        |
| • apologise for               | "I'm sorry I forgot to call you."        | <b>He apologised for forgetting/having forgotten to call me.</b> |
| • complain to sb of           | "I have a terrible headache."            | <b>He complained to me of having a terrible headache.</b>        |
| • suggest                     | "Let's go to the beach."                 | <b>He suggested going to the beach.</b>                          |
| • deny                        | "I didn't call the police."              | <b>He denied calling/ having called the police.</b>              |
| • agree + <b>that -clause</b> | "Yes, it's a really beautiful painting." | <b>He agreed that it was a beautiful painting.</b>               |
| • complain                    | "You always arrive late."                | <b>He complained that I always arrived late.</b>                 |
| • deny                        | "I didn't steal the money."              | <b>He denied that he had stolen the money.</b>                   |
| • promise                     | "Of course I'll come back."              | <b>He promised that he would come back.</b>                      |
| • suggest                     | "You'd better quit smoking."             | <b>He suggested that I (should) quit smoking.</b>                |

- In conversations we use a mixture of statements, commands and questions. When we turn them into Reported speech, we use **and, as, adding that, and she/he added that, because, but, since, etc.**

Words or expressions such as **Oh!, Oh dear!, Well!**, etc. are omitted in Reported speech.

e.g. "Oh! This is a nice watch," he said.

"How much does it cost?" → He said (that) it was a nice watch **and** he asked how much it cost. ("Oh" is omitted, "**and**" is added.)

# Grammar Reference

## UNIT 12

### PASSIVE VOICE

- The passive voice is formed with the verb "to be" in the appropriate tense + the past participle of the main verb. Only transitive verbs (verbs which take an object) can be used in the passive. For example, **arrive** and **die** do not have a passive form.

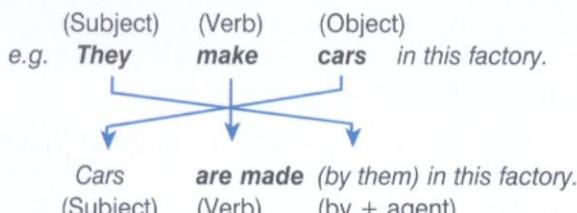
We use the passive:

- when the person who performs/does the action (the agent) is unknown, unimportant or obvious from the context. e.g. *My purse was stolen yesterday. (unknown agent)* *The shopping centre is cleaned every day. (unimportant agent)* *The robber was arrested (by the police). (obvious agent)*
- when we want to emphasise the agent. e.g. *Our holiday house was built by my great grandfather in 1897.*
- to make statements more formal or more polite. e.g. *The wedding reception will be held at 9 o'clock at the Town Hall.*
- when the action is more important than the agent (as, for example, in news reports, formal notices, instructions, headlines, advertisements etc) e.g. *More than twenty-five people were injured because of the earthquake. This book is a best seller; more than 1,000,000 copies have been sold.*

**Note:** Present Perfect Continuous, Future Continuous and Past Perfect Continuous are not normally used in the passive. In colloquial English, **get** is often used instead of **be** to express something happening by accident. e.g. *He got promoted and is now the department manager.*

#### Changing from Active to Passive

- The object of the active verb becomes the subject in the passive sentence.
- The active verb changes into a passive form.
- The subject of the active verb becomes the agent and is either introduced with "by" or is omitted.



- By + agent** is used to say who or what did the action. e.g. *The little boy was saved by the lifeguard.*

- With + instrument/material** is used to say what the agent used, or after past participles such as **coloured, crowded, filled, packed** etc. e.g. *The cake was made with butter, eggs and flour. The door was opened (by the burglar) with a knife.*
- By + agent** is omitted when the agent is unknown, unimportant, obvious from the context, or referred to by words such as **someone, people, I, you** etc. e.g. *These washing machines have been imported from the EC.*
- Verbs which take two objects (give, offer, etc.) can have two passive forms. e.g. *Someone gave her a bouquet of roses.* → a) ***She was given a bouquet of roses.*** → b) ***A bouquet of roses was given to her.***
- In passive voice, the preposition that follows a verb (accuse of, speak to etc.) or a phrasal verb (break into, turn on etc.) is placed immediately after the verb e.g. *They have pulled the old bridge down.* → ***The old bridge has been pulled down.***
- Let** changes to **be allowed to** in the passive. e.g. *Grandma let us go to the beach.* → ***We were allowed to go to the beach.***

#### Questions in the passive voice

| Tense/Verb form    | Active voice     | Passive voice        |
|--------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| Simple Present     | make/makes       | am/is/are made       |
| Present Continuous | am/is/are making | am/is/are being made |
| Simple Past        | made             | was made             |
| Past Continuous    | was/were making  | was/were being made  |
| Present Perfect    | have/has made    | have/has been made   |
| Past Perfect       | had made         | had been made        |
| Future             | will make        | will be made         |
| Conditional        | would make       | would be made        |
| Modals             | must make        | must be made         |

- For questions in the passive, we follow the same rules as for statements, keeping in mind that the verb is in the interrogative form. e.g. *Have they pulled down the old cinema?* → ***Has the old cinema been pulled down (by them)?***

When the question is a "who question" we **cannot** omit "by", because the agent is not known and we are asking the question in order to find out who this person is. e.g. *Who posted the letters? → Who were the letters posted by?* *Who repaired my bicycle? → Who was my bicycle repaired by?*

#### AS — LIKE

We use **like**

- with **nouns/pronouns/ -ing form** to express similarity e.g. *He works like a slave. (He isn't a slave.)*
- with **feel, look, smell, taste** e.g. *It looks like a submarine.*

We use **as**

- to say what somebody or something really is e.g. *She works as a production manager for a film company. (She is a production manager.)*

## UNIT 13

The passive form of modal verbs (e.g. can, could, may, might, must, etc.) is formed with the verb **to be** which takes the tense of the main verb in the active voice, and the **past participle** of the main verb. e.g. *He must send the parcels. The parcels must be sent. They couldn't repair the car. The car couldn't be repaired.*

\* see also Unit 12

## UNIT 14

### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES - TYPE 2

**if + past simple, would/could/might + bare infinitive** e.g. *If I dyed my hair black nobody would recognise me anymore.*

Type 2 conditional sentences refer to the present or future. The past tense in the if -clause expresses unreal things or things unlikely to happen. Type 2 conditional sentences can also be used to give advice.

- e.g. *If we had a car, we would drive to Paris. (But we don't have a car. Here, we refer to the present.)*  
*If someone tried to kidnap me, I would inform the police. (But I don't expect that anyone will try to kidnap me. Here, we refer to the future.)*  
*If I were you, I would call the doctor immediately. (Here, we are giving advice.)*

**Note:** We can use **were** instead of **was** in all persons.

### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES - TYPE 3

**if + past perfect, would/could/might + have + past participle** (perfect conditional) e.g. *If I had dyed my hair black, nobody would have recognised me.*

Type 3 conditional sentences refer to the past and describe situations that never happened. They are used to talk about imaginary situation contrary to the facts, in the past.

- e.g. *If I had known that you were coming, I would have met you at the station. (But I didn't know that you were coming, so I didn't meet you at the station).*

Type 3 conditional sentences are also used to express regrets or criticism.

- e.g. *If we had woken up earlier, we wouldn't have missed the plane.*  
*If you had followed my directions, you would have found the house.*

## WISHES

- **Wish + subject + past tense** is used to express wish/regret about a **present situation**.

e.g. *I wish I knew his phone number. (I'm sorry I don't know his phone number.)*  
*I wish I lived near the seaside. (I'm sorry I don't live near the seaside.)*  
*I wish I were a millionaire. (But I am not.)*

**Note:** We can use **were** instead of **was** in all persons.

- **Wish + subject + past perfect** is used to express regret about a **past situation** (something that happened or didn't happen in the past.)

e.g. *I wish I had called him sooner. (I'm sorry I didn't call him sooner.)*  
*I wish I hadn't behaved so rudely. (I'm sorry I behaved so rudely.)*

**Note:** **If only** can be used in exactly the same way. It has the same meaning as **wish** but is more dramatic or more emphatic.

e.g. *If only I knew his phone number!*  
*If only I had called him sooner!*

## UNIT 15

### THE INFINITIVE AND THE -ING FORM

We use the **to - infinitive**:

- to express purpose e.g. *She went to the bakery to buy some bread.*
- after **would love, would like, would prefer** e.g. *I'd love to go to Paris.*
- after certain adjectives: **glad, difficult, happy, sorry** etc. e.g. *We were glad to meet them again after so many years.*
- after certain verbs: **advise, agree, appear, decide, expect, hope, learn, manage, offer, promise, refuse, seem, teach, want,** etc. e.g. *She managed to catch the train on time. We promised to write home every day.*
- in the expressions: **to tell you the truth, to begin with, to be honest, to start with, to sum up,** etc. e.g. *To tell you the truth, I don't like vanilla ice-cream.*

We use the **infinitive without to**:

- after modal verbs: **can, could, may, might, will, would, must** etc. e.g. *I must see the doctor immediately. Can I open the window?*
- after **feel, hear, make, let** etc. e.g. *"I will let you go to the party if you promise to be back by 10.30" Mother said.*

# Grammar Reference

We use the -ing form:

- as a noun e.g. *Playing chess is very exciting.*
- after **love, like, dislike, hate, enjoy, prefer**, etc. e.g. *I hate cooking dinner. I enjoy working in the garden.*
- after prepositions e.g. *He left without taking his umbrella.*
- after certain verbs: **avoid, admit, fancy, finish, forgive, imagine, keep (=continue), mind (=object to), regret, suggest**, etc. e.g. *He suggested visiting the modern art museum. They kept dancing until the clock struck twelve.*
- after the expressions: **I'm busy, it's no use, it's (not) worth, what's the use of, can't help, can't stand, there's no point (in), look forward to, what about ...? how about ...?, etc.** e.g. *It's no use trying to repair that bicycle. We had a great time and we're looking forward to seeing you again soon.*

**Note:** certain verbs may be followed by either the to-infinitive or the -ing form. In this case, however, there is a change in meaning.

## • FORGET

forget + to-infinitive = not remember e.g. *I'm sorry I forgot to turn the lights off.*

forget + -ing form = forget a past event e.g. *I will never forget winning the first prize.*

## • REMEMBER

remember + to-infinitive = remember to do something e.g. *He remembered to turn off the gas.*

remember + -ing form = recall a past event e.g. *I don't remember visiting the zoo.*

## • TRY

try + to-infinitive = do one's best, attempt e.g. *The climbers tried to reach the mountain peak but they couldn't.*

try + -ing form = do something as an experiment e.g. *Why don't you try adding some tomato sauce? It might taste better.*

## • STOP

stop + to-infinitive = stop for a while in order to do something else. e.g. *The students stopped to have a break.*

stop + -ing form = finish, end e.g. *When the president came in everybody stopped talking.*

## • REGRET

regret + to-infinitive = be sorry e.g. *I regret to inform you that we cannot accept your application.*

regret + -ing form = have second thoughts about something that one has already done. e.g. *I regret talking to her so rudely.*

# UNIT 16

## QUESTION TAGS

- Question tags** are short questions added to an affirmative or negative statement. They are used to ask for confirmation or agreement.

### Intonation

When the speaker is quite sure that what he/she is saying is true, and is asking for confirmation, the question tag is said with a rising intonation. e.g. *He comes from Portugal, doesn't he?* When the speaker doesn't need information and just wants others to agree with what he/she is saying, the question tag is said with a falling intonation. e.g. *You didn't see him, did you?*

- Question tags are formed with an auxiliary verb and the appropriate personal pronoun. They take the same auxiliary as in the statement, if there is one, or they take **do/does** (Present Simple) or **did** (Past Simple). e.g. *You couldn't understand her, could you?*

*He lives in Oxford, doesn't he?  
She went to the ballet, didn't she?*

- After affirmative statements we use a negative interrogative tag. e.g. *They are clever, aren't they? She bought a new car, didn't she?*
- After negative statements we use an ordinary interrogative tag. e.g. *You haven't been to New York, have you? He isn't coming with us, is he?*

**Note:** Let's has the tag **shall we?** e.g. *Let's watch a film, shall we?*

**Let me/him etc** has the tag **will you/won't you?**  
e.g. *Let him help you, will you?*

**I have** (=possess) has the tag **haven't I?**  
e.g. *She has a pet, hasn't she?*

**I have** (used idiomatically) has the tag **don't I?**  
e.g. *He had dinner, didn't he?*

**This/That is** has the tag **isn't it?**  
e.g. *That's your car, isn't it?*

**I am** has the tag **aren't I?**  
e.g. *I am smart, aren't I?*

**Negative imperative** has the tag **will you?**  
e.g. *Don't disturb him, will you?*

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

| Singular | Plural     |
|----------|------------|
| myself   | ourselves  |
| yourself | yourselves |
| himself  | themselves |
| herself  |            |
| itself   |            |

Reflexive pronouns are used as objects of the verb when the action of the verb returns to the person who does it.

e.g. *I burned myself while I was ironing. "You're too young to start shaving yourself," said Dad to Tommy.*

## UNIT 17

### PLURALS

To form the plural of a noun, we usually add **-s** to the singular: cat → **cats**, day → **days**, chair → **chairs**

- Nouns ending in **-o**, **-ch**, **-sh**, **-ss**, or **-x** added **-es**: tomato → **tomatoes**, church → **churches**, brush → **brushes**, kiss → **kisses**, box → **boxes**

**BUT:** kilo → **kilos**  
kimono → **kimonos**  
photo → **photos**  
piano → **pianos**

- nouns ending in **consonant + -y** drop the **-y** and add **-ies**: baby → **babies**, country → **countries**, lady → **ladies**

- nouns ending in vowel + **-y** add **-s**: boy → **boys**, donkey → **donkeys**

- nouns ending in **-f** or **-fe** drop the **f** or **fe** and add **-ves**:  

|                       |                        |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| cow → <b>cows</b>     | life → <b>lives</b>    | shelf → <b>shelves</b> |
| half → <b>halves</b>  | loaf → <b>loaves</b>   | thief → <b>thieves</b> |
| knife → <b>knives</b> | self → <b>selves</b>   | wife → <b>wives</b>    |
| leaf → <b>leaves</b>  | sheaf → <b>sheaves</b> | wolf → <b>wolves</b>   |

**BUT:** hoof, scarf, wharf, add either **-s** or **-ves** in the plural:  
hoof → **hoofs/hooves**, scarf → **scarfs/scarves**

Other nouns ending in **-f** or **-fe** add **-s**:

cliff → **cliffs**, handkerchief → **handkerchiefs**, belief → **beliefs**, roof → **roofs**

- Irregular plurals:

|                         |                      |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| man → <b>men</b>        | mouse → <b>mice</b>  |
| woman → <b>women</b>    | tooth → <b>teeth</b> |
| child → <b>children</b> | ox → <b>oxen</b>     |
| foot → <b>feet</b>      | deer → <b>deer</b>   |
| goose → <b>geese</b>    | sheep → <b>sheep</b> |
| louse → <b>lice</b>     |                      |

- Certain nouns are always plural and take a plural verb:  
**clothes, police, trousers, pyjamas, binoculars, scales, scissors, spectacles, arms** (weapons), **damages** (compensation), **earnings, greens** (vegetables), **grounds, outskirts, savings, stairs, surroundings, valuables**, etc.

- Some nouns of Greek or Latin origin form their plurals according to the rules of Greek or Latin:

|                               |                           |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| crisis → <b>crises</b>        | datum → <b>data</b>       |
| basis → <b>bases</b>          | terminus → <b>termini</b> |
| phenomenon → <b>phenomena</b> | medium → <b>media</b>     |

- Compound nouns normally add **-s** to the last word:  
boyfriend → **boyfriends** (noun + noun)  
travel agent → **travel agents** (noun + noun)  
frying pan → **frying pans** (adjective + noun)

**BUT** they add **-s** to the first word, when the compound noun is composed of noun + preposition (+ noun):  
mother-in-law → **mothers-in-law**  
passer-by → **passers-by**

### CLAUSES OF REASON AND RESULT

- Clauses of reason are introduced by: **as**, **since** (=because), **because**, **for** (=because).

e.g. *They travelled by train because it was cheaper.  
We camped near the lake as it was safer.*

- When the clause of reason precedes the main clause, we separate the two clauses with a comma.  
e.g. *Since she isn't coming, we'll go to the party without her.*

- Reason can also be expressed with:  
**Because of/Due to + noun/-ing form**

e.g. *Due to the fog, all plane departures have been cancelled.*  
or with: **Due to the fact/Because of the fact + that - clause**

e.g. *Due to the fact that there was fog, all plane departures were cancelled.*

- Clauses of result are introduced by: **such + adjective + noun**

e.g. *It was such a boring lecture that we almost fell asleep.  
I've never met such interesting people before.*

### OR so + adjective/adverb

e.g. *The lecture was so boring that we almost fell asleep.  
She was running so quickly that she tripped and fell.*

### TOO — ENOUGH

|   |   |
|---|---|
| too + adjective/adverb<br>(negative meaning)    | He's <b>too tired</b> to go out.<br>(He's so tired that he <b>can't</b> go out)                   |
| adjective/adverb + enough<br>(positive meaning) | He's <b>tall enough</b> to reach the shelf.<br>(He's so tall that he <b>can</b> reach the shelf.) |

# Grammar Reference

**NOTE:** **enough** can be followed by nouns. e.g. *He's got enough money to buy a car.*

## ALL – WHOLE – BOTH – NEITHER – NONE

**All** refers to more than two people or things. It has a positive meaning and takes a verb in the plural. e.g. *All the students took part in the school performance. All of them worked very hard. They were all very satisfied.*

**Whole** (=complete) is used with singular countables. We always use **a, the, this, my** etc. + **whole + countables** *the whole day = all the day/all day* (**But: all the money not the whole money**)

**Both** refers to two people or things. It has a positive meaning and takes a verb in the plural. It is the opposite of **neither/not either**. e.g. *Sally and Laura are twelve. Both Sally and Laura are twelve. They are both twelve. Both of them are twelve.*

**None** refers to more than two people or things. It has a negative meaning and isn't followed by a noun. **None of** can be used with **nouns, his, them** etc. followed by a verb either in the singular or plural. It is the opposite of **all**. e.g. *Sally, Laura and Ann haven't been to Rome. None of them have/has been in Rome.*

**Neither** (= not one and not the other) is used before singular countables. They refer to two people or things. **Neither of** takes a verb either in the singular or plural. e.g. *Paul hasn't got any money. Tom hasn't got any money either. Neither of them have/has got any money.*

## UNIT 18

### PURPOSE - CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

Purpose can be expressed by:

- the infinitive alone e.g. *I'll call Mary to invite her to dinner. He went to Italy to study architecture. They built a reservation park to protect the animals.*

- so that + will/can/would/could

**Will** and **Can** are used when the main verb is in the Present Simple, Present Perfect or Future tense and have a present or future reference.

**Would** and **Could** are used when the main verb is in a past tense and have a past reference.

e.g. *I will go to Italy so that I can study architecture.*

*I have lit a candle so that we'll find our way out.*

*I went to Italy so that I could study architecture.*

*I lit a candle so that we would find our way out.*

## UNIT 19

### COUNTABLE –UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

- Countable nouns** are those that can be counted (one pen, two pens, etc).
- Uncountable nouns** are those that cannot be counted (paper, bread, etc). Uncountable nouns take a singular verb and are not used with a/an. These are:
  - mass nouns** (e.g. beer, blood, bread, butter, flour, air, etc.)
  - subjects of study** (e.g. physics, economics, chemistry, literature, etc.)
  - languages** (e.g. Chinese, French, Spanish, etc.)
  - sports** (e.g. basketball, hockey, darts, football, golf, etc.)
  - diseases** (e.g. chickenpox, measles, mumps, etc.)
  - natural phenomena** (e.g. sunlight, fog, gravity, hail, snow, etc.)
  - certain nouns** (e.g. accommodation, advice, anger, assistance, behaviour, business, chaos, countryside, courage, dirt, education, evidence, homework, information, intelligence, luck, music, news, peace, progress, seaside, shopping, traffic, trouble, truth, weather, etc.)
  - collective nouns** (e.g. baggage, crockery, cutlery, furniture, jewellery, luggage, machinery, money, rubbish, etc.)

Many uncountable nouns can be made countable: a piece of advice/cake/information/paper/news; a **glass/bottle** of beer/wine/water; a **jar** of jam; a **rasher** of bacon; a pint of beer; a **box/sheet** of paper; a **packet** of tea; a **slice/loaf** of bread; a **kilo** of meat; a **tube** of toothpaste; a **bar** of soap/chocolate; a **lump** of sugar; a **pair** of trousers; a **game** of soccer; a **can** of beans/soda, a **tin** of soup, a **bag/cup** of flour etc.

### Some - Any - No

| Affirmative |                  |           |           |
|-------------|------------------|-----------|-----------|
| Adjectives  | Pronouns         |           | Adverbs   |
| some        | people           | things    | places    |
|             | someone/somebody | something | somewhere |

| Interrogative |                |          |          |
|---------------|----------------|----------|----------|
| Adjectives    | Pronouns       |          | Adverbs  |
| any           | people         | things   | places   |
|               | anyone/anybody | anything | anywhere |

| Negative   |  |                          |                          |
|------------|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| Adjectives | Pronouns   |                          | Adverbs                  |
|            | people   | things                   | places                   |
| no/not any | no one/<br>not anyone/<br>nobody/<br>not anybody | nothing/<br>not anything | nowhere/<br>not anywhere |

- **Some** is used before countable or uncountable nouns. e.g. *I bought some apples. He asked for some advice.* **Some** and its compounds (someone, something, etc) are normally used in positive sentences. They can also be used in questions to make an offer, a request or when we expect a positive answer. e.g. *There's someone at the door. (positive) Would you like something to eat? (offer) Can I have something to drink? (request) Is there someone in the kitchen? (I expect there is.) but: Is there anyone in the kitchen? (I'm asking in general.)*
- **Any** is used before countable or uncountable nouns. e.g. *Are there any pears left? Is there any juice in the fridge?* **Any** and its compounds (anyone, anything, etc) are normally used in questions. e.g. *Is there anything I can do?* They can also be used in positive sentences meaning "It doesn't matter how/what/when/where/which/who". e.g. *You can take anybody with you.* **Any** and its compounds can be used after **if** in a positive sentence. e.g. *If you tell anyone, I'll be angry.*
- **No/not any** can be used before countable and uncountable nouns. e.g. *There are no cars on the street. There's no oxygen in space.* **No/not any** and their compounds (no one/not anyone, nothing/not anything, etc) are used in negations. e.g. *There's no one in the building. (= There isn't anyone in the building.)* **Any** and its compounds are used with negative words (hardly, never, without, seldom, rarely, etc.) e.g. *She seldom talks to anyone.* (not: *She seldom talks to no one.*)

## MUCH - MANY

- **much** is an adjective and is used before uncountable nouns. e.g. *We haven't much milk in the fridge.*
- **many** is an adjective and is used before countable nouns. e.g. *There aren't many oranges in the fridge.*

MUCH and MANY are usually used with negative verbs. With affirmative verbs, **many** is preceded by **a good/a great** and **much or many** by **so/as/too**.

e.g. *I have won a great many prizes. She eats too much bread. There were so many cars that we couldn't move.*

## COMPARATIVE - SUPERLATIVE DEGREE

We use the **comparative** to compare one person or thing with another. e.g. *She is taller than me.* We use the **superlative** to compare one person or thing with more than one of the same group. e.g. *She is the tallest in the team.* We often use **than** after a comparative. e.g. *He's faster than Jim.* We normally use **the** before a superlative. After superlatives, we use **in.** We can use **of** before plurals. e.g. *He is the fastest runner in the team. He is the fastest of his friends.*

**NOTE:** that clever, common, cruel, friendly, gentle, narrow, pleasant, polite, shallow, simple, stupid, quiet form their comparative and superlative forms with **-er/-est** or **more/most**. e.g. clever - cleverer - cleverest ALSO clever - **more clever - most clever**.

### Spelling

- One-syllable adjectives ending in a vowel + a consonant double the consonant. e.g. **big - bigger - biggest**
- Two-syllable adjectives ending in a consonant + **-y**, replace **-y** with **-ie**. e.g. **tidy - tidier - tidiest** (but: **grey - greyer - greyest**)

### Formation

- One-syllable adjectives add **-(e)r / -(e)st** to form their comparative and superlative forms. e.g. **tall - taller (than) - the tallest (of/in), close - closer (than) - the closest (of/in)**
- Two-syllable adjectives ending in **-ly, -y, -w** also add **-er / -est** e.g. **tiny - tinier (than) - the tiniest (of/in)**
- Adjectives of two or more syllables take **more/most** e.g. **creative - more creative (than) - the most creative (of/in)**
- Adverbs having the same form as their adjectives add **-er / -est** e.g. **hard - harder - the hardest**
- two-syllable or compound adverbs take **more/most** e.g. **efficiently - more efficiently - the most efficiently**

### Irregular Forms

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| good - better - best | many/a lot of - more - most               |
| bad - worse - worst  | little - less - least                     |
| much - more - most   | far - farther/further - farthest/furthest |

### Types of Comparisons

- **as ... (positive degree) ... as**  
e.g. *He is as tall as his brother.*
- **not so/as ... (positive degree) ... as**  
e.g. *She isn't as fast as Sally.*
- **prefer + -ing form / noun + to + -ing form/noun**  
e.g. *He prefers winter to summer.*

# Grammar Reference

- would prefer + to -inf + rather than + inf. without to e.g. *I'd prefer to watch TV rather than go out.*
- would rather + inf. without to + than + inf. without to e.g. *I'd rather go swimming than play tennis.*
- less ... (positive degree) ... than e.g. *I have less free time now than I had last week.*  
the least ... (positive degree) ... of/in e.g. *He is the least hard working of all.*

## UNIT 20

### MAKING DEDUCTIONS

| Forms of the infinitive       |                    |                   |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
|                               | Active             | Passive           |
| Present infinitive            | to do              | to be done        |
| Present continuous infinitive | to be doing        | —                 |
| Perfect infinitive            | to have done       | to have been done |
| Perfect continuous infinitive | to have been doing | —                 |

- We use **may/might/could + present infinitive** to express possibility about something that is true at the moment of speaking, or will happen in the future. e.g. *Tom may pass his driving test this time.* (*It is possible that/Perhaps he will pass his driving test.*)
- We use **may/might/could + present infinitive** to express possibility about something that happened in the past. e.g. *She looks miserable. She may have lost her job.* (*Perhaps she has lost her job.*) *Where was Janet yesterday? I don't know. She might have gone shopping.* (*Perhaps she went shopping.*)
- We use **could + perfect infinitive** to talk about something which was possible but didn't actually happen. e.g. *It's a miracle you are alive! You could have been killed.* (*Luckily, you weren't.*)
- We use **can't/couldn't + present infinitive** to talk about something that is logically impossible to be true. e.g. *She can't be a lifeguard. She hates swimming!* (*I'm sure she is not a lifeguard.*)
- We use **must + present infinitive** to talk about something that is logically possible to be true. e.g. *He must be very angry. He hasn't stopped shouting since he arrived.* (*I'm sure he is angry.*)  
**NOTE:** **can't**, in this case, is the opposite of **must**. e.g. *It can't be true! It must be a lie.* (*I'm sure it's not true! I'm sure it's a lie.*)
- We use **can't/couldn't + perfect infinitive** to make a negative deduction about something that happened in the past. e.g. *She can't have lost her way!* *After all, she grew*

- up in this area! (*I'm sure she hasn't lost her way.*)
- We use **must + perfect infinitive** to make a deduction or to talk about something very possible that happened in the past. e.g. *She must have missed the train as she's always on time.* (*I'm sure she has missed the train.*)

## UNIT 21

### PARTICIPLES

- Present participles (the infinitive of the verb + ing) describe what somebody or something is. e.g. *He is a very amusing person. The performance was fascinating.*
- Past participles (the infinitive of the verb +ed/d or the irregular past participle form) describe how someone feels. e.g. *We were amused by his jokes. We were fascinated by the performance.*

### EXPRESSING PREFERENCES

would rather = I'd prefer

- when the subject of **would rather** is also the subject of the following verb:

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| I'd rather | + Present bare infinitive<br>(present/future reference)<br>e.g. <i>She'd rather stay in than go out for dinner.</i> |
|            | + Perfect bare infinitive (past reference)<br>e.g. <i>He'd rather have gone to Boston than to Seattle.</i>          |

- when the subject of **would rather** is different from the subject of the following verb:

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| I'd rather | + Past Simple (present/future reference)<br>e.g. <i>I'd rather you did the washing-up tonight.</i> |
|            | + Past Perfect (past reference)<br>e.g. <i>I'd rather we had visited them yesterday.</i>           |

- **prefer + gerund/noun + to + gerund/noun** (general preference) e.g. *I prefer listening to the radio to watching TV. I prefer fish to meat.*
- **prefer + full infinitive + rather than + bare infinitive** (general preference) e.g. *She prefers to stay home rather than go out.*
- **would prefer + full infinitive + rather than + bare infinitive** (specific preference) e.g. *I would prefer to go sailing rather than go skiing.*
- **would rather + bare infinitive + than + bare infinitive** e.g. *I would rather visit the museum than go to the opera.*

## EXPRESSING POSITIVE OR NEGATIVE AGREEMENT

- We use **so** with a similar meaning to "also" to agree with a positive statement:

**so + auxiliary + verb + subject**

e.g. — I love Chinese food.

— So do I.

— I had a great time at the party last night.

— So did I.

- We use **neither** and **nor** with a similar meaning to "also not" to agree with a negative statement:

**neither/nor + auxiliary + subject**

e.g. — I don't like vanilla ice-cream.

— Neither do I.

— I won't go to the party because I'm tired.

— Nor will I.

## UNIT 22

### CAUSATIVE FORM

- We use **have + object + past participle** to say that we arrange for someone to do something for us.  
e.g. Tom hired a builder to build a shed. → Tom **had a shed built**. (He didn't do it himself - the builder did it.)
- The order of words (i.e. have + object + past participle) must not be changed because if it does, the meaning of the sentence will be changed. e.g. **He had his car repaired**. = He employed someone to repair his car. **but**: He had repaired his car = He (himself) repaired his car.
- The negative and interrogative of the present and past tenses are formed with **do**. e.g. I **have my house cleaned** every week. → **Do you have your house cleaned** every week? → **I don't have my house cleaned** every week.  
I **had my chimney swept**. → **Did you have your chimney swept?** → **I didn't have my chimney swept**.

#### Present Simple

He **cleans** his room. → He **has** his room cleaned.

#### Present Continuous

He **is cleaning** his room. → He **is having** his room cleaned.

#### Past Simple

He **cleaned** his room. → He **had** his room cleaned.

#### Past Continuous

He **was cleaning** his room. → He **was having** his room cleaned.

#### Future Simple

He **will clean** his room. → He **will have** his room cleaned.

#### Present Perfect

He **has cleaned** his room. → He **has had** his room cleaned.

#### Infinitive

He **must clean** his room. → He **must have** his room cleaned.

# Irregular Verbs

| Infinitive | Past             | Past Participle  | Infinitive  | Past            | Past Participle |
|------------|------------------|------------------|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| be         | was              | been             | lie         | lay             | lain            |
| bear       | bore             | born(e)          | light       | lit             | lit             |
| beat       | beat             | beaten           | lose        | lost            | lost            |
| become     | became           | become           | make        | made            | made            |
| begin      | began            | begun            | mean        | meant           | meant           |
| bite       | bit              | bitten           | meet        | met             | met             |
| blow       | blew             | blown            | pay         | paid            | paid            |
| break      | broke            | broken           | put         | put             | put             |
| bring      | brought          | brought          | read /ri:d/ | read /red/      | read /red/      |
| build      | built            | built            | ride        | rode            | ridden          |
| burn       | burnt (burned)   | burnt (burned)   | ring        | rang            | rung            |
| burst      | burst            | burst            | rise        | rose            | risen           |
| buy        | bought           | bought           | run         | ran             | run             |
| can        | could            | (been able to)   | say         | said            | said            |
| catch      | caught           | caught           | see         | saw             | seen            |
| choose     | chose            | chosen           | seek        | sought          | sought          |
| come       | came             | come             | sell        | sold            | sold            |
| cost       | cost             | cost             | send        | sent            | sent            |
| cut        | cut              | cut              | set         | set             | set             |
| deal       | dealt            | dealt            | sew         | sewed           | sewn (sewed)    |
| dig        | dug              | dug              | shake       | shook           | shaken          |
| do         | did              | done             | shine       | shone           | shone           |
| dream      | dreamt (dreamed) | dreamt (dreamed) | shoot       | shot            | shot            |
| drink      | drank            | drunk            | show        | showed          | shown           |
| drive      | drove            | driven           | shut        | shut            | shut            |
| eat        | ate              | eaten            | sing        | sang            | sung            |
| fall       | fell             | fallen           | sit         | sat             | sat             |
| feed       | fed              | fed              | sleep       | slept           | slept           |
| feel       | felt             | felt             | smell       | smelt (smelled) | smelt (smelled) |
| fight      | fought           | fought           | speak       | spoke           | spoken          |
| find       | found            | found            | spell       | spelt (spelled) | spelt (spelled) |
| flee       | fled             | fled             | spend       | spent           | spent           |
| fly        | flew             | flown            | split       | split           | split           |
| forbid     | forbade          | forbidden        | spread      | spread          | spread          |
| forget     | forgot           | forgotten        | spring      | sprang          | sprung          |
| forgive    | forgave          | forgiven         | stand       | stood           | stood           |
| freeze     | froze            | frozen           | steal       | stole           | stolen          |
| get        | got              | got              | stick       | stuck           | stuck           |
| give       | gave             | given            | sting       | stung           | stung           |
| go         | went             | gone             | stink       | stank (stunk)   | stunk           |
| grow       | grew             | grown            | strike      | struck          | struck          |
| hang       | hung (hanged)    | hung (hanged)    | swear       | swore           | sworn           |
| have       | had              | had              | sweep       | swept           | swept           |
| hear       | heard            | heard            | swim        | swam            | swum            |
| hide       | hid              | hidden           | take        | took            | taken           |
| hit        | hit              | hit              | teach       | taught          | taught          |
| hold       | held             | held             | tear        | tore            | torn            |
| hurt       | hurt             | hurt             | tell        | told            | told            |
| keep       | kept             | kept             | think       | thought         | thought         |
| know       | knew             | known            | throw       | threw           | thrown          |
| lay        | laid             | laid             | understand  | understood      | understood      |
| lead       | led              | led              | wake        | woke            | woken           |
| learn      | learnt (learned) | learnt (learned) | wear        | wore            | worn            |
| leave      | left             | left             | win         | won             | won             |
| lend       | lent             | lent             | write       | wrote           | written         |
| let        | let              | let              |             |                 |                 |

# Word List

## Unit 1

active  
activity  
aggressive  
ambitious  
arrogant  
art  
at present  
at times  
attention  
baseball cap  
Best wishes  
bossy  
bow tie  
bright  
build  
can't stand  
care about sb/sth  
caring  
casual  
character  
cooperative  
curly  
decisive  
denim jacket  
determined  
director  
disorganised  
don't mind  
dungarees  
early mornings  
easy-going  
energetic  
evening dress  
express  
fair hair  
favourite  
feelings  
female  
fit  
flight  
forgetful  
formal  
fortune teller  
full lips  
fur coat  
future arrangement  
gain  
generous  
get upset

go with  
golden  
gym  
helpful  
high-heeled shoes  
hooked  
horoscope  
horror film  
however  
I hope so  
imaginative  
immature  
include  
intelligent  
jacket  
join  
kind  
lazy  
leading role  
leggings  
lips with down-turning corners  
loyal  
male  
match  
mean  
middle-aged  
neatly  
on the other hand  
opinion  
outgoing  
oval  
overalls  
participate (in)  
perfect  
permanent state  
personality  
physical appearance  
plump  
polo-neck  
popularity  
positive  
quick-tempered  
raider  
rather  
reception  
reserved  
responsible  
rude  
scarf  
scene

scheduled action  
science fiction story  
secretive  
self-centred  
self-confident  
selfish  
sensitive  
shape  
share  
shiny  
shoot a scene  
shoulder-length  
shy  
silky  
similar qualities  
slim  
stubborn  
subject  
successful  
suit (n)  
suit (v)  
T-shirt  
take a look at sb/sth  
temporary situation  
tend (to)  
thought  
tidy  
tie  
timetable  
tracksuit  
trainers  
treasure  
trip  
trust  
try on  
unreliable  
upper  
upturned  
V-neck jumper  
waistcoat  
wavy  
wedding  
well-built  
wide  
words of wisdom

## Unit 2

abroad  
act  
actually

add  
adverbs of frequency  
Alsatian  
appearance  
architecture  
article  
as well as  
auxiliary verb  
bark  
battle  
be willing to  
belief  
bore  
bright star  
carpet  
carry  
characteristic  
close to  
collection  
comment  
company  
complexion  
complicated  
conclusion  
countryside  
create  
creative  
currently  
daily  
danger  
destroy  
down-to-earth  
environmentally-friendly  
everyday  
excite  
expect  
extremely  
fall in love with sb  
famous for  
fashion show  
fattening  
feature  
figure  
find out  
form  
free time  
gardening  
get sb into trouble  
glamour  
handsome  
hardly any

## Word List

|                                |                    |                      |                   |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| hardly ever                    | sit in the shadows | enjoyable            | scuba-dive        |
| harm                           | slender            | especially           | service           |
| heading                        | sort               | excellent            | shower            |
| huge                           | speak one's mind   | excited              | sights            |
| important                      | star (in)          | exotic               | sightseeing       |
| in the public eye              | start a family     | experience           | slip              |
| information                    | straight           | explore              | slope             |
| interest                       | strong view        | extract              | snail             |
| interview                      | stunning           | fabulous             | snowman           |
| introduction                   | succeed in         | fascinating          | stadium           |
| justification                  | success            | ferry                | statement         |
| lawyer                         | suitcase           | filthy               | sticky weather    |
| lead a (happy, busy, etc) life | talent             | fish curry           | stormy            |
| lifestyle                      | tanned             | fold                 | sunbathe          |
| look after                     | terror             | freezing             | sunshine          |
| look for                       | the crowds         | go on                | take pictures     |
| look forward to sth/doing sth  | the environment    | gorgeous             | take place        |
| look up                        | typical            | greetings            | tan               |
| looks                          | uncomfortable      | guest-house          | taste             |
| machine                        | underneath         | have fun             | temple            |
| main body                      | vacuum cleaner     | holiday resort       | terrible          |
| main verb                      | vampire            | horrible             | That sounds great |
| medal                          | wait for           | impression           | the early hours   |
| mermaid                        | wonder             | incredible           | town centre       |
| natural beauty                 | wrinkle            | interrupt            | traditional       |
| nature                         |                    | joyful               | twist one's ankle |
| occasionally                   |                    | light                | underline         |
| outstanding                    |                    | light up (lit - lit) | underwater        |
| overcome                       |                    | lightning            | uneasy            |
| patient                        |                    | local people         | unfortunately     |
| pay attention to               |                    | lousy                | unfriendly        |
| pleasure                       |                    | luckily              | unpack            |
| popular (with)                 |                    | magnificent          | visible result    |
| porter                         |                    | mango                | waltz             |
| possession                     |                    | map                  | wild animal       |
| pottery                        |                    | marvellous           |                   |
| private                        |                    | mention              |                   |
| rarely                         |                    | miserable            |                   |
| relative pronouns              |                    | moody                |                   |
| relaxed                        |                    | National Park        |                   |
| remain                         |                    | open-air             |                   |
| reporter                       |                    | organise             |                   |
| rest                           |                    | paella               |                   |
| reveal                         |                    | palace               |                   |
| romantic                       |                    | personal experience  |                   |
| routine                        |                    | persuade             |                   |
| sensible                       |                    | pineapple            |                   |
| show off                       |                    | pour with rain       |                   |
| shyness                        |                    | put on weight        |                   |
| side                           |                    | recent               |                   |
| sin                            |                    | refreshed            |                   |
| sincere                        |                    | rhino                |                   |
| sink                           |                    | sandy beach          |                   |
|                                |                    | scared (of sb/sth)   |                   |

### Unit 3

|                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| a bit                 | light                |
| accommodation         | light up (lit - lit) |
| amazing               | lightning            |
| ancient               | local people         |
| Archaeological Museum | lousy                |
| blow                  | luckily              |
| breeze                | magnificent          |
| bullfight             | mango                |
| cake                  | map                  |
| calm                  | marvellous           |
| camp-site             | mention              |
| Cathedral             | miserable            |
| cave                  | moody                |
| chase                 | National Park        |
| cheerful              | open-air             |
| concert               | organise             |
| cool                  | paella               |
| covered with          | palace               |
| crowded               | personal experience  |
| definite time         | persuade             |
| delicious             | pineapple            |
| delighted             | pour with rain       |
| depressed             | put on weight        |
| dessert               | recent               |
| directions            | refreshed            |
| disgusting            | rhino                |

### Unit 4

|                         |
|-------------------------|
| a short drive away from |
| appointment             |
| atmosphere              |
| attraction              |
| be surrounded by        |
| bridge                  |
| by chance               |
| cable car               |
| car exhaust fumes       |
| car park                |
| carry on                |
| century                 |
| certainly               |
| chalet                  |
| chemist's               |
| chirping                |

|   |   |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|
| coast<br>colourful<br>completely<br>corner<br>correct<br>crashing<br>creature<br>cuckoo clock<br>delight<br>delightful<br>department store<br>disappointed<br>dish<br>dry<br>entertainer<br>exciting<br>extremely<br>film<br>fireplace<br>flowing<br>forest<br>gentle<br>go past<br>go straight on<br>hairdresser's<br>have the holiday of a lifetime<br>have the time of one's life<br>hearing<br>hilly<br>honking<br>horn<br>I strongly advise you to<br>ice-cream parlour<br>in search of sb/sth<br>in terms of<br>in the near future<br>including<br>it is worth doing sth<br>jumper<br>lake<br>line<br>lively<br>local<br>mark<br>marvel<br>miss<br>mist<br>musician<br>mystery<br>natural surroundings<br>nearby<br>newsagent's<br>northern | Pacific Ocean<br>palm tree<br>paradise<br>peace<br>peaceful<br>perform<br>petrol<br>pick up<br>picturesque<br>post office<br>recently<br>recommend<br>refer to sb/sth<br>relaxing<br>roll<br>Roman baths<br>route<br>run after<br>run into sb<br>run out of<br>run over<br>rustling<br>salty<br>scenery<br>sense<br>shade<br>shake hands with sb<br>sight<br>skyscraper<br>smell<br>snorkelling<br>soil<br>southwestern<br>souvenir<br>stale<br>station<br>statue<br>steep<br>straw<br>stream<br>suitable for<br>sunset<br>suntan oil<br>tale<br>tasteless<br>theme park<br>tiny<br>turning<br>watersports<br>wave<br>wet<br>windsurfing<br>you can't miss it | <b>Unit 5</b><br>admire<br>aim at (sb/sth)<br>alien<br>along with<br>ambulance<br>annoyed<br>anxiously<br>appear<br>approach<br>as black as night<br>avoid<br>background description<br>based on<br>bay<br>be involved in<br>behaviour<br>bitterly cold<br>boom<br>bored<br>bother<br>branch<br>bubble<br>cage<br>cliff<br>cloudless<br>cover<br>cry<br>cut<br>dentist<br>desperately<br>dig<br>disc<br>doorbell<br>duration<br>edge<br>embarrassed<br>event<br>exam room<br>faint<br>fire<br>fist<br>flash of lightning<br>flashing lights<br>footsteps<br>fur<br>furious<br>gasp<br>gentle<br>glad<br>grab<br>grow wide<br>have a bath | his face went red<br>hiss<br>hold on to sb/sth<br>hole<br>horror<br>icy<br>in progress<br>jungle floor<br>justify<br>knee<br>land<br>lively<br>lose one's balance<br>lower<br>midnight<br>monster<br>moonless<br>narrow<br>nervous<br>notice<br>pale<br>path<br>pebbly<br>pine tree<br>pleased<br>pool<br>pour down<br>professor<br>python<br>rain heavily<br>raincoat<br>raindrop<br>raise<br>realise<br>related to<br>relief<br>repetition<br>rocky<br>rough<br>row<br>safe<br>sail<br>sails<br>scar<br>scent<br>scream<br>set the scene<br>shake<br>shape<br>shine<br>shiver<br>shocked<br>sigh<br>silently |
|---|---|--|--|

## Word List

silver  
 similar  
 siren  
 snowy  
 soaked to the skin  
 spaceship  
 stare (at)  
 stiff  
 strangely  
 stranger  
 street lamp  
 supper  
 surprised  
 sweaty  
 tap  
 tear  
 tear (tore - torn)  
 terrified  
 thrilled  
 thunder  
 title  
 tree-covered  
 tremble  
 turn (a)round  
 various  
 version  
 view  
 weakly  
 whisper  
 wide open  
 wind (wound - wound)

### Unit 6

absence of necessity  
 alligator  
 angry-looking  
 as a result  
 attack  
 back  
 be about to do sth  
 be fast asleep  
 beak  
 bend (bent - bent)  
 block  
 boring  
 bracelet  
 break through  
 bush  
 camera  
 certain  
 circle  
 circus  
 claw

climate  
 comparison  
 confused  
 continent  
 dangerous  
 degree  
 dinosaur  
 disappear  
 disturb  
 dive  
 do something wrong  
 dressed in  
 dust cloud  
 earth  
 echo  
 enormous  
 entertaining  
 entrance ticket  
 entry  
 everything went black  
 except  
 exhibit  
 experiment  
 fade away  
 feature  
 feed  
 feel (felt - felt)  
 finger  
 foot  
 for (quite) a long time  
 freeze (froze - frozen)  
 fun  
 funfair  
 giant  
 giraffe  
 gradually  
 ground  
 growling  
 grunting  
 guest  
 guidebook  
 habitat  
 harmless  
 have a headache  
 height  
 hide  
 hill  
 hippo  
 hit (hit - hit)  
 identify  
 in fear  
 in groups  
 jaw  
 keep a record of

land  
 light  
 lighter  
 lizard  
 mean (meant - meant)  
 meat-eating  
 medium  
 memory  
 meteorite  
 million  
 missing  
 move around  
 museum guide  
 neck  
 notebook  
 obligation  
 open area  
 out of the way  
 pick  
 pick sb/sth up  
 pile  
 pocket  
 poisonous  
 practise  
 prehistoric  
 prohibition  
 pterodactyl  
 push  
 reach our destination  
 rise up (rose - risen)  
 roar  
 save up  
 seal  
 shadow  
 sharp  
 sign  
 size  
 snake  
 space  
 spear  
 spider  
 start a fire  
 starve  
 stripe  
 summary  
 surround  
 swoop down  
 sword  
 synonym  
 tail  
 take a bite out of sth  
 team  
 theory  
 thrilling

time period  
 touch  
 type  
 unclear  
 university  
 valley  
 valuables  
 vehicle  
 viciousness  
 visible  
 voice  
 weak  
 work on  
 yell

### Unit 7

afterwards  
 alone  
 angrily  
 asleep  
 be injured  
 beggar  
 blast  
 board  
 break down  
 break into  
 break out  
 break up  
 briefcase  
 burglar  
 by force  
 car engine  
 cheek  
 chill  
 china  
 chronological order  
 cockpit door  
 consequence  
 cool  
 country lane  
 crack  
 crackling  
 crash of thunder  
 creak  
 develop  
 different-coloured  
 downstairs  
 draw the curtains  
 dry  
 enter  
 entitled  
 exclaim  
 explain

|   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|
| fellow officer<br>field<br>fill (with)<br>flash<br>fly open<br>follow<br>garage<br>ghostly<br>glance<br>guest<br>hall<br>handcuff<br>have a seat<br>hijack<br>howl<br>husband<br>ignore<br>in amazement<br>in disbelief<br>in pieces<br>introduce oneself<br>Is something wrong?<br>jewellery<br>kindness<br>lead (led - led)<br>light up (lit - lit)<br>lucky<br>meal<br>move<br>narrate<br>nod<br>note<br>offer<br>pack<br>paddle<br>passenger<br>plot<br>police officer<br>politely<br>pouring rain<br>prepare<br>put on<br>put sb up<br>radio<br>reach<br>reaction<br>reason<br>relieved<br>remind sb of sb/sth<br>remove from<br>reply<br>return<br>roar<br>run down | sand<br>sequence of events<br>settle (in)<br>shark<br>show<br>sleepy<br>space<br>speaker<br>speed away<br>spine<br>squeeze<br>staircase<br>stick<br>sticky<br>storm<br>suggest<br>suppose<br>take a break<br>take a sip<br>teapot<br>to one's relief<br>towards<br>tray<br>turn on<br>up ahead in the distance<br>waitress<br>war<br>warm<br>weapon<br>weep<br>welcome (adj)<br>welcome (n)<br>What's next?<br>wrinkled | chance<br>charity<br>child-minding centre<br>cross out<br>cruise<br>cut out<br>diary<br>diet pill<br>employee<br>encouragement<br>exam centre<br>experience<br>factory<br>fatty<br>further<br>get better<br>give sb a call<br>go on a diet<br>haircut<br>hard times<br>hope<br>in this way<br>intention<br>invitation<br>join<br>let me know<br>lie (lay - lain)<br>make (new) friends<br>make fun of sb/sth<br>meeting<br>miss<br>miss out on<br>move<br>offer<br>office manager<br>officially<br>on-the-spot decision<br>part-time job<br>pass<br>pensioner<br>phase<br>pose<br>position<br>positive<br>post<br>prediction<br>prepare for<br>present<br>president<br>price<br>prize<br>promotion<br>reach a certain age<br>recommendation | refuse<br>request<br>retake an exam<br>retire<br>revise<br>ring<br>run into<br>schoolmate<br>seek<br>seize<br>set<br>situation<br>solution<br>suggest<br>summer camp<br>sympathy<br>tease<br>traffic<br>turn off<br>useful<br>useless<br>whether<br>wish sb good luck<br>working mother<br>workplace<br>worried about |
| <b>Unit 8</b>   |   |   |   |
| ability<br>accent<br>accept<br>advice<br>afford<br>alternatively<br>apply for<br>as soon as<br>at least<br>attend<br>attitude<br>babysit<br>be of (some) help<br>bite<br>brilliant<br>busy<br>cease   | ability<br>accent<br>accept<br>advice<br>afford<br>alternatively<br>apply for<br>as soon as<br>at least<br>attend<br>attitude<br>babysit<br>be of (some) help<br>bite<br>brilliant<br>busy<br>cease   | ability<br>accent<br>accept<br>advice<br>afford<br>alternatively<br>apply for<br>as soon as<br>at least<br>attend<br>attitude<br>babysit<br>be of (some) help<br>bite<br>brilliant<br>busy<br>cease   | ability<br>accent<br>accept<br>advice<br>afford<br>alternatively<br>apply for<br>as soon as<br>at least<br>attend<br>attitude<br>babysit<br>be of (some) help<br>bite<br>brilliant<br>busy<br>cease   |

## Unit 9

|   |
|---|
| accuse sb of sth/doing sth<br>ambition<br>among<br>an army of men<br>and so it was done<br>anxious<br>BC<br>be defeated<br>bill<br>block of stone<br>blow<br>bring sb in<br>brush the dust off<br>casually<br>chariot<br>charm<br>cheer<br>civil war<br>commit (murder, a crime, etc)<br>control<br>crowd<br>curly-haired<br>disaster |
|---|

# Word List

|   |   |   |  |
|---|---|---|--|
| emperor<br>end in<br>enemy<br>friendship<br>gather around (sb/sth)<br>general<br>geometrically<br>guard<br>hieroglyphics<br>horn<br>I happen to know<br>in charge of<br>in wonder<br>incredible<br>instead of<br>intelligence<br>introductory verb<br>kingdom<br>land (n)<br>land (v)<br>let go of sb/sth<br>lie<br>look like (sb/sth)<br>lose one's mind<br>made of<br>march<br>military uniform<br>murder<br>old-fashioned<br>patient<br>patiently<br>place<br>point at (sb/sth)<br>pyramid<br>questionnaire<br>quotation marks<br>react<br>relationship<br>ride in sth (rode - ridden)<br>robe<br>royal<br>rush (off)<br>sandal<br>scream<br>signal<br>spare sb's life<br>speak out against<br>spin (spun - spun)<br>stand before sb<br>step<br>supernatural force<br>take control of<br>the Seven Wonders of<br>the Ancient World | throne<br>throw (threw - thrown)<br>ton<br>traitor<br>travel through time<br>walk the dog<br>weigh<br>work against<br><br><b>Unit 10</b><br>a thing of the past<br>absolutely<br>according to<br>appropriate<br>as far as sb/sth is concerned<br>asthma<br>author<br>average<br>be up to sb<br>benefit<br>bright<br>calculation<br>cancer<br>carriage<br>carry out<br>citizen<br>city centre<br>clearly<br>come across<br>come back<br>come into<br>come round<br>communicate (by/with)<br>contact<br>cream<br>creative<br>cure<br>cut sth down<br>damage<br>decrease<br>demonstrate<br>discover<br>disease<br>dramatically<br>e-mail<br>education<br>electric<br>enthusiasm<br>essential<br>expand<br>fear<br>for the better | foresee<br>form of energy<br>furthermore<br>genetic engineering<br>get rid of<br>get worse<br>government<br>harmful<br>healthy<br>housework<br>housing<br>human<br>improve<br>in addition<br>in my opinion<br>in my view<br>increasingly<br>invent<br>isolated<br>it seems to be that<br>level<br>lifespan<br>lifetime<br>link<br>lonely<br>magazine<br>mainland<br>make contact with sb<br>manage<br>Mars<br>mental arithmetic<br>moreover<br>no matter how<br>novel<br>nowadays<br>optimistic<br>partner<br>per cent<br>planet<br>pollution<br>previous<br>program<br>quite<br>rainforest<br>ready-made<br>regularly<br>replace<br>rubbish<br>ruler<br>run on<br>scientist<br>society<br>solar-powered<br>space exploration | state<br>submit<br>survey<br>transport<br>travel<br>treat<br>typewriter<br>underground<br>Venus<br>virtual reality<br>worry<br>wound<br>yacht<br><br><b>Unit 11</b><br>accident<br>battery<br>be in agony<br>be over<br>be poisoned<br>blanket<br>bleed (bled - bled)<br>board<br>bottom<br>brakes<br>chain<br>check<br>chemical<br>chest<br>choke<br>collide with<br>compass<br>crash<br>crash into<br>crawl<br>criticism<br>desert<br>drown<br>eventually<br>fire brigade<br>firefighter<br>first of all<br>fisherman<br>fishing boat<br>gate<br>get lost<br>give up<br>go for a drive<br>iceberg<br>in flames<br>in the distance<br>in time<br>iron |
|---|---|---|--|

jest  
joke  
judge  
keep away from  
keep back  
keep going  
lifeboat  
lift  
lose control of  
motorbike  
narrator  
narrow escape  
nearly  
on my way home  
painful  
passing  
physical pain  
pool  
prisoner  
put out  
relative  
repeat  
rescue  
rise (rose - risen)  
rush  
sailor  
set fire to sth  
sharp corner  
sink (sank - sunk)  
skid  
snowstorm  
speed  
suffer  
sun cream  
sunshade  
survive  
switch  
tides  
to my horror  
traffic lights  
tragically  
trapped  
tyre  
unconscious  
voyage  
waist  
warn  
weather forecast  
witness  
wrap

## Unit 12

achievement

adventure  
agent  
avoid  
back street  
be shot  
beard  
behave  
canoe  
carved  
club  
colleague  
colonise  
date of birth  
diamond  
diver  
equipment  
examine  
expedition  
expert  
explorer  
fascinate  
fighting  
fox  
free  
greenness  
have no choice  
helmet  
help out  
help sb to their feet  
horn  
in good condition  
innocent  
island  
knock sb to the ground  
light bulb  
make an attempt  
merchant  
moustache  
national  
necklace  
oar  
observation camp  
occupy  
ocean  
omit  
part  
piece  
place of birth  
prevent (from)  
prince  
protect  
radium  
raft  
raise objections

reach into one's pocket  
real  
rectangular  
remains  
sail  
sails  
set foot on sth  
set sail  
set up  
shield  
simply  
slave  
soldier  
straight ahead  
surface  
take notice of  
tie  
tired of sth/doing sth  
tour  
true  
TV network  
warrior  
weaver  
wooden  
wreck

## Unit 13

ash  
be trapped  
beat (beat - beaten)  
block  
blow down

erupt  
explode  
famine  
fine  
fireplane  
flame  
flooding  
food supplies  
force (n)  
force (v)  
formal  
frequently  
fury  
gas  
get over  
grow  
headline  
heat  
hit (hit - hit)  
homeless  
hurricane  
in detail  
inform  
investigation  
it shook me awake  
journalist  
knock  
last  
lava  
lightning storm  
massive  
meanwhile  
measure  
medical supplies  
medicine  
motorist  
mount  
mountainside  
mud  
news report  
owner  
plane crash  
poor  
pour  
pour out  
prison  
put off  
put up  
Red Cross  
region  
release  
rescue worker  
resident  
run out

## Word List

|                          |                     |                                   |  |
|--------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| scene                    | dedicated           | separate                          | derived  |
| shelter                  | definitely          | seriously                         | element  |
| smoke                    | depend on sb/sth    | shoot                             | energy   |
| stage                    | dive                | skill                             | experience                                       |
| starving                 | drawback            | sociable                          | extreme sport                                    |
| state                    | dream (of)          | somersault                        | face to face with sb/sth                         |
| steam                    | driving licence     | spy                               | fancy  |
| strike (struck - struck) | dustman             | steady                            | fishng rod                                       |
| style                    | earn                | stressful                         | fit  |
| surrounding              | enemy territory     | summarise                         | flippers   |
| survivor                 | experienced         | surgeon                           | glove  |
| take action              | fire                | take care                         | goggles  |
| temporarily              | flight attendant    | talented                          | golf course                                      |
| the authorities          | follow sb's advice  | thankful for                      | hook   |
| the Richter scale        | for and against     | the pros and cons                 | ideal  |
| theft                    | fume                | thrill                            | in excellent/good/bad,<br>etc physical condition |
| thick                    | give sb a lift      | tiring                            | in fact  |
| Town Hall                | handle              | topic                             | it doesn't matter                                |
| tremendous               | identify            | tough                             | it's worth                                       |
| turn into                | imaginary situation | traffic warden                    | jet  |
| vast                     | in conclusion       | training                          | jet-skiing                                       |
| victim                   | in need             | trapeze artist                    | knee pads  |
| violent                  | indoors             | tricky                            | knitting   |
| volcanic cloud           | instrument          | twist my knee                     | lay (laid - laid)                                |
| volcanic eruption        | keep sth secret     | typist                            | leap   |
| volcano                  | likely to           | uniform                           | life jacket                                      |
| volunteer                | mend                | vet                               | light  |
| waste (n)                | metal               | well-paid                         | magician   |
| waste (v)                | mission             | when it comes to<br>sth/doing sth | magnifying glass                                 |
| weather conditions       | mph                 | work long hours                   | mask   |
| weather reporter         | net                 |                                   | meaning  |
|                          | nevertheless        |                                   | mountaineer                                      |
|                          | news reporter       |                                   | muscle   |
|                          | no longer           |                                   | needle   |
|                          | optician            |                                   | organised  |
|                          | otherwise           |                                   | oxygen tank                                      |
|                          | parachute           |                                   | P.E. (physical education)                        |
|                          | partner             |                                   | paddle   |
|                          | permanent           |                                   | palette  |
|                          | petrol tank         |                                   | panic  |
|                          | phone bill          |                                   | paragliding                                      |
|                          | physical strength   |                                   | pattern  |
|                          | present             |                                   | pool   |
|                          | profession          |                                   | prize  |
|                          | proof               |                                   | professional                                     |
|                          | public attention    |                                   | proper   |
|                          | qualified for       |                                   | quality  |
|                          | rather than         |                                   | race   |
|                          | regret              |                                   | rafting  |
|                          | renew               |                                   | rare   |
|                          | responsible for     |                                   | reply  |
|                          | restate             |                                   | require  |
|                          | rewarding           |                                   | result   |

### Unit 14

a different story  
a great deal  
all things considered  
as long as  
audience  
be aware of  
be in better health  
become a hit  
besides  
bone  
briefly  
butcher  
care  
career  
combat soldier  
confident  
consider  
contract  
countless  
courageous

dedicated  
definitely  
depend on sb/sth  
dive  
drawback  
dream (of)  
driving licence  
dustman  
earn  
enemy territory  
experienced  
fire  
flight attendant  
follow sb's advice  
for and against  
fume  
give sb a lift  
handle  
identify  
imaginary situation  
in conclusion  
in need  
indoors  
instrument  
keep sth secret  
likely to  
mend  
metal  
mission  
mph  
net  
nevertheless  
news reporter  
no longer  
optician  
otherwise  
parachute  
partner  
permanent  
petrol tank  
phone bill  
physical strength  
present  
profession  
proof  
public attention  
qualified for  
rather than  
regret  
renew  
responsible for  
restate  
rewarding  
risk

### Unit 15

adventurer  
ask for trouble  
bad-tempered  
bar  
bat  
be concerned about  
sb/sth  
billiards  
binoculars  
boots  
brain  
brush  
canvas  
cards  
club  
coach  
compare  
competition  
contrast  
darts

reward  
 right  
 rock-climbing  
 roller-blading  
 rope  
 satisfy  
 scary  
 scuba-diving  
 sense of balance  
 setting  
 skateboarding  
 skydiving  
 snooker  
 spirit  
 stamp-collecting  
 stick  
 swimming suit  
 take  
 take on  
 take part in sth  
 take risks  
 take sth to its limits  
 test  
 the very last minute  
 tile  
 trainer  
 turn down  
 turn up  
 unexplored  
 wool

## Unit 16

a changing of the guard  
 ceremony  
 amazed at  
 architect  
 axe  
 baker  
 be at war with  
 be in trouble  
 be on  
 beat  
 belongings  
 block  
 break off  
 bring sb/sth before sb  
 bucket  
 by accident  
 by mistake  
 cause  
 charges  
 chop  
 chop off

close in on sb/sth  
 come free  
 conqueror  
 cursed  
 dead-end street  
 drag  
 Duke  
 escape  
 fool  
 gather  
 goldfish  
 Gothic  
 have a cold  
 historical  
 impressive  
 install  
 intonation  
 ladder  
 lock  
 order  
 plague  
 poster  
 race  
 read sth out  
 rebuild  
 residence  
 Royal Standard  
 set sth on fire  
 significance  
 silence  
 soaking wet  
 spicy  
 spread  
 suspiciously  
 the Crown jewels  
 thud  
 tourist information centre  
 towel  
 tower  
 twins  
 vegetables  
 weight  
 wildly

## Unit 17

adult  
 all-powerful  
 announce  
 as for sb/sth  
 as strong as an ox  
 as stubborn as a mule  
 attacker  
 ban

bleat  
 brave  
 buzz  
 calf  
 call  
 carry a disease  
 cat  
 characteristic  
 chimpanzee  
 cluck  
 come along  
 conservationist  
 cross  
 dead  
 declare  
 deep  
 demand  
 develop  
 differ (in sth)  
 domestic  
 doubt  
 drink like a fish  
 eat like a horse  
 emperor penguin  
 endangered  
 evil  
 extinction  
 fairy tale  
 farm animal  
 fear for sb/sth  
 fight against  
 fight like cat and dog  
 flock of sheep  
 frighten away  
 grass  
 grey fox  
 guard  
 harp seal  
 have sth in common (with  
 sb/sth)  
 have the right to do  
 something  
 herd of cows  
 howl  
 human being  
 hunter  
 illegal  
 in favour of sb/sth  
 in the wild  
 increased  
 industry  
 insist  
 instructions  
 ivory

jaguar  
 jungle  
 law  
 leopard  
 lethal  
 like a fish out of water  
 Little Red Riding Hood  
 lorry  
 lovely  
 mammal  
 mane  
 miaow  
 mirror  
 misunderstood  
 moo  
 name  
 neigh  
 nest  
 over-populate  
 pack of wolves  
 paw  
 pet  
 pride of lions  
 proud (of sb/sth)  
 quack  
 rat  
 recognise  
 respect  
 risk  
 roar  
 safely  
 school of whales  
 sea turtle  
 share  
 simile  
 skin  
 snapping jaw  
 solve  
 species  
 spelling rule  
 still  
 superb  
 swallow  
 swamp  
 swarm of bees  
 tame  
 the black widow spider  
 tone  
 trading  
 traditionally  
 tropical  
 trunk  
 tusk  
 twig

# Word List

under threat  
valuable  
virtue  
whiskers  
wing

## Unit 18

absorb  
act  
adapt  
adopt  
affirmative  
allergy  
become extinct  
breathe  
breathing problems  
bring about  
carbon dioxide  
cattle farm  
cause  
chimney  
clean up  
company  
consequently  
contaminate  
crops  
cut down  
damage  
develop  
domestic  
dump  
effect  
exhaust fumes  
face  
fault  
fight for  
filter  
get around  
get involved in  
give off  
give out  
grave  
heal  
hunger  
immediately  
in power  
industrial  
is home to  
issue  
lack of sth  
litter  
living conditions  
loss

major  
make space  
native  
oil  
oil tanker  
oxygen  
poem  
prepare the way for  
product  
production method  
public transport  
purpose  
put pressure on sb (to do sth)  
put sth into practice  
recycling scheme  
reduce  
repair  
run dry  
sealife  
stomach  
suffer from  
survival  
technology  
therefore  
threaten with extinction  
to make matters worse  
wake up to sth  
watery  
wildlife park  
yet

## Unit 19

apologise for  
apple pie  
argument  
artichoke  
aubergine  
bake  
bar  
beans  
beef curry  
cabbage  
can  
chips  
complaint  
consideration  
corn  
crab  
creamy  
crisps  
cruel  
cucumber

customer  
dairy products  
decor  
diet  
disastrous  
eyesight  
frog  
full name  
garlic  
gene  
generation  
genetic engineer  
give birth to  
grapefruit juice  
grapes  
greasy  
ham  
hormone  
hot  
jam  
juicy  
lamb chops  
lettuce  
life form  
loaf  
lobster  
luxurious  
main course  
make sure  
manager  
matter  
member  
moth  
mushroom  
mussel  
normally  
nutritious  
omelette  
onion  
pass on  
peach  
pear  
pepper  
pot  
poultry  
prawn  
produce  
protest against  
pumpkin  
quality  
quantity  
real-life  
rich  
roast beef

salmon  
salty  
sausage  
scorpion  
seafood  
serious  
signature  
slice  
soup  
soya beans  
spill  
starter  
steak  
steak and kidney pie  
strawberry  
strong  
surname  
sweet  
tough  
transfer  
trout  
trust  
turkey  
waiter  
watermelon  
what is more  
yoghurt  
Yours faithfully  
Yours sincerely

## Unit 20

alive  
appointment  
beside  
bubble-car  
certain  
change one's mind  
circular  
cost of living  
daylight  
deduction  
develop  
drop  
examination  
float  
glass  
global warming  
grow  
hardly  
headlights  
hydrogen  
inch  
lose one's way

make it  
melt  
mile  
nearby  
passage  
pipe  
polar  
presumed  
pull up  
rainstorm  
refill  
rent  
road map  
rob  
roof  
rubber  
sadly  
secret  
sensor  
set up  
shield  
shopkeeper  
state  
steal  
steer  
stressed  
suck (out)  
temperature  
tie sb up  
time machine  
traffic jam  
ultra violet  
underwater  
unemployed  
usable  
video screen  
view  
visibility  
walkway  
wealthy  
worldwide

## Unit 21

a waste of time  
acting  
adventure  
alien creature  
amaze  
amusing  
be separated from  
be set  
believable  
cartoon

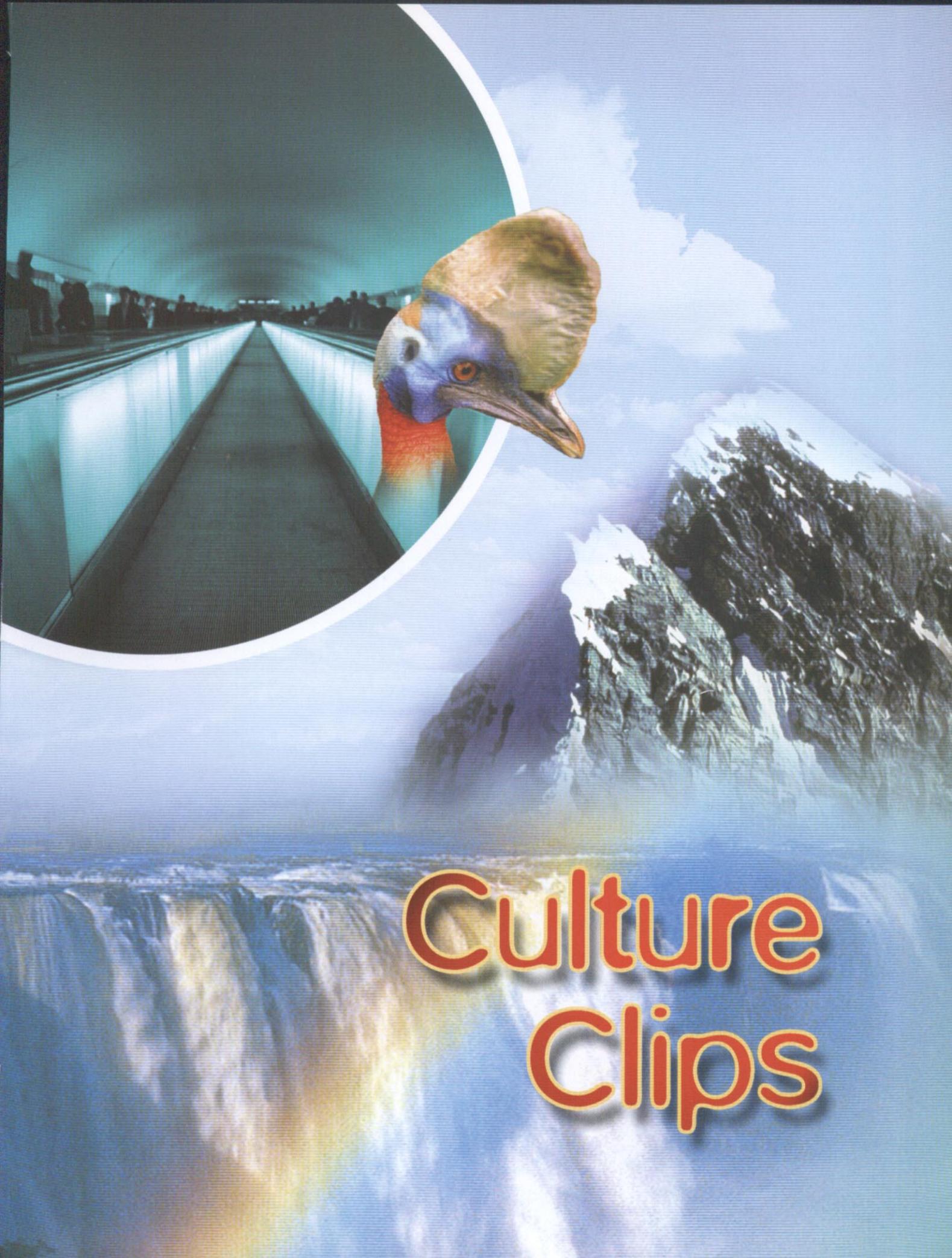
celebrate  
character  
chase  
classic  
comedy  
complicated  
convincing  
costume  
dating show  
detective (film)  
direct  
disappointing  
disapprove of  
documentary  
embarrass  
escape  
essay  
evil  
fall asleep  
firm  
fond of  
galaxy  
gigantic  
hero  
humorous  
I don't think much of it  
imaginary  
intend to  
involve  
involving  
landscape  
laser weapon  
leader  
miss the chance to do sth  
moving  
myth  
mythology  
one's idea of sth  
originally  
out of this world  
outer space  
performance  
play a bigger/major etc.  
role  
preference  
quiz show  
realistic  
release  
respond  
review  
ride  
romance  
script  
sea park

shocking  
silly  
soap opera  
sound effect  
space adventure  
special effects  
specific  
sports programme  
street child  
suspense  
table tennis  
take after  
take off  
take over  
take up  
terrifying  
theme  
thrill  
trilogy  
universe  
villain  
well-made  
well-written  
whale  
  
Institute for Advanced  
Studies  
inventor  
it was all in his mind  
k.p.h.  
laboratory

lecture  
lose consciousness  
maid  
mechanic  
mend  
physics  
polish  
preparations  
qualification  
redden  
report  
research  
respected  
return  
reunion  
saleswoman  
scientific  
service  
set the table  
shopping  
shorten  
steel frame  
stretcher  
tap  
telescope  
throw one's arms around  
sb  
turn to  
unanswered  
wallet  
water  
wedding anniversary  
wheel  
whole  
wonder

## Unit 22

antique shop  
artifact  
atomic bomb  
authentic  
automobile  
barely  
be gone  
blazing  
chauffeur  
conscious  
darling  
deliver  
discovery  
familiar  
fire alarm  
fire brigade  
fire engine  
gift  
graduate  
hydrogen bomb  
in fact  
Institute for Advanced  
Studies  
inventor  
it was all in his mind  
k.p.h.  
laboratory



# Culture Clips

# 1 Local Dishes

## Pre-reading Activity

- 1 Look at the pictures and match the dishes (A-D) to the countries where they are traditionally eaten (1-4).

|                                  |           |
|----------------------------------|-----------|
| A fish and chips .....           | 1 Ireland |
| B Irish stew .....               | 2 USA     |
| C burger and fries .....         | 3 Canada  |
| D pancakes and maple syrup ..... | 4 Britain |

- 2 For which of the dishes above (A-D) would you need these ingredients?

1 100 grams of minced beef, grilled or fried .....

- 2 pieces of deep-fried potato, sprinkled with salt and vinegar .....
- 3 syrup made from the sap of the maple tree .....
- 4 meat, potatoes, onions, carrots and parsley .....

## Reading

- 3 a) Read the texts and answer the questions, then use your dictionary to look up the words in bold.

### Fish and Chips A

One of Britain's best-known meals is fish and chips. It is not only delicious, but also a part of British culture.

The fish is covered in **batter** (made from eggs, milk and flour) then fried in hot oil. When cooked, the batter is **crispy** and the piece of fresh fish inside is soft. This is **served** with chips, pieces of deep-fried potato, which are then **sprinkled** with salt and **vinegar**.

Fish and chip shops have been around since the 19th century. It was traditional in parts of Britain to eat fish and chips on Friday evening. Families would usually buy them from their nearest shop and **serve** them at home. It used to be quite a cheap meal and was often served **wrapped** in newspaper.



### Irish Stew B

Any Irish person will tell you that the best Irish stew is the one their mother makes. In fact, no two Irish stews are the same, because everyone who cooks it changes the **recipe** in their own way.

Originally, Irish stew was a dish that poorer people made because it was cheap and **filling**. The main **ingredients** were lamb and potatoes, both of which were easy to find in Ireland. Other ingredients were usually onions, carrots and parsley.



Today, Irish stew is still the same basic dish – a kind of thick soup or **casserole** made of meat, potatoes and vegetables. However, the exact recipe varies to suit individual tastes and the **availability** of ingredients. For example, many Irish immigrants in America found beef to be cheaper and more available than lamb, and so they used beef instead. Some recipes have even changed this simple dish into a **gourmet** meal.



## Pancakes with Maple Syrup

D

Canada's most famous dish is **pancakes** with maple **syrup**. It is traditionally eaten for breakfast, and can be found on the menu in practically every **diner** in the country.

Pancakes are made from eggs, milk and flour, and they are cooked on a **griddle**. They are round and quite thick, and they are **served** with maple syrup poured over the top.

Maple syrup is made from the **sap** of the sugar maple tree. The sap is collected from the trees in early spring, then boiled until it turns into a golden syrup. The syrup is delicious when poured on ice-cream, waffles – and, of course, pancakes.

## Burger and Fries

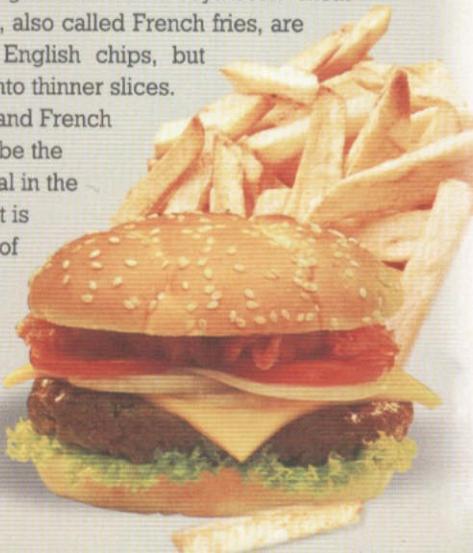
C

A burger and fries is by far the most popular type of meal bought in the US. In fact, Americans buy almost 5 **billion** burgers a year! This popularity has **spread** around the world with the **growth** of international "fast food" restaurant chains.

Many people say that the first burger was served at the St Louis World's Fair in 1904. The first chain of burger restaurants started with the White Castle burger in 1921, and it was a great success.

The **classic** burger is made from about 100 grams of **minced** beef which is fried or **grilled**, then served in a **bun** covered with **sesame seeds**. The growing popularity of **vegetarianism** has also led to burgers made from soya bean "meat" instead. Fries, also called French fries, are cooked like English chips, but they are cut into thinner slices.

A burger and French fries may not be the healthiest meal in the world – but it is **certainly** one of the world's favourites.



Which text(s) – A, B, C or D – mention(s) a dish ...

- 1 that may be fried in oil?
- 2 that includes meat?
- 3 traditionally eaten in the morning?
- 4 some of whose ingredients may vary?
- 5 traditionally eaten on a particular day of the week?

- b) Read the texts again and find words which are similar to words in your own language.
- c) Match the highlighted words to their synonyms, then explain them in your own language.

surely; changes; presented; tasty; simple; typical

### Speaking

- What are the most popular traditional dishes in your country? What do you know about their history, how they are made, etc?
- What food would you recommend to somebody visiting your country for the first time?

## 2 Shakespearean Heritage

### Pre-reading Activity

- 1 Look at the portrait (below) of William Shakespeare. When/where did he live, and why is he still famous?
- 2 Guess which of these statements about Shakespeare is not true. Read the texts and see if your guesses were correct.
  - a He married a famous actress.
  - b He died on his 52nd birthday.
  - c You can still see the house where he was born.

### William Shakespeare (1564-1616)



William Shakespeare is not only England's most famous poet and **playwright**, but perhaps also the greatest writer the world has ever known. Even today, his works are read more widely than those of any other writer.

He was born on 23rd April 1564 in Stratford-upon-Avon, where he grew up and went to school. At the age of 18 he married Anne Hathaway, who was then 26. At some time around 1588 he went to London, **joined** a theatre company as an actor and began writing plays.

His plays were soon very popular and he became quite a rich man. He bought New Place, one of the largest houses in Stratford, and in 1599 the Globe theatre in London was built.

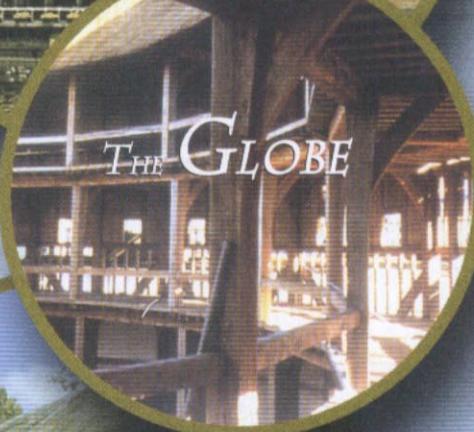
In 1603, Queen Elizabeth I died and her **cousin** became King James I. He enjoyed watching Shakespeare's plays, and chose Shakespeare's **company** of actors to be his **official entertainers**. It was around this time that many of Shakespeare's greatest plays were written.

In his later years, from about 1608, Shakespeare wrote only four plays, and seems to have spent more time in Stratford. It was there that he died, on 23rd April, 1616 – his 52nd birthday.

### THE ROYAL SHAKESPEARE THEATRE



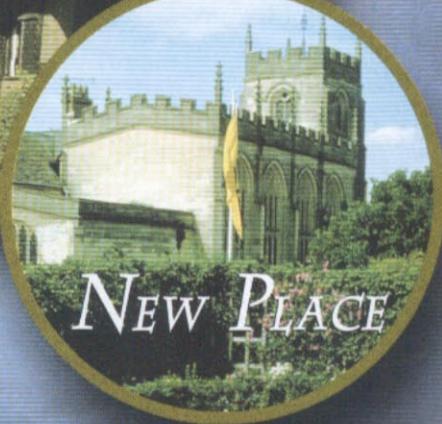
### THE GLOBE



### ANNE HATHAWAY'S COTTAGE



### NEW PLACE



## Reading

- 3 a) Read the texts and answer the questions, explain the words in bold then give synonyms for the highlighted words.

### Stratford-upon-Avon

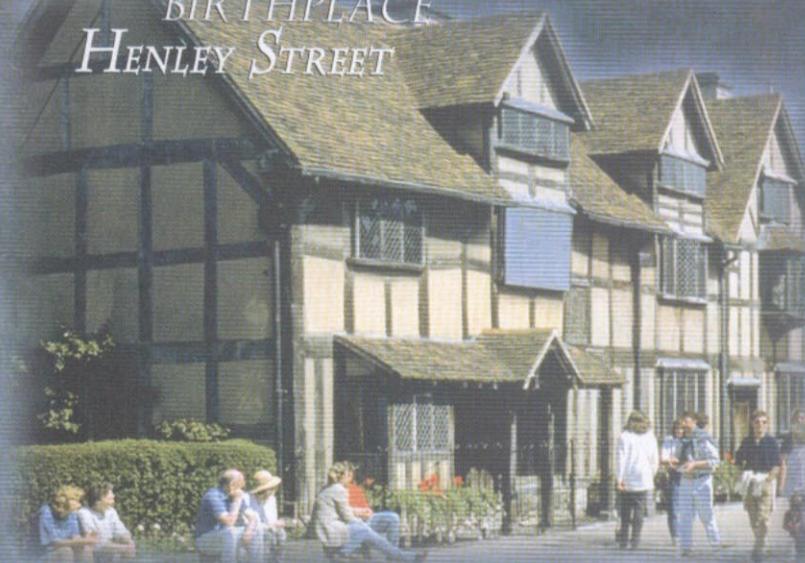
Every year, millions of visitors come to the quiet town of Stratford-upon-Avon, the place where William Shakespeare was born, grew up, died and is buried.

Many buildings associated with his life can still be seen in or near Stratford today, including:

- Shakespeare's **birthplace** in Henley Street
- the local church, where Shakespeare is buried
- Stratford Grammar School, where Shakespeare went to school
- Anne Hathaway's **cottage** in the village of Shottery, 2 kilometres from Stratford
- part of New Place, which Shakespeare owned

The Shakespeare Memorial in Stratford includes a museum, a library and a theatre where the Royal Shakespeare Company perform his plays.

### SHAKESPEARE'S BIRTHPLACE HENLEY STREET



### The New Globe Theatre

The original Globe theatre was closed in 1642, and nothing is known about what happened to it. In 1987, though, after many years of careful research, work began to build a new theatre as much like the original as possible.

The New Globe is 180 metres from the exact place where Shakespeare's theatre stood, and was built with the same materials and building methods. Like the original, it is a round building, 3 storeys high, with a wooden frame and plaster walls. A thatched roof leaves the middle of the theatre open to the sky. The roofed stage fills part of this space.

The New Globe opened in 1997, and is used from May to September for performances of plays both by Shakespeare and other playwrights of his time. Performances take place in the daytime, as in Shakespeare's time.

### Theatre in Shakespeare's Time

The Globe theatre was built in 1599, burned down in 1613 and was rebuilt in 1614. It stood on the bank of the River Thames in Southwark, London, near several other famous theatres of the time.

In those days, people from all levels of society, rich and poor, used to go to the theatre. The poorer people stood near the stage, with no covering against the sun or rain, while wealthier people sat in rows of seats around the inside of the walls.

Plays were performed in the daytime, because there was no artificial lighting. The stage had no curtains, and scenery was not often used, but the actors wore colourful costumes. In Shakespeare's times, women were not allowed on stage, so the women's parts were played by boys dressed up in women's costumes.

- 1 When were many of Shakespeare's greatest plays written?
  - 2 What buildings that are associated with Shakespeare's life can still be seen in Stratford?
  - 3 How was theatre in Shakespeare's time different to theatre today?
  - 4 Where is the New Globe theatre, and what does it look like?
- b) Read the texts again and find words which are similar to words in your own language.

## Speaking

- Who are the most famous writers from your country? What do you know about their lives and works?

# 3 Strange Creatures

## Pre-reading Activity

1 Look at the pictures. Which shows ...

- a Tasmanian devil
- a cassowary • a koala
- a kakapo • a penguin
- a kangaroo • a platypus
- a kiwi • an emu
- a wombat?

2 What animals or birds do you know that are native to Australia or New Zealand?

## Reading

3 a) Read the texts, answer the questions and explain the words in bold.

1 Which animals/birds mentioned are native to a) Australia and b) New Zealand?

2 Which animal/bird mentioned eats ...

- a) dead sheep?
- b) eucalyptus leaves?
- c) frogs, worms and shellfish?
- d) farmers' crops?

3 List all of the a) marsupials and b) flightless birds mentioned in the texts.

b) Read the texts again and give synonyms for the highlighted words.

c) Find words which are similar to words in your own language.



### AUSTRALIA

the land 'Down Under', has many **native** species of animals and birds not found anywhere else in the world

### Marsupials

Marsupials are **mammals** that give birth to tiny young, which spend the first part of their lives in their mother's **pouch** – such as the kangaroo with her **young** (called a 'joey') in the picture on the right. The baby kangaroo measures only 2.5 cm at birth, and is carried in the mother's pouch for 6-8 months.

Half of the world's species of **marsupials** are found only in Australia or Papua New Guinea. Other Australian marsupials include wombats and koalas.

Koalas live, eat and sleep in the branches of eucalyptus trees, only coming down to move to another tree. Eucalyptus leaves are the koala's main **source** of both food and water.



### Platypus

The platypus is only found in Australia and Tasmania and it must be one of the world's **strangest** animals. In fact, the first time the **preserved** body of a platypus was taken to Britain, scientists there refused to believe that it was **real**!



#### Strange – but true ...

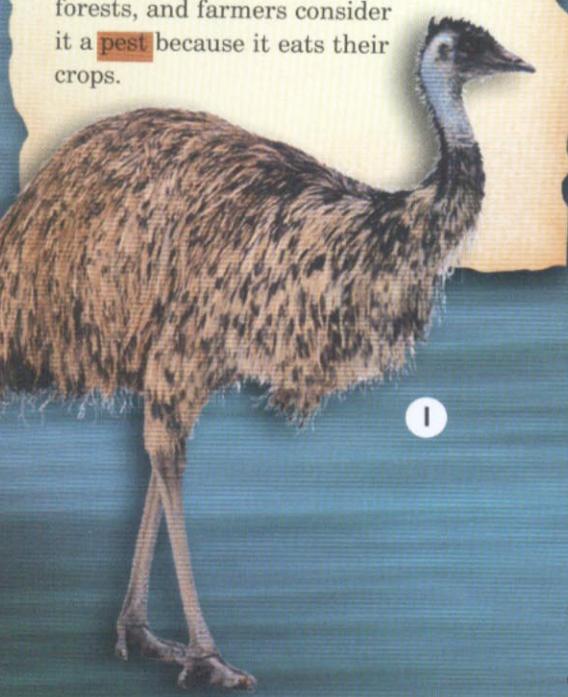
- It's a mammal – but it lays eggs
- It **eats its own weight** in food, every day! It swims underwater to catch frogs, shellfish and worms on the bottom of rivers and streams
- It has a **bill** and **webbed** feet, like a duck; thick, soft fur and a flat tail; and the **male** has claws on its back legs tipped with a **powerful poison**



B

## Flightless Birds

Also native to Australia are two large, flightless birds – the emu, shown here, and the cassowary. Both birds have huge bodies and long legs, and are fast runners. The cassowary lives in the tropical rain forest, and is dangerous because it has very sharp claws. The emu lives in deserts, plains and forests, and farmers consider it a **pest** because it eats their crops.



I

## New Zealand

Australia's neighbour, New Zealand, has very few native species of land animals. For this reason, a large number of flightless birds native to the country have managed to **survive** in safety.

Most famous of these is the kiwi. It sleeps underground during the day and looks for food by night. It is very shy and avoids human **contact**.

The kakapo, also called the owl parrot, is one of the world's **rarest** birds. As well as being the largest parrot in the world, it is the only parrot that is **nocturnal** and the only one that can't fly. Unlike the kiwi, the kakapo is unafraid of people and has been known to climb up a man's body and sit on his head.

Although they are not native to New Zealand, **penguins** also **migrate** here from the Antarctic during the winter months.



E



F



G

## Tasmanian Devil

The Tasmanian devil is now **extinct** in the **rest** of Australia, but a few can still be found in **remote** parts of Tasmania.

About the size of a small dog, this marsupial is called a 'devil' because of its **fierce** looks, its **bad temper** and the strange noise it makes.

**Despite** its large **jaws**, strong teeth and **aggressive behaviour**, it doesn't often **hunt** other animals. Instead, it eats animals – mainly sheep – that are already dead when it finds them.



J



## Speaking

- **What animals and birds are native to your country? Are there any species which are not found anywhere else?**
- **What are the most unusual animals and birds in your country? What is strange about them?**

# 4 Natural Wonders

## Pre-reading Activity

1 Look at the pictures (1 to 4). Which shows ...

- a waterfall? .....
- a canyon? .....
- a mountain? .....
- a huge rock? .....

2 Which of the globes (A to D) shows ...

- The Northern Territory, Australia ...
- The Zambezi River, between Zimbabwe/Zambia .....  
.....
- Arizona, USA .....  
.....
- The Himalayas, between Nepal/Tibet ...

## Reading

3 a) Read the texts and answer the questions, then explain the words in bold. Finally give opposites for the highlighted words.

Which place(s)

- 1 is the highest on Earth?
- 2 were named after  
a famous person?
- 3 changes colour?
- 4 were formed by a river?
- 5 belongs to a mountain  
range?

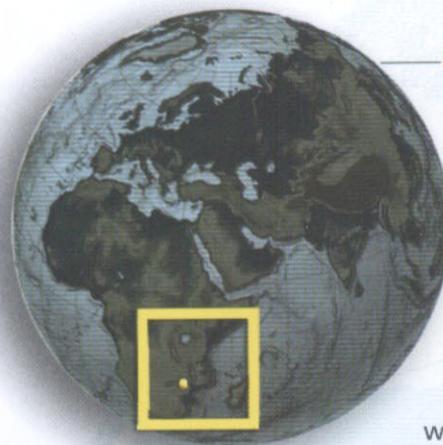
b) Make notes under the following headings to describe each of the natural wonders.

- Name (English/local)
- Location
- Type of feature (e.g. mountain)
- Size (height/width/etc)
- Age (if mentioned)
- Date first climbed/discovered/etc by Europeans (if mentioned)
- Other details

c) Read the texts again and find words which are similar to words in your own language.

## Speaking

- Which of these natural wonders do you find most impressive, and why?
- What impressive/well-known natural wonders are there in your country? Briefly describe one or two of them.



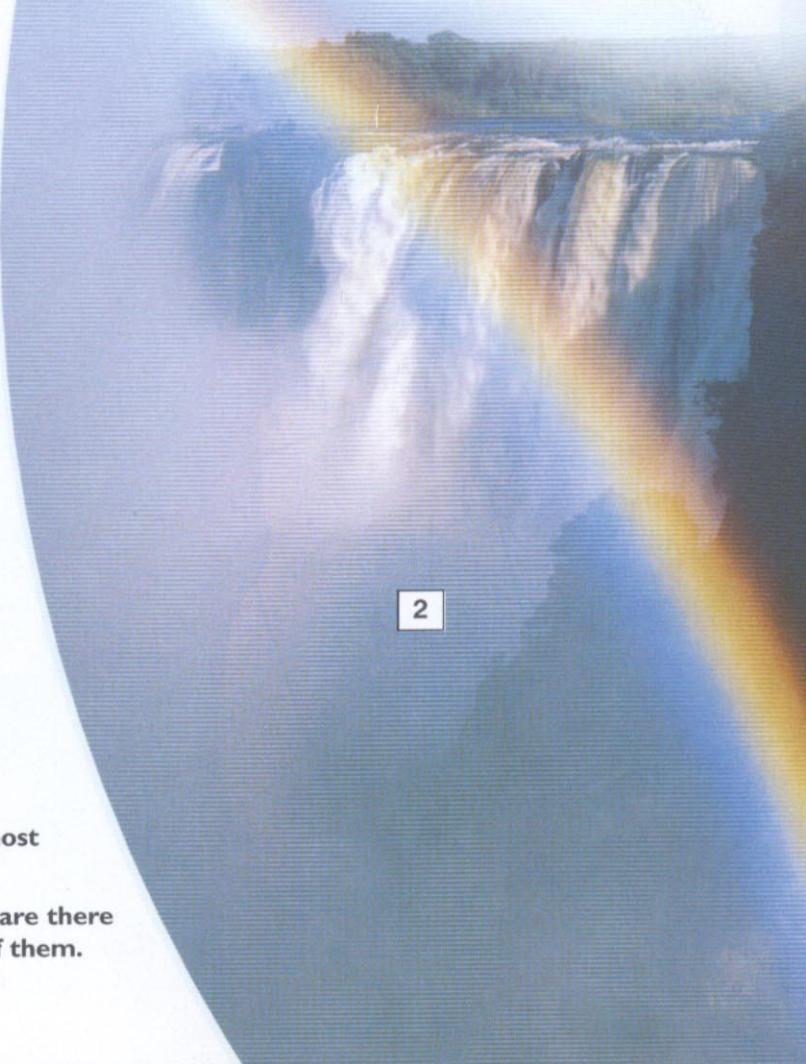
A

## The Smoke that Thunders

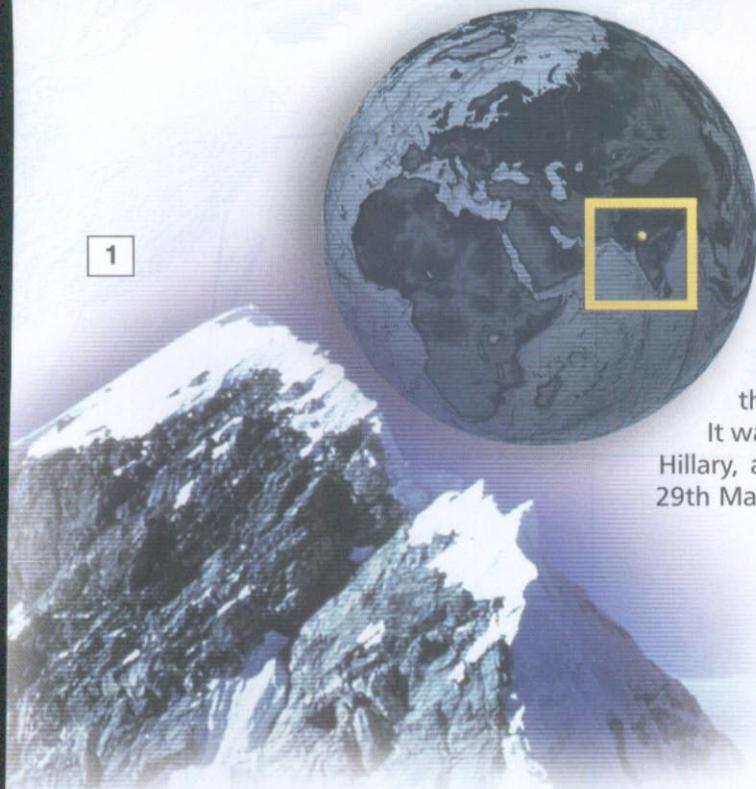
Victoria Falls is the English name for a mighty waterfall on the Zambezi River between Zambia and Zimbabwe which is 1.7 kilometres wide and 108 metres deep. The first

European to see the falls was Scottish explorer Dr David Livingstone, on 16th November 1855. He named the falls in honour of Britain's Queen Victoria. The falls produce a huge cloud of spray, which can be seen more than 100 km away. The spray and the tremendous noise of the water give the falls their local name, *Mosi – oa – tunya* – 'The smoke that thunders'.

2



1



## B The Roof of the World

Mount Everest is the **highest** point on the **surface** of our planet, rising 8,848 metres above **sea level**. It is part of the Himalayas, the mountain **range** between Nepal and Tibet.

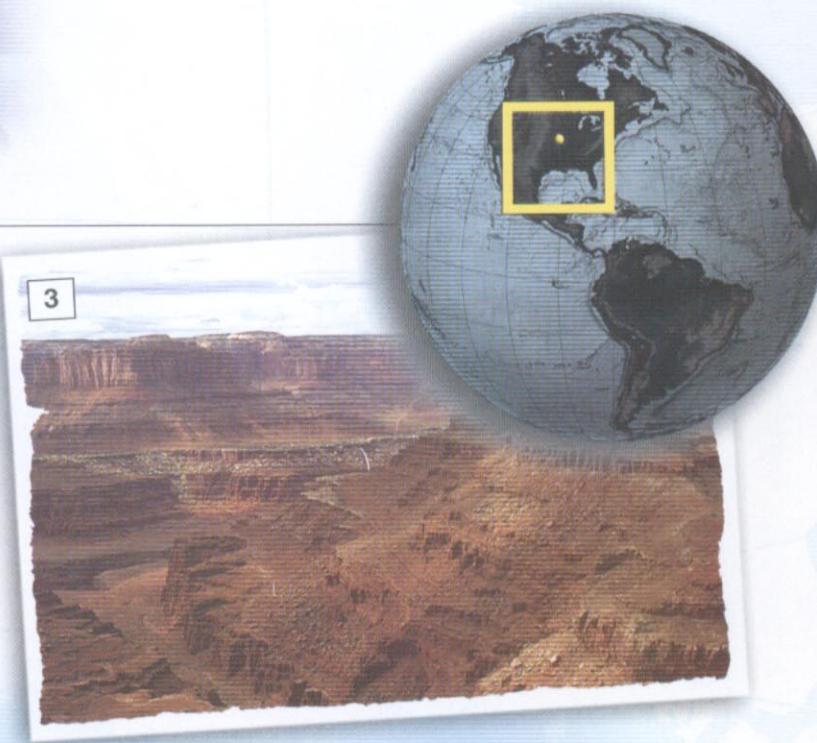
It was first climbed by New Zealander, Sir Edmund Hillary, and his Nepalese **guide**, Tenzing Norgay, on 29th May, 1953.

## C Grand Canyon

The Grand Canyon in Arizona, USA, was formed by the Colorado River cutting deeply through **layers** of rock.

This **began** about 6 million years ago, and has resulted in a canyon 446 kilometres long and as much as 1.6 kilometres deep. Some parts of the canyon are only 200 metres wide, while in places it is 29 kilometres across.

3



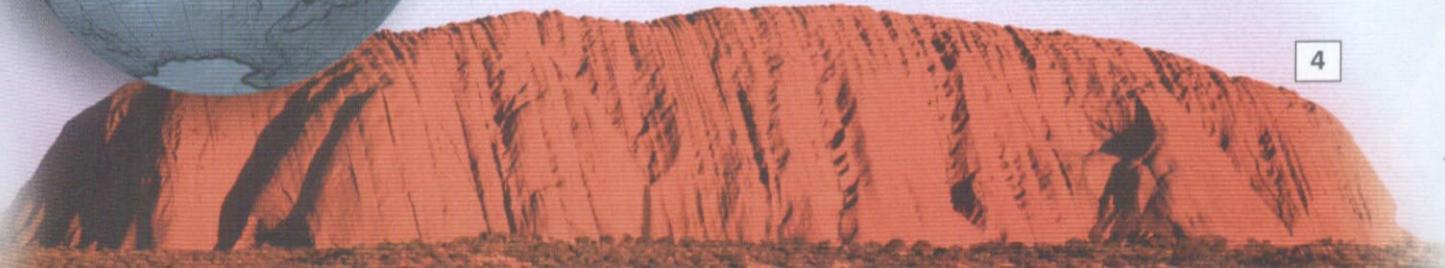
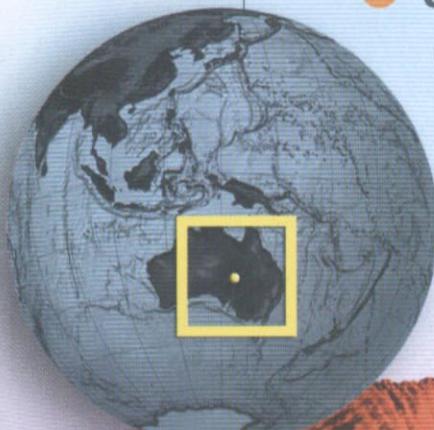
## D Uluru

Uluru, in Australia's Northern Territory, is the largest rock in the world. It is a single piece of red **limestone** formed about 550 million years ago. Uluru is 335 metres high and has a **circumference** of 9 kilometres. At sunset it turns a **brilliant** orange-red.

Uluru is important in the **religion** of

the Aborigines, and is a **sacred** place for many of them. There are caves in the rock, with carvings which tell **ancient** Aboriginal stories.

Many people used to call Uluru Ayers Rock because in 1873 the first white man to climb the rock named it in honour of Sir Henry Ayers, a political leader of the time.



4

# 5 London Transport

## Pre-reading Activity

- 1 How many means of public transport can you think of? What are the advantages and/or disadvantages of each one?

## Reading

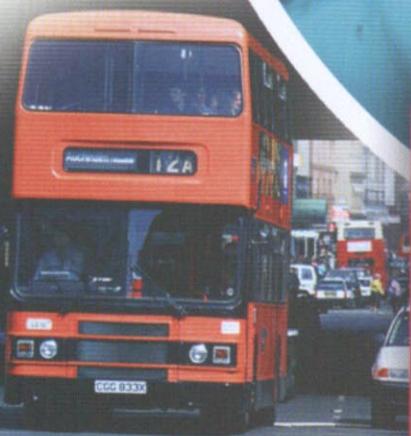
- 2 a) Read the texts and say what each of the dates or figures (1-10) refers to, then explain the words in bold.

|        |          |
|--------|----------|
| 1 1643 | 6 22,000 |
| 2 6    | 7 1863   |
| 3 34   | 8 1987   |
| 4 1913 | 9 25,000 |
| 5 275  | 10 1947  |



Like every big city, London has its traffic problems, and getting around can be **difficult**. At the same time, though, London's **public transport system** is not only one of the oldest in the world, but also one of the best.

London is famous for its red **double-decker** buses, black **cabs** and the London Underground.

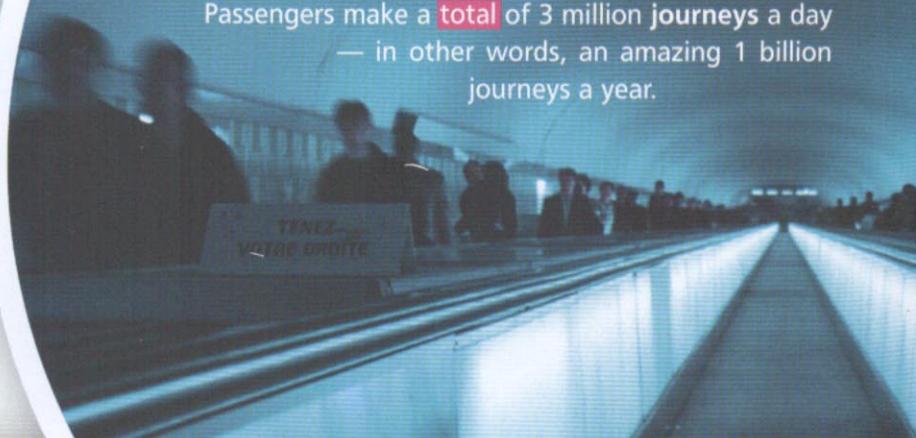


## The Tube

The London Underground train service — or the 'Tube', as Londoners call it — is the oldest and largest in the world.

The first underground railway line opened in January 1863. The line was only 6 km long, but others were soon started, and in 1890 a line was opened which ran under the River Thames.

Today the Tube has over 406 km of lines and 275 stations. Passengers make a **total** of 3 million journeys a day — in other words, an amazing 1 billion journeys a year.



## Did you know?

- About 18 million **individual** passengers a year use the Tube — the same number as the population of Australia.
- The Tube has a total of 408 escalators and 112 lifts. Waterloo Station has the most escalators, with 25.
  - During World War II, when the city was heavily bombed in German air raids, Londoners used Tube station platforms as a place to shelter.
  - The Underground logo (top), which is still used today, was designed in 1913.



## Sightseeing Tours

As well as London's regular bus services, there are special double-decker buses, some with open tops, which take visitors on sightseeing tours of London's famous landmarks and tourist attractions.

Another interesting way to see the sights of the city is to take a cruise along the Thames on a riverboat.

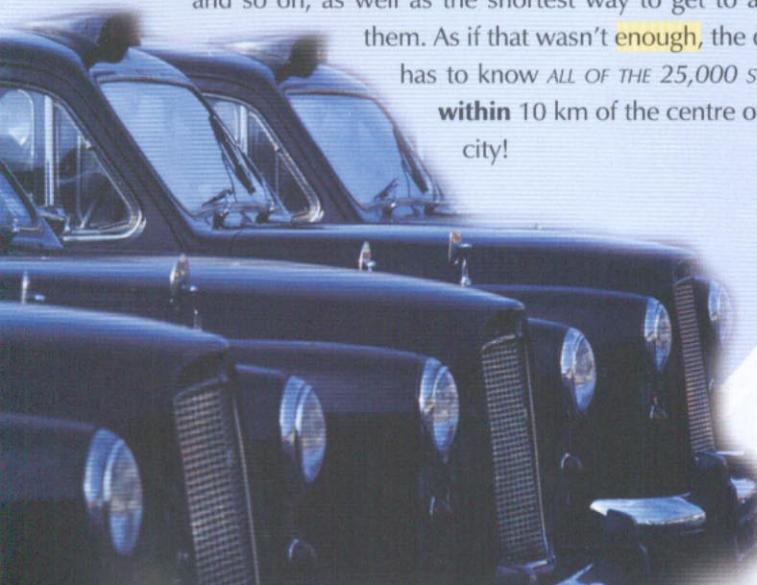
## Black Cabs

Licensed public cabs have existed in London since 1643. They were **horse-drawn** then, of course. In fact, there were still some horse-drawn cabs in London as late as 1947.

By **law**, each cab had to have enough extra space to carry a **bale of hay** for the horse. Although nowadays London's black cabs are all motor cars, the old law about extra space has still not changed!

There are about 19,000 cabs in London and 22,000 drivers. As well as a special driving test, licensed cab drivers have to pass a very difficult **test** called the Knowledge of London.

To pass, a driver must know all about London and its hotels, theatres, stations, hospitals, public buildings, restaurants, parks and so on, as well as the shortest way to get to any of them. As if that wasn't **enough**, the driver has to know **ALL OF THE 25,000 STREETS** **within** 10 km of the centre of the city!



The Docklands Light Railway was opened in 1987. It has 34 stations and takes passengers between the city centre and the Docklands area in east London.

- b) Read the texts again and give synonyms for the highlighted words, then find words which are similar to words in your own language.

### Speaking

- Do you often use public transport? Why/Why not?
- Does the town/city where you live have a good public transport system? In what ways is it similar/different to London's public transport system?
- Does your town/city operate any eco-friendly means of transport? What are they?

# American English - British English Guide

| Cars and Driving             |  | Food                                      |                           |
|------------------------------|--|---|---------------------------|
| American English             | British English                        | American English                          | British English           |
| antenna                      | aerial                                 | appetizers                                | starters                  |
| circle, rotary               | roundabout                             | baked potato                              | jacket potato             |
| defroster                    | window heater                          | broil                                     | grill                     |
| detour                       | diversion                              | candy                                     | sweets                    |
| divided highway              | dual carriageway                       | candy store                               | confectioner, sweet shop  |
| fender                       | wing                                   | canned                                    | tinned                    |
| flat (tire)                  | flat tyre, puncture                    | cookie                                    | biscuit                   |
| gas, gasoline                | petrol                                 | corn                                      | sweetcorn, maize          |
| gas station                  | petrol station, garage                 | cotton candy                              | candy floss               |
| gear shift                   | gear lever, stick                      | dessert                                   | pudding, sweet, dessert   |
| high beams                   | full lights                            | eggplant                                  | aubergine                 |
| hood                         | bonnet                                 | fish sticks                               | fish fingers              |
| intersection                 | crossroads                             | French fries                              | chips                     |
| interstate, highway, freeway | motorway                               | ground meat                               | mince                     |
| low beams                    | lights dipped                          | jello                                     | jelly                     |
| minibus                      | van/minibus                            | jelly                                     | jam                       |
| motorcycle                   | motorbike, motorcycle                  | oatmeal                                   | porridge                  |
| overpass                     | flyover                                | potato chips                              | crisps                    |
| parking lot                  | car park                               | preserves                                 | conserves                 |
| pass (vehicle, etc)          | overtake, pass                         | without or with<br>(milk/cream in coffee) | black or white            |
| pedestrian crossing          | zebra crossing,<br>pedestrian crossing | zucchini                                  | courgettes                |
| rental car                   | hire car                               |   |                           |
| transmission                 | gear box                               |   |                           |
| truck                        | lorry, van                             |   |                           |
| turn signals                 | indicators                             |   |                           |
| windshield                   | wind screen                            |   |                           |
| Travelling/Commuting         |  |   |                           |
| airplane                     | aeroplane                              | account                                   | bill, account             |
| baggage claim                | baggage reclaim                        | any place, anywhere                       | anywhere                  |
| bus                          | coach                                  | apartment                                 | flat                      |
| cab                          | taxi                                   | area code                                 | diailling code (phone)    |
| one-way (ticket)             | single                                 | attorney, lawyer                          | solicitor                 |
| railroad                     | railway                                | backpack                                  | rucksack                  |
| round trip (ticket)          | return (ticket)                        | band aid                                  | sticking plaster          |
| sidewalk                     | pavement                               | bathrobe                                  | dressing gown             |
| subway                       | underground, tube                      | bathtub                                   | bath                      |
| underpass                    | subway                                 | bill (currency)                           | banknote                  |
|                              |  | billion = thousand<br>million             | billion = million million |
|                              |  | blind (n)                                 | hide (n)                  |
|                              |  | botanical garden                          | botanic garden            |
|                              |  | bureau                                    | chest of drawers          |
|                              |  | busy (telephone)                          | engaged                   |
|                              |  | call, phone                               | ring up, phone, call      |
|                              |  | cheap (badly made/<br>done)               | shoddy                    |
|                              |  | check (restaurant)                        | bill                      |

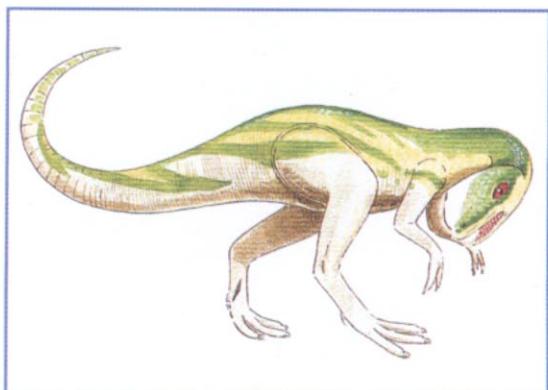
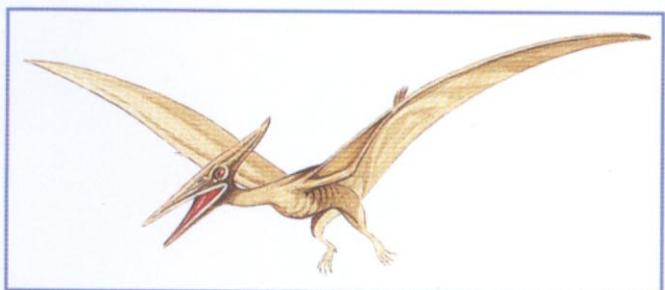
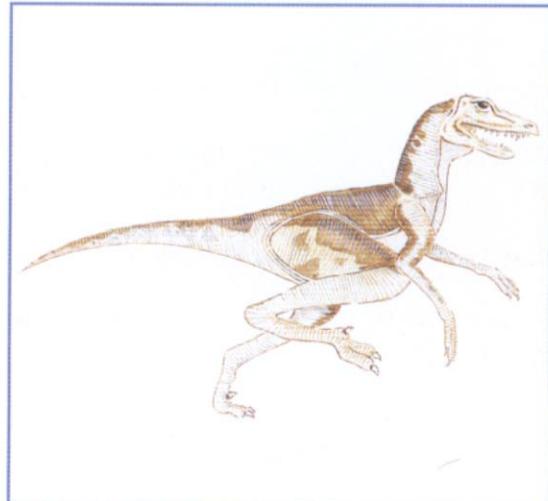
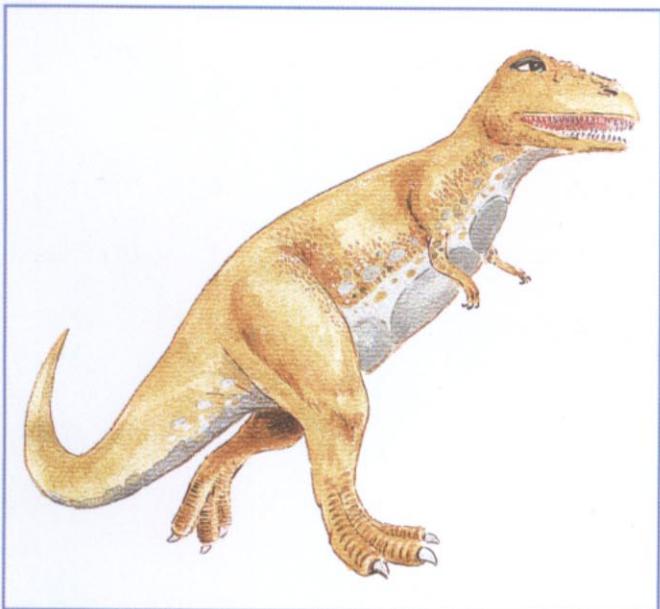
| <b>American English</b>                 | <b>British English</b>        | <b>American English</b>           | <b>British English</b>                |
|---|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| clippings                               | cuttings                      | nothing, zero                     | nil                                   |
| closet                                  | cupboard                      | office (doctor's/dentist's)       | surgery                               |
| closet (hanging clothes)                | wardrobe                      | on line                           | on stream                             |
| connect (telephone)                     | put through                   | open house                        | open day                              |
| counter clockwise                       | anticlockwise                 | overalls                          | dungarees                             |
| crazy                                   | mad                           | pacifier                          | dummy                                 |
| crib (for a baby)                       | cot                           | pants, trousers                   | trousers                              |
| davenport, sofa, couch                  | sofa, settee, couch           | pantyhose, nylons                 | tights                                |
| desk clerk                              | receptionist                  | parka                             | anorak                                |
| dish towel                              | tea towel                     | pocketbook                        | purse, wallet                         |
| down town                               | centre (city/business)        | polo neck                         | roll neck, polo neck                  |
| drapes                                  | curtains                      | pool (pocket billiards)           | snooker                               |
| dresser                                 | chest of drawers              | principal                         | headmaster                            |
| druggist                                | chemist                       | public school                     | state school                          |
| drugstore, pharmacy                     | chemist's (shop)              | purse                             | handbag                               |
| overalls                                | jeans, dungarees              | rent (a car)                      | hire (a car)                          |
| duplex                                  | semi-detached                 | reservations                      | bookings                              |
| elevator                                | lift                          | rest room                         | toilet, cloakroom, public convenience |
| equip, fit out                          | fit (v)                       | run (for election)                | stand (for election)                  |
| eraser                                  | rubber, eraser                | sack lunch                        | packed lunch                          |
| fall                                    | autumn                        | sales clerk, sales girl           | shop assistant                        |
| faucet                                  | tap                           | schedule                          | timetable                             |
| fire (v) (from employment)              | sack                          | Scotch tape                       | Sellotape                             |
| first floor, second floor etc           | ground floor, first floor etc | shopping cart                     | shopping trolley                      |
| flashlight                              | torch                         | shorts (underwear)                | pants                                 |
| freshman (at university)                | 1st year undergraduate        | sick                              | ill                                   |
| front desk                              | reception                     | sleep in                          | lie in                                |
| garbage, trash                          | rubbish                       | sneakers                          | trainers                              |
| garbage can, trash can                  | dustbin, bin                  | soccer                            | football                              |
| garters                                 | suspenders                    | sports                            | sport                                 |
| grade                                   | class, form                   | stand in line                     | queue                                 |
| intermission                            | interval                      | store, shop                       | shop                                  |
| janitor                                 | caretaker, porter             | suspenders                        | braces                                |
| jump rope                               | skipping rope                 | telephone booth                   | telephone box                         |
| laundromat                              | laundrette                    | trash bag                         | bin liner                             |
| lay off (v)                             | make redundant                | tricky                            | dodgy                                 |
| layoff                                  | redundancy                    | tuition (for schooling)           | fee                                   |
| line                                    | queue                         | two weeks                         | fortnight, two weeks                  |
| lost and found                          | lost property                 | undershirt                        | vest                                  |
| mail                                    | post                          | vacation                          | holiday                               |
| mailman                                 | postman                       | vacuum (n, v), vacuum cleaner (n) | hoover (n, v)                         |
| make a reservation                      | book                          | vest                              | waistcoat                             |
| math                                    | maths                         | yard                              | garden                                |
| movie                                   | film                          | z (pronounced "zee")              | z (pronounced "zed")                  |
| movie house/theater                     | cinema                        | zero                              | nought, oh                            |
| news stand                              | newsagent                     | zip code                          | post code                             |
| non-profit-organization, not-for-profit | charity                       |                                   |                                       |

## American English - British English

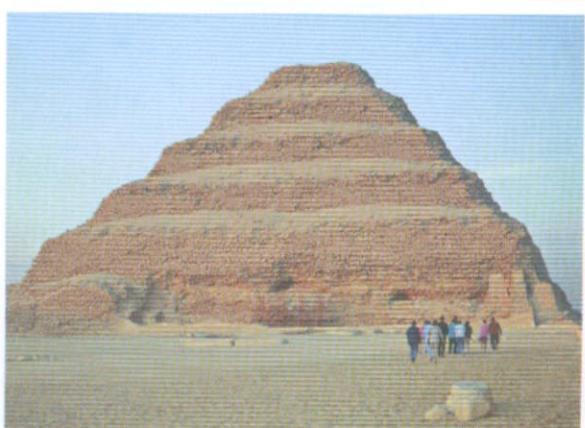
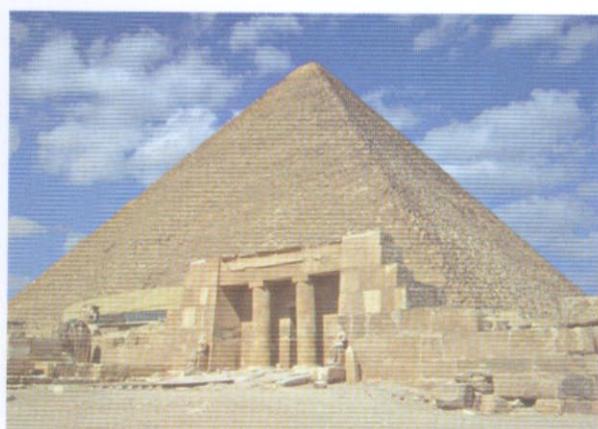
| Grammar  |  | Expressions with prepositions and particles |                          |
|--|--|---|--------------------------|
| American English   | British English                                | American English                            | British English          |
| He <b>just left.</b> / He <b>has just left.</b>              | He <b>has just left.</b>                       | different <b>from/than</b>                  | different <b>from/to</b> |
| We <b>saw</b> that film.                                     | We <b>have seen</b> that film.                 | live <b>on</b> X street                     | live <b>in</b> X street  |
| <b>Did he hand</b> in the report <b>yet?</b>                 | <b>Has he handed</b> in the report <b>yet?</b> | <b>on</b> a team                            | <b>in</b> a team         |
| Hello, is <b>this</b> David?                                 | Hello, is <b>that</b> David?                   | <b>on</b> the weekend                       | <b>at</b> the weekend    |
| <b>Do you have</b> a ticket? / <b>Have you got</b> a ticket? | <b>Have you got</b> a ticket?                  | Monday <b>through</b> Friday                | Monday <b>to</b> Friday  |
|  |  | be <b>in the</b> hospital                   | be <b>in</b> hospital    |
|  |  | <b>in the</b> future                        | <b>in</b> future         |
| Spelling   |  |   |                          |
| aluminum   | aluminium                                      |   |                          |
| analyze  | analyse  |   |                          |
| center   | centre   |   |                          |
| check (n)  | cheque (n)                                     |   |                          |
| color  | colour   |   |                          |
| defense  | defence  |   |                          |
| honor  | honour   |   |                          |
| jewelry  | jewellery                                      |   |                          |
| labor  | labour   |   |                          |
| practice (n, v)  | practice (n), practise (v)                     |   |                          |
| program  | programme                                      |   |                          |
| realize  | realise  |   |                          |
| theater  | theatre  |   |                          |
| tire   | tyre   |   |                          |
| trave(l)ler  | traveller                                      |   |                          |

# Photo File

UNIT 6

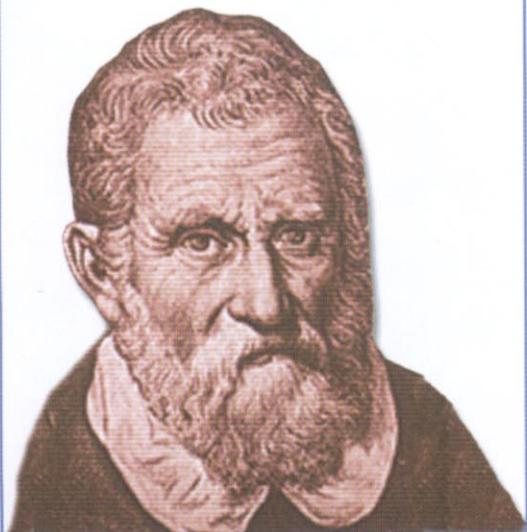


UNIT 9

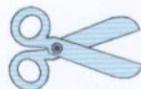
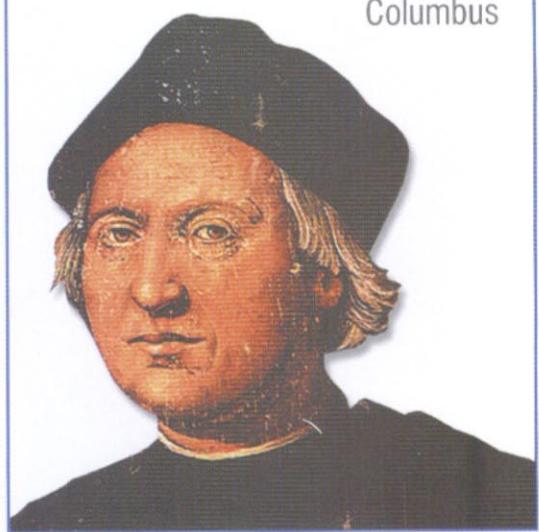


## UNIT 12

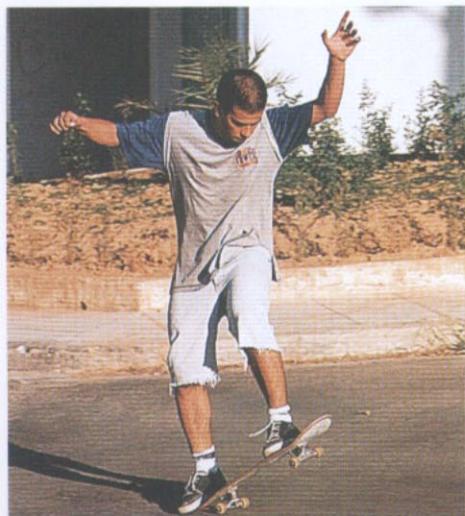
Marco Polo



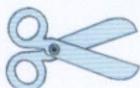
Christopher Columbus



## UNIT 15



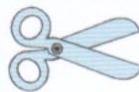
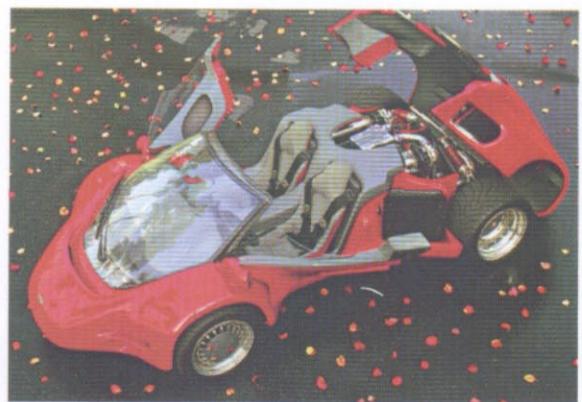
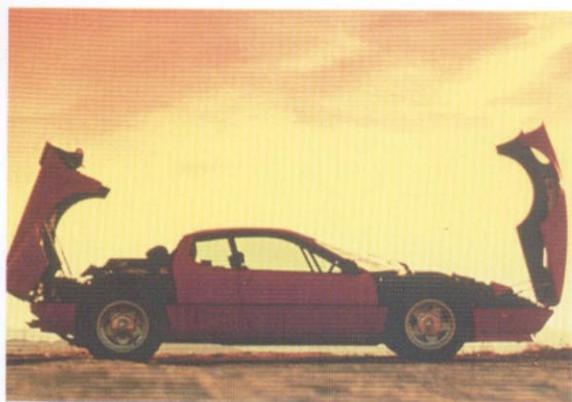
## UNIT 16



## UNIT 17



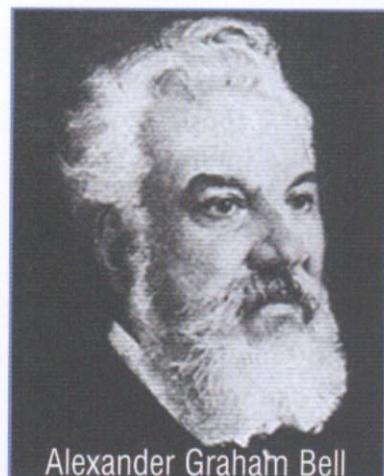
## UNIT 20



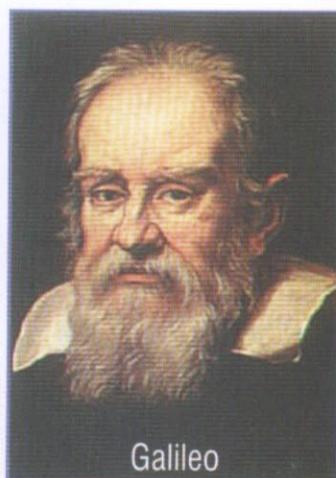
## UNIT 22



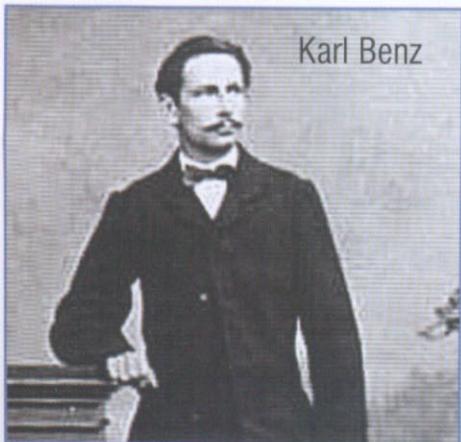
Thomas Edison



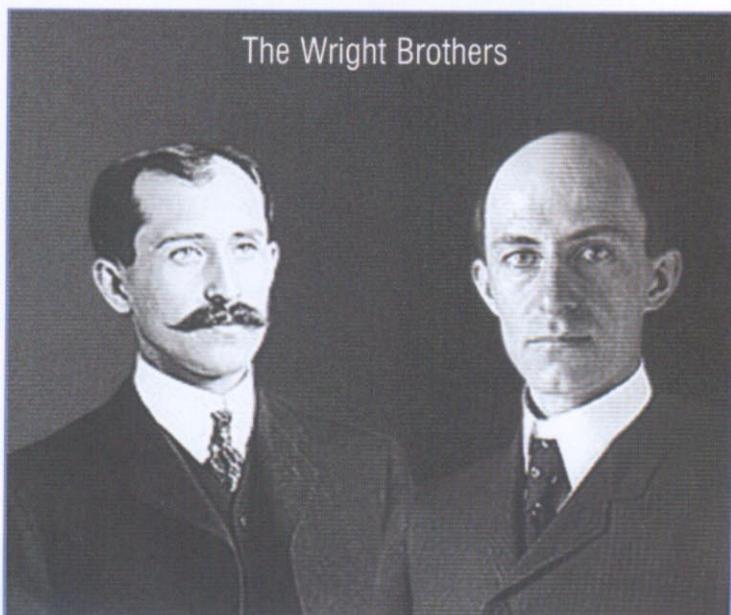
Alexander Graham Bell



Galileo



Karl Benz



The Wright Brothers